

**VIGILANTES  
OF  
CHRISTENDOM**

**The history of  
THE PHINEAS PRIESTHOOD**



**by**

**Richard Kelly Hoskins**

Copyright © 1990, 1997  
by Richard Kelly Hoskins

All rights reserved. No portion of this book may be reproduced without written permission from the publisher except by a reviewer who may quote brief passages in connection with a review.

Published by

The Virginia Publishing Company  
P. O. Box 997  
Lynchburg, Virginia 24505  
Phone 804-845-3261

*new no. → 434-384-3261*

Printed in the United States of America

First printing hardback 1990  
Second printing, softback 1997

ISBN 1-881867-05-6 15.00

Also by Richard Kelly Hoskins

**OUR NORDIC RACE, 1958**

ISBN 1-881867-00-5

Add'l printings 1961, 1961, 1962, 1964, 1966, 1975, 1986, 1994

One of the few surviving histories of the White race.

76 p. sb

\$5/copy plus \$2 postage & handling

**WAR CYCLES/PEACE CYCLES, 1985**

ISBN 1-881867-01-3

Add'l printings 1985, 1986, 1991, 1994

History of usury and war. 250 p. sb, 5th printing

\$15/copy plus \$2 postage & handling (\$5 overseas)

**THE WOLF & THE SHEEP, 1993**

ISBN 1-881867-03-X

For those who can't tell a wolf from a sheep.

\$5 copy plus \$2 postage & handling (\$5 overseas)

**IN THE BEGINNING, 1995**

ISBN 1-881867-04-8

Story of the international trade cartel.

\$15/copy plus \$2 postage & handling (\$5 overseas)

**HOSKINS REPORT Newsletter**

Current events. \$48/yr - monthly (\$58 overseas)

**PORTFOLIOS INVESTMENT ADVISORY**

Since 1973

Economic newsletter

\$150/yr - monthly

Va. residents add 4 1/2% sales tax



## FOREWORD

*As the Kamikaze is to the Japanese  
As the Shiite is to Islam  
As the Zionist is to the Jew  
So the Phineas priest is to Christendom*

"Only the fool ignores the Phineas Priest of God!"  
Traditional

In Denver, Colorado an anti-Christian radio announcer stepped from his Volkswagen and was greeted with a hail of gunfire. In North Carolina, men entered a homosexual porno-parlor, shot the occupants and burned the parlor down on top of them.

In the Midwest, interracial couples jogging together fell one after another before the carefully spaced shots of a distant sniper. In Seattle, a bomb exploded in a porno movie theatre. In Washington State a Brinks car is held up and money taken to pay mortgages on farms being foreclosed.

In Louisiana, Vietnamese fishing boats are set aflame. In Chicago, a pedestrian draws a pistol and shoots down two assailants. In D.C., a White prostitute and her Black pimp are found shot to death.

It makes little difference whether you agree or disagree with the Phineas Priesthood. It is important that you know that it exists, is active, and in the near future may become a central fact in your life.

This condition exists now in Moslem populations that must live with their militant Shiite brothers whom the Israelis call "terrorists", and the worldwide Israeli population who must live with their own militant Zionists whom the Islamic world calls terrorists.

The Phineas Priest of Christendom is no less to be feared by those who insult his God.

For over 25 years the author has studied the unique Western priesthood to determine what triggers their acts which are often violent. In this he has been aided by corresponding with individuals incarcerated in Federal Prisons who have been convicted of violating some legislative statute, but which act was in obedience to Biblical Law - the only Law respected by the Phineas Priesthood.

Like their religious competitors, they believe that their God has called them to their dangerous work. They multiply and thrive when law and order break down. Anyone they consider to have violated any of the Laws written in the Bible may become possible quarry. No one is immune - king, priest, or commoner. They do not respect wealth or position. Politicians take their threats very seriously.

They claim ancient traditions and are predictably orthodox Christian in their views, vs. the establishment's own tax-exempt "Judeo-Christian" whom they consider their arch rival and often their foe.

Most are extremely well-read in the Holy Scriptures, can quote extensively, and believe only that which can be proved by scripture. Grafted to this are legends of "St. George and the Dragon", "Beowulf", and "Robin Hood". All this is wrapped in the traditions of each individual Western nation. Regardless how the world sees them, they see themselves as the latest in a long line of God's servants stretching back into antiquity.

Readers will find that they share many of the views of the Priesthood. Many will not. Regardless, it is important to know what these views are since everyone will have to come to some sort of a working arrangement with them in the days immediately ahead.

The simple fact is - one who is willing to give his life for what he believes cannot be ignored.

## Table Of Contents

### Chapter 1

#### LAND - THE GRAND PRIZE

Who owns the land? .....	15
--------------------------	----

### Chapter 2

#### PHINEAS PRIESTHOOD ESTABLISHED BY GOD

The Law .....	21
Phineas and Zimri .....	24
Fate Accorded Those Who Refuse Help .....	36
St. George And The Dragon .....	49
King Arthur .....	54
The Crusader Orders .....	55
Robin Hood .....	56
The White Cell .....	62

### Chapter 3

#### VIRGINIA

Phineas Priests And An Indian Mother .....	65
The Indian Plague - Massacre! .....	77
Covenanters .....	85
Bacon's Rebellion .....	96
Frontier Warfare - The Lessons .....	115
Deathwind & War Crimes Trial .....	118

### Chapter 4

#### HAITI - Before The Revolution

The French Revolution .....	126
Toussaint L'Ouverture .....	152
Napoleon's Effort .....	154
Insurrections in North America .....	165



## Chapter 5

**TEXAS AND MEXICO**

Texas .....	173
Mexico - The Colonial Period 1519 - 1821 .....	175
Spain - Morescoes and Maranos .....	175
Maranos Uncovered In The Church .....	179

## Chapter 6

**WAR BETWEEN THE STATES**

Radicals Before The Civil War .....	186
The Media Protects Usury .....	184
John Brown - Media Creation .....	195
Wartime Conditions Behind Union Lines .....	209
The War Ends .....	219
A Copperhead Kills Lincoln .....	210
Southern Reconstruction .....	214
Blacks In Power .....	215
The Serious Looting Begins .....	216
Jesse James .....	210
The Klan .....	222
Taxpayers' Committee .....	227
The Book .....	232
The Foreign Immigration Scheme .....	239

## Chapter 7

**SOUTH AFRICA**

The Beginnings .....	258
The Blood River Battle .....	265
Guerrilla Warfare - The Last Stage .....	281
The Enemy Media .....	284
State Religion .....	290

## Chapter 8

**War Against Germany**

World War I .....	292
Germany Surrenders .....	292
The SS .....	309
Rape of German Women .....	314
Leuchter Report Debunks Gas Chambers .....	323

## Chapter 9

**THE POSTWAR RESTORATION ATTEMPT**

Lynching 1873 - 1910 .....	329
Sen. Carter Glass Learns About Politics .....	335
The Klan Phenomenon - 1915-1940 .....	336
Suppressing The Huey Long Phenomenon .....	341
The McCarthy Phenomenon .....	344
Almond - Virginia's Trojan Horse .....	346
Rhodesia Into The Bag .....	351
South Africa's Verwoerd Phenomenon .....	352
Breaking Up The Nebraska Farm Rally .....	354
Suppressing 125 Georgia Farmers .....	358
Taxes: The Gordon Kahl Ambush .....	362
The Kennedy Incident .....	372
The White Patriots Of North Carolina .....	376
The Order .....	381

## Chapter 10

**JUST A FEW GOOD MEN**

Susanna .....	408
The Mother & Her Seven Sons .....	409

Chapter 11  
**THE SPOIL**

David and Goliath .....	412
The King .....	413
The Church's Land .....	413
The Saxon Spur .....	416
The Saxon Dawn .....	418

## Table Of Figures

Figure 1: 7-Step Plan: .....	84
Figure 2: Barbarous War: .....	89
Figure 3: 5-Occupation: .....	91
Figure 4: Sign Of Phineas: .....	116
Figure 5: 1814 Loan At 10%: .....	261
Figure 6: British Forces In South Africa: .....	276
Figure 7: British Losses: .....	276
Figure 8: Boer Losses: .....	277
Figure 9: Executions 1880-1970: .....	331
Figure 10: Order Members True To Oath: .....	402

---

## Chapter 1

---

# LAND - THE GRAND PRIZE

### Land - The Grand Prize

Whoever owns land, untaxed land, land that can sustain animals for his needs and provide food for his family, that man is a king. The Bible calls him both king and priest.

A king because he has his kingdom. A priest because he is bound to God who gives him his daily bread. Scripture says that all land belongs to God and He gave to each one of His own people a part, and gave the Law with which to govern it.

A king must be responsible to prosper, generous if he expects generosity, and give aid to expect aid in return. Such a king may freely thumb his nose at the world as long as he lives within the code. He may work, study, worship, eat, rise or retire as he pleases. He is king and the natural enemy of the Lawless.

Because the land is of great value thieves try to break through and steal it. When successful, each thief stoutly maintains that he has done no wrong and that he is entitled to what he has gotten.

If the reader does not own land - why not? It was given to your ancestors hundreds of years ago to be handed down generation after generation, and never ever to be sold.

### Who Owns The Land?

Research the land. Whoever holds the land in violation of the Law is the guilty party.

The prize is the land of Europe and the wealth that is on it.

The struggle for this prize is the reason for almost every war - religious or political - for the past thousand years.

To determine whom we can thank for most of today's problems, we must look into history to see who lay claim to the land in the past and who lays claim to it now. A quick glance will uncover four interested parties. They are:



1) ORGANIZED RELIGION: Organized religion seized title to all the land by right of Constantine's Bequest,<sup>1</sup> land belonging to the people. When the people re-claimed it - organized religion took the land back again in exchange for praying their souls out of Purgatory.

2) THE KING: The king, or whatever name the ruler is called, lay claim to the land by right of conquest and by employing official usurers as his exclusive, personal agents.

3) INTERNATIONAL FINANCE: The international financiers got their portion by manipulating the first two and stealing from the fourth.<sup>2</sup>

4) THE PEOPLE: The people, whose land it was and whose land it is, are forced to declare themselves for one of the above competing parties and to hoist the colors of religion, state, or finance instead of their own. In the clash that follows, they are required to furnish the blood and receive nothing that can compensate them for their suffering.

### 1 - Organized Religion

Organized religion lay claim to all the land and owned one-half of all the money in the nations of the West.

As spiritual guardians of the souls of the people, organized religion told Christians that when they died their souls would go to a place called Purgatory. This place is somewhere between heaven and hell. A soul stayed there for a length of time depending on the enormity of one's sins while alive on earth. A soul could remain in Purgatory for centuries.

The people were also told that the prayers of the righteous could help get these souls out of that place, but these prayers might take many years. It required someone who could be faithfully counted on to stay around for as long as it took. Fortunately, help was close by. All agreed that there were none more righteous than churchmen, and the church, being eternal, could be counted on to be around forever. The food and shelter for those presenting the prayers was expensive.

1 Emperor Constantine, on his death bed gave deed to the entire Roman empire to the Catholic Church.

2 The story of the International Trade Cartel is told in *In The Beginning*, Richard Kelly Hoskins, Virginia Publishing Company, PO Box 997, Lynchburg, Virginia, \$17/copy.

To defray this cost and to make sure the prayer work went forward, many of the devout agreed to surrender their claim to their estates to the church upon their deaths. In this manner the church guaranteed the prayers so that the souls could be released from Purgatory. The church received much property in return.

In Britain, with few exceptions, the land and one-half the floating money supply accrued to the church. The same was true in France, Spain, Italy, Germany and Russia.

The supervision and direction of these enormous holdings required tens of thousands of administrators in addition to the cardinals, abbots and priests. The church was very rich and very powerful.

### 2 - The King

The king was confirmed by the Church in his office, to lead in war and arbitrate differences in peace. Justice itself was dispensed by peers according to ancient law that brooked no change.

A king, William the Conqueror, arrived. To raise revenues, he brought international bankers with him.<sup>3</sup> This was necessary because Christians cannot tax Christians; but they may tax strangers.

"Of whom do the kings of the earth take custom or tribute? Of their own children, or of strangers? Peter saith unto him, of strangers." (Gr: allotrios - foreign, not akin.) ... Then are the children free." Matt 17:25-26.

These international bankers, being strangers and not covered by the law,<sup>4</sup> could lend to Christians at usury, and could take their estates when usury forced them to bankruptcy.

The king received one-half of everything taken in this manner. When the lender died, ALL of his goods obtained by usury went to the king. The king's wealth grew by leaps and bounds. So also did the wealth of the bankers. And of course, the church got its share.

"As early as 1168 ... the value of the personal property of the Jews was regarded as one-fourth that of the whole country."<sup>5</sup>

3 "William of Malmesbury (*Gesta Rerum Anglorum*," ed. Duffy, p. 500) distinctly states that William the Conqueror brought the Jews from Rouen to England." *The Jewish Encyclopedia*, England, p. 161.

4 "He showed his word unto Jacob, his statutes and his judgments unto Israel. He hath not dealt so with any nation: and as for his judgments, they have not known them." Ps 147:19-20

5 J/E, England, p. 162



To keep from having everything gotten by usury seized by the king, many usurers learned the advantages of concealment and secrecy. They learned to drop out of sight by adopting the appearance, manners, and customs of the English. They were virtually undetected. But they were different.

The established religion of England found an economic competitor in the king's agents. Land that would in time have accrued to the church went to the king instead by way of his usury agents. To remove the competition the church instituted a campaign to convert the heathen to Christianity.<sup>6</sup>

The king retaliated by ruling that the property of any usurer who converted to Christianity would be confiscated immediately.<sup>7</sup> In this way bankers who converted were punished and reduced to beggars. This was to discourage conversions and keep usurers working as the king's agents. Other actions by organized religion to discourage the activities of the king's agents are related in the *Jewish Encyclopedia* in the article on England, p. 166, which states:

(The) "Synod of Exeter in 1287, (forbade) commensality (eating together)<sup>8</sup> between Jews and Christians, and against Jews holding public office<sup>9</sup> or having Christian servants,<sup>10</sup> ... and denied to Jews entrance into churches<sup>11</sup>."

These efforts of the church to enforce God's Law paid off. In face of these church pronouncements few people would have anything to do with the usurers, and, as a consequence, their receipts

6 "Go ye therefore and teach all nations ('I am sent but to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.' Matt 15:24.), teaching them whatsoever things I have commanded you ('A bastard (mixedbreed) shall not enter into the congregation of the Lord.' Deut 23:2), baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost." Matt 28:18-19

7 "The papacy had become more and more embittered against the Jews ... As an immediate result ... excommunicated all Christians having anything to do with Jews." J/E, England, p. 165.

8 "If any man that is called a brother be a fornicator or ... an idolater ... or an extortioner; with such a one, no not to eat." 1 Cor 5:11

9 "Thou mayest not set a stranger (Heb: zâwr - racial alien) over thee, which is not thy brother." Deut 17:15

10 "Thou shalt reign over many nations, but they shall not reign over thee." Deut 15:6

11 (1) "There shall no stranger eat of the holy thing." Lev. 22:10. (2) "When the tabernacle is to be pitched ... the stranger that cometh nigh shall be put to death." Num 1:51.

dropped. Then, too, the king, by utilizing the usury route had gotten almost all the land that he was going to get from the people. So, in 1290, the king - defender of the faith - determined to obey the sacred scriptures and please the church and the people all at the same time.

King Richard I issued a decree that his usury bankers be banished from England.<sup>12</sup>

### 3 - The Usury Bankers

The usurers had been brought to England to gather wealth for their master, the king, by using the usury system that the king's Christian faith forbade him to use. They had served their purpose and had been discarded.

Their history from this time revolves about their attempt to re-enter England and re-establish the usury practices that had proved so profitable before, however, without the hindrances and restrictions that had formerly been present.

At the time of their attempted re-entry in the early 1600s, the land situation in England (and the rest of Europe) was, as has been related, the land belonged to the church, who confirmed a king to manage it for them on shares, and the people shared with the nobles on whose estates they labored.

The days of the 1300s had gone when "a laborer could provide all the necessities for his family for a year by working only 14 weeks"<sup>13</sup>.

The bankers' effort to enter Britain was at last successful. It was done through negotiations with an English ruler. Past English rulers had been most unsympathetic to entry pleas, so the bankers got their own English rulers by financing competitors for the throne. Of course, it was agreed that the new rulers would be properly grateful

12 It is noteworthy that during the disagreements between the king and church that the church never charged the king with introducing a stumbling block in the path of his people. (1) "Let us not ... put a stumbling block or an occasion to fall in his brother's way." Romans 14:13. Perhaps they did not want to voice too loudly the punishment required (2) "If a false witness rise up ... ye shall do unto him, as he had thought to have done unto his brother." Deu 19:16-19. Such talk might have been embarrassing, and also construed by the king as treason.

13 War Cycles / Peace Cycles, Hoskins, p. 53



and would be lenient on the subject of entry, and on their activities after their entrance.

Oliver Cromwell came to power in this manner. He was bountifully financed during his rise by the international bankers in Amsterdam and was their servant.<sup>14</sup> Later, Charles II was assisted from his exile and return by Mendes da Costa and Augustine Coronel-Chacon.<sup>15</sup> After that, William III of Orange's venture to capture the English throne was financed by a loan of 2,000,000 gulden from Antoni Lopez Suasso.<sup>16</sup>

All of these loans had strings attached, as all loans do. It was worth the effort and risk of interfering in the internal matters of a sovereign nation if the prize might be the banking monopoly of that nation. By this time the king had taken the church land and declared himself sole owner. He was now ruler of both the country and the church. To control the king with loans and attached loan-agreements was to control almost the entire nation.

In this manner the usurer bankers emerged as the actual managers, manipulating the kings of England with their loans. The kings only spoke for their masters.

#### 4 - The People

This book is about the peoples of the West, their abuse by their rulers, the promise of their God that the land was to be divided among his people and never sold, the requirements of their God that must be fulfilled to reclaim their land, and that God's insistence that his Law be obeyed.

It is particularly concerned with the Christian zealot's view of God's enforcement of his own Law, and the means that He established to do it:

The Phineas Priesthood.

<sup>14</sup> "The borrower is slave to the lender." Pr:22:7"

<sup>15</sup> J/E, England, p. 169

<sup>16</sup> Ibid. p. 169

---

## Chapter 2

---

# PHINEAS PRIESTHOOD ESTABLISHED BY GOD

### The Law

The Ten Commandments were in the beginning. They were proclaimed by God Himself. Abraham followed them and was a righteous man long before Moses. They were publicly taught from city to city. They were engraved upon monuments and door posts. Even children were familiar with their precepts. "The Law" is a term invariably equivalent to the law of Moses given by God to Moses on Mount Sinai and inscribed in the books of Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers and Deuteronomy, and other books used by Jesus. Since gods and kings can only be known by what they require of their people - the Christian God is known by His requirements. Hence, "*In the beginning was the Word and the Word was with God and the Word was God.*" God and his Word are the same.

### Who Enforces The Law?

When God's Law identifies a crime, prescribes judgments, and hands down the required punishment, and the punishment is carried out, all is well and the land prospers. If lawless rulers and lawless judges mock God's Law and refuse to enforce it, God punishes the land with sword, pestilence and plague.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> "But if ye will not ... do all these commandments; ... I will bring a sword upon you ... I will send the pestilence among you; ... And I will bring the land into desolation." Lev 26:14-35



Failure to enforce God's Law is the most serious thing that can befall God's people. It is a national catastrophe. The plague descends on the land. This is God's wrath directed against those who defy his Laws, and it destroys many times more people than our worst wars. There is a disease plague among the many other plagues. If the nation does not repent the plagues will increase in severity until the nation is exterminated from the land.<sup>2</sup>

The choice is simply to either enforce the Law or the plague and pestilence engulfs the nation. The calamity we are speaking of is not mere unpleasantness; it is unbelievable devastation.

The Bible is filled with examples of mighty men who through the ages stood ready to give their lives to uphold God's Law and ward off the plague which would otherwise destroy the land and its people. God created a special priesthood to honor them.

#### The Priesthood of Phineas.

Examples of their heroic efforts are enshrined in the scriptures. Each act differs from the next as the situation differs. In one period the people were rebellious against God's Law. In the next period they tolerated corrupt rulers. At another time the armed might of strangers held sway over God's people and prevented them from enforcing their God's Law. There is a rule to cover each and every eventuality.

#### Secret To Knowing God

A ruler and his laws are indistinguishable. A ruler is known by what he requires of his subjects. His appearance is of little moment. He is known by his demands.

The Christian God differs from other gods only by what He requires of his people. Our ancestors referred to Him by his requirements. They called him The Word.

**"In the beginning was the word and the word was with God and the word was God." John 1:1**

2 (1) "If ye be ... obedient, ye shall eat the good of the land: But if ye refuse ... ye shall be devoured." Is 1:19,20 (2) "If thou do at all forget the Lord ... ye shall surely perish. Deut 8:19 (3) "Love the Lord ... keep his commandments, and his statutes, and his judgments and ... God shall bless thee in the land ... But if ... thou wilt not hear ... ye shall not prolong your days upon the land ... I have set before you life and death ... choose life that both thou and thy seed may live." Deut 30:16-19.

"God the Word" was the Christian God. An affront to God's Word was an affront to God, and justly deserved whatever punishment the Word required.

#### The Samaritan Law

Samaritans, the modern day "Judeo-Christians," seeking the good will that accrues to those who support the government, say that the state, any state, is solely responsible for enforcing God's will. In this manner the responsibility of enforcing God's Law is no longer their responsibility. Since it is no longer a responsibility, it is often not even taught.

Christians, or followers of The Word, point out that the state cannot correct violations of God's Law if the state is in the hands of strangers or their agents who follow a different god who demands a different law system. To ignore a Lawless condition will bring God's plague and death to all: the unrighteous for committing the sin, and the righteous for allowing the sin to go unpunished.

They point to what happened to those who tried:

*"The king of Assyria ... carried Israel away ... And it was so, because the children sinned against the Lord their God, ... and had feared other gods, And walked in the statutes of the heathen." II Kings 17:6-8.*

If God would turn an entire nation out of its land because the people obeyed the laws of strangers, this is a powerful God, a God to fear. There must be something that can be done to prevent this. Servants of The Word again use scriptures for their guide. Their rule is simple. It was quoted by Josephus<sup>3</sup> in the first century AD, the verbalization of a rule thousands of years old:

**"Moses called the people together ... that they might (obligate) themselves to ... these laws by oath: and that ... in case any one of their own blood ... should attempt to confound or dissolve their constitution of government, they should take vengeance upon them, both all in general, and each person in**

3 Josephus was widely read in the last century and many Christian families named their children after him. He recorded in detail the fall of Jerusalem and the ancient history of both the Israelites and the Jews. He was the last scholar to enter and remove sacred scriptures from the temple before they were destroyed. His works fill gaps in Biblical stories that can be filled nowhere else and these stories were accepted by Roman and Christian historians alike.



particular; ... but that if they were not able to take such vengeance, they should still demonstrate that what was done was contrary to their wills." Josephus' Antiquities 4:8:45

One might note that the special attention is directed against "one of their own blood" whom we today call renegades, although in the examples following, strangers<sup>4</sup> often received this same "special attention" since they prevented the worship of God, which was simply obeying God's commands.

One might also note that even today a renegade gives careful attention to a speaker who complains of a Law violation. The renegade is never sure whether the one speaking is a harmless malcontent or a priest.

The difference is the difference between life and death.

### Phineas and Zimri

The best known of the Phineas stories from the Bible is the one of Phineas and Zimri.

Phineas volunteered to enforce God's Law against Zimri, a prince of Israel, thereby turning God's wrath from the nation. A shortened rendition of the story follows.

*"One of the children of Israel came and brought ... a Midianitish woman ... and when Phineas ... saw it, he rose up from among the congregation and took a javelin in his hand; ... and thrust both of them through ... And the Lord spake ... saying Phineas ... hath turned my wrath away from the children of Israel, ... that I consumed not the children of Israel ... Behold I give unto him my covenant of peace: ... and his seed after him, even the covenant of an everlasting priesthood: because he was zealous for his God, and made an atonement for the children of Israel." Num 25:6-13*

The brief story in Psalms tells what Phineas did and the blessing he received.

*"Then stood up Phineas, and executed judgment: and so the plague was stayed." Ps 106:30*

4 Heb: "zûwr." In Hebrew "stranger" has two separate distinct meanings. The words "zûwr," "nokriy," and "nekar" refer to "racial aliens." The words "gêr" and "toshab" refer to racial kinsmen living in foreign lands. The above usage of "stranger" requires one to "love" one stranger while warring with the alien "stranger."

Again the lesson is hammered home - plague results from violating God's instructions.

*"They provoked HIM to anger with their inventions: and the plague<sup>5</sup> brake in upon them. Then stood up Phineas, and executed judgment: and so the plague was stayed. And that was counted unto him for righteousness unto all generations for evermore." Ps 106:29- 31*

References to the Phineas story crop up again and again, since it is the basis of all the other Phineas stories.

This next time the same story is told in greater detail. Josephus, in *Antiquities*, relates the Balak plot that almost destroyed the Israelite nation. This same plot has been used with phenomenal success over the years to destroy the Israelite people.

### Balak Fears The Israelites

*"Balak, the king of the Moabites, who had ... a friendship ... with the Midianites, saw how great the Israelites were grown, he was much affrighted ... he ... did not judge it prudent to fight against them ... so he resolved to send ambassadors to the Midianites about them.*

*"Now the Midianites, knowing there was one Balaam ... who lived by the Euphrates, and who was the greatest of the prophets at that time ... sent ... to entreat the prophet to come to them, that he might imprecate curses to the destruction of the Israelites.*

*"So Balaam received the ambassadors, ... and told them ... that God ... had raised him to great reputation on account of the truth of his predictions; ... and not to persist in their enmity against the Israelites ... Balaam ... went along with the ambassadors ... (to Balak)." Antiquities 4:6:3*

### Plot To Destroy Israel

The prophet Balaam advised Balak, the ruler of the Moabites, that he must do the following in order to destroy the Israelites:

5 The plague from God is the punishment most often levied for consorting with strangers. The plagues take many forms; sickness, lawlessness, famine or the very presence of the strangers themselves constitutes a plague.



*"If you... gain a victory over them (the Israelites, then do thusly) "Set out the handsomest ... of your daughters ... then ... send them to be near the Israelites ... and when they are enamored of them ... persuade them to leave off their obedience to their own laws and the word of that God who established them ... for by this means God will be angry at them. ... when Balaam had suggested this counsel to them, he went his way." Antiquities 4:6:6*

One must clearly understand the point being made. Strangers, unable to destroy the Israelites openly, tried to make them violate God's Law against intermarriage.<sup>6</sup> If they could be made to violate this law, then their own God would destroy his own people, since he had promised that he would. A remarkable plan, one diabolical in its simplicity.<sup>7</sup> The proof that destruction is certain is that God's people have been destroyed in every nation where intermarriage has been allowed.

### Powerful Israelites Rebel Against God

*"Zimri, the head of the tribe of Simeon, accompanied with Cozbi, a Midianitish woman ... and being desired by her to disregard the laws of Moses ... by taking a stranger<sup>8</sup> to wife ...*

*"When things were thus ... Zimri arose up ... and said '... Moses, thou art at liberty to make use of such laws as thou art so fond ... but thou shalt not have me one of thy followers in*

6 God absolutely forbids racial intermarriage. The Word teaches: (1) *"Thou shalt not take a wife...of the Canaanites ... but thou shalt go ... to my kindred, and take a wife."* Gen 24:3,4. (2) *"We have trespassed against our God, and have taken strange (nokriy - alien) wives of the people of the land."* Neh 13:23-27. (3) *"They have delt treacherously against the Lord: for they have begotten strange (zûwr - racial alien) children."* Hosea 5:7. (4) *Ezra the priest stood and said "Ye have transgressed, and have taken strange wives ... now ... separate yourselves from the people of the land and from the strange wives ... until the wrath of our God (plague) for this matter be turned from us."* Ezek 10:10-14. (5) *"Neither shalt thou make marriages with them: thy daughter thou shalt not give unto his son, nor his daughter shalt thou take unto thy son."* Deut 7:3. (6) *"We have trespassed against our God, and have taken strange (nokriy: foreign, non-relative, alien) wives ... therefore let us make a covenant with our God to put away all the wives, and such as are born of them, according to the ... commandment of our God."* Ezek 10:2- 3.

7 The plot was activated by merely bringing Israel in contact with strangers and letting nature do the rest.

8 A mixedbreed doing the will of God can not be found in the congregation since the Law states "A bastard (mixed breed) shall not enter into the congregation of the Lord." Deut 23:2. Those who enter violate the will of God and are therefore not brothers.

*thy tyrannical commands ... thou deprivest us of the sweetness of life, which consists in acting according to our own wills."* Antiquities 4:6:10

### Phineas Acts

*"Phineas, a man ... better than the rest of the young men ... was greatly troubled at what was done by Zimri, he resolved in earnest to inflict punishment on him ... to prevent this transgression from proceeding further, which would happen if the ringleaders were not punished ...*

*"So he came to Zimri's tent, and slew him with his javelin, and with it he slew Cozbi also. Upon which, all those young men that had a regard to virtue, ... imitated Phineas' boldness, and slew those that were found to be guilty of the same crime with Zimri. Accordingly, many of those that had transgressed, perished by the magnanimous valor of these young men, and the rest all perished by a plague<sup>9</sup>, which distemper God himself inflicted upon them ... (those) who ... had persuaded<sup>10</sup> them to go on, were esteemed (condemned) by God as partners in their wickedness ...*

*"... this Balaam ... did ... suggest that advice to them, by making use of which, our enemies had well-nigh corrupted the whole multitude of the Hebrews with their wiles..." Antiquities 4:6:12-13*

### Phineas Honored

Phineas was the priest selected to command Israel's armies against the strangers. He was the one who had proven his devotion to God's Word and had the zeal necessary for other tasks.

*"Moses sent an army against the land of Midian, for the causes forementioned ... and appointed Phineas for their commander; ... as he that had guarded the laws of the Hebrews, and had inflicted punishment on Zimri when he had transgressed them." Antiquities 4:7:1*

9 The continuous warning is that PLAGUE is the greatest punishment for mixing with strangers. *Plague kills many more than does war.*

10 *"If a false witness rise up ... Then shall ye do unto him, as he had thought to have done unto his brother."* Deut 19:16-19.



### Jasher on Phineas

The Book of Jasher is one of the oldest scriptures surviving. Half of the first chapter of II Samuel in the King James Bible quotes the Book of Jasher. Jesus used the Book of Jasher long before the Bible canon contained in the King James version was compiled.

Jasher contains its own version of the story of Phineas. Of particular interest are the additional details picked up from the Jasher version of the story.

*"And the children of Moab were afraid of the children of Israel, and the children of Moab took all their daughters and their wives of beautiful aspect and comely appearance, and dressed them in gold and silver and costly garments.*

*"And the children of Moab seated those women at the door of their tents, in order that the children of Israel might see them and turn to them, and not fight against Moab ... and every man placed his wife and daughter at the door of his tent, ... and the children of Israel turned to the daughters of Moab and coveted them, and they went to them ...*

*"They then gave him wine and he drank and became intoxicated, and they placed before him a beautiful damsel, and he did with her as he liked, for he knew not what he was doing, as he had drunk plentifully of wine." Jasher 85:54- 63*

### Wine

Victory requires clear vision. The loss of the smallest edge often spells the difference between victory and defeat.

As a young man just out of the service I played chess at a small restaurant in Culpeper. It was a chess center for that part of Virginia. A number of truckers stopped by. Many are fine players. They had hours to think and plan their moves. Some drove long distances to play. I beat most.

I drank beer occasionally. I seldom felt any effects from the beer. Several opponents that I usually bested would tie me after I had consumed a single beer. After two beers I still felt no effect but twenty or more of those whom I regularly bested defeated me. After

three beers I could still feel no effect but I could be beaten by any skilled player.

If that was true in my case when I was in my physical and mental prime, the same should apply to anyone at any age making the same sort of decisions that allow no margin for error.

### Drinking Rule

The rule I now follow is this: if a man wishes to drink, it is his choice. He has chosen to be neither priest nor king. He is not one to rule, to make important decisions, to carry out important assignments, or to be followed. A priest or king obeys the laws of priests and kings. To make allowance and hope for an exception could court disaster if important matters are at stake.<sup>11</sup>

### Plague Comes From God

In each of the stories of Phineas dealing with strangers, the plague is God's own specially directed punishment. The inference is that whenever there is unlawful contact with strangers, as surely as night follows day, plague that will punish the offenders and the people who allow the offense will result. Ignorance is not excused.

*"And the anger of the Lord was kindled against Israel on account of this matter, and he sent a pestilence amongst them, and there died of the Israelites twenty-four thousand men.*

*"Now there was a man of the children of Simeon ... Zimri ... who connected himself with the Midianite Cosbi, the daughter of Zur, king of Midian, in the sight of all the children of Israel.*

*"And Phineas ... saw this wicked thing which Zimri had done, and he took a spear and rose up and went after them and pierced them both and slew them, and the pestilence ceased from the children of Israel. ...*

*"And it was after this that the Lord said to Moses, to avenge upon Midian the cause of their brethren of the children of Israel." Jasher 85:61-63, 86:6.*

11 (1) "Neither shall any priest drink wine when they enter into the inner court." Ezek 44:21 (2) "Ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood." 1 Pet 2:9 (3) "And the Lord spake ... Do not drink wine or strong drink ... when ye go into the tabernacle ... It shall be a statute for ever throughout your generations." Lev 10:9 "Ye are the temple of the living God ... God hath said, I will dwell in them and walk in them." II Cor 6:16



References to the plague being God's curse fill the scriptures, as are references of God's people desperately making amends to prevent it:

**"Get you up from this congregation ... and make an atonement for them: for there is wrath gone out from the Lord; the plague is begun." Num 16:45-46**

The exploit of Phineas in stopping the plague is mentioned in Psalms:

**"Then up stood Phineas, and executed judgment, and so the plague was stayed." Ps 106:30**

And in Josephus:

*"So he came to Zimri's tent, and slew him with his javelin, and with it he slew Cozbi also. Upon which, all those young men that had a regard to virtue, ... imitated Phineas' boldness, and slew those that were found to be guilty of the same crime with Zimri. Accordingly, many of those that had transgressed, perished by the magnanimous valor of these young men, and the rest all perished by a plague." Josephus, Antiquities 4:6:12*

### Strangers - Disease Factories

From the earliest days strangers seeking to force their way into Christian society have been looked upon as disease carriers - strange beings, hurtful intruders, ones to be quarantined - to be avoided. Because of their personal habits they were compared to dogs, wolves, or pigs in that they eat anything and breed anything just as the dogs, wolves, or pigs do. If a disease is around they will contract it by their undisciplined eating and breeding habits and will spread it to others. Strangers almost always have some sort of disease they are having to cope with.

The individual wolf, pig, or stranger may be disease free, but, given the opportunity, they almost always contract something in time. Plague-type diseases in the West have ALWAYS started with strangers. Disease bearing strangers and disease bearing animals have always been quarantined, separated, and avoided. They are not even to be touched. This is one of the reasons that Phineas punished Zimri and Cozbi.

If one associates with the stranger, scripture teaches that the association brings God's curse. God's curse is the plague. God's chosen people always attempt to stamp out the lesser evil to avoid the greater one, they do this, or they die;

*"Grant me ... that I may build an altar therein unto the Lord that the plague may be stayed from the people." I Chron 21:22*

Those who willfully break some of God's commands tend to break others. The punishment for the violation of any part of God's Law is the same - the plague. A case in point;

**"Thus saith the Lord God ... because thou has ... slain thy brethren of thy father's house ... behold, with a great plague will the Lord smite thy people, and thy children." II Chron 21:12-14**

The thing the stranger must deny is that the plague is from God - that it is His curse for the violation of His Law. But, denial does not stop it:

**"And the anger of the Lord was kindled against Israel on account of this matter, and he sent a pestilence amongst them." Jasher 85:61**

### Kinsmen Fighting Kinsmen

The Law forbids man fighting man.<sup>12</sup> The scripture contains examples of civil war where God-fearing men fight to destroy each other. The prime example is that of the wars between Israel and Judah. These wars, however, are examples of disobedience.

The concept of war between different political subdivisions of MAN where man actually destroys God's own creation is impossible where God's Law is held supreme.

**"Ye shall not go up, nor fight against your brethren the children of Israel ... for this thing is from me." I Kings 12:24**

12 The word MAN is number #119 found in Strong's Concordance. The definition in Hebrew: MAN: (âdam, aw-dam'; to show blood (in the face), ie. flush or turn rosy. be (dyed, made) red (ruddy). 120 adam, aw-dam'; from 119, "ruddy." In the beginning God created man (adam) "He who blushes red." The phrase "son of man" (son-of-adam) is not as old as "man," but it still is ancient. It was used by Job as early as 2000 B.C.. Jesus called himself "son of man," son of one who "blushes red." Most strangers cannot blush red.



**"Thou shalt not avenge, nor bear any grudge against the children of thy people." Lev. 19:18**

The ancient book of Enoch is another source which confirms the prohibition in gentler language:

**"Blessed is the man who does not direct his heart with malice against any man." Enoch 44:3**

Enoch goes into greater detail since this is one of the most important of all the commandments.

*"Endure for the sake of the Lord every wound, every injury, every evil word and attack. If ill-requitals befall you, return them not either to neighbor or enemy, because the Lord will return them for you and be your avenger on the day of great judgment, that there be no avenging here among men." Enoch 50:4-5*

Note that the scripture is speaking of "men." Strangers may do to each other as their god requires in their own land, but the Law applies to man. It continues:

*"He who vents anger on any man without injury, the Lord's great anger will cut him down, he who spits on the face of man reproachfully, will be cut down at the Lord's great judgment. Blessed is the man who does not direct his heart with malice against any man." Enoch 44:2,3*

Josephus repeats the prohibition:

**"I require you to abstain from shedding the blood of men." Antiquities 1:3:8.<sup>13</sup>**

After the millions of Israel had been taken out and placed in faraway lands to protect them, and a handful had returned to Palestine, the land was conquered by the Greeks. These alien rulers drafted some of the returned Israelites into their armies to fight other Israelites. Josephus records the strong protest:

13 To shed the blood of man who has committed no offense is a capital crime. (1) "Whoso killeth any person, the murderer shall be put to death." Num. 35:29-30 (2) "If the revenger of blood (the executioner) kill the slayer: he shall not be guilty of blood." Numbers 35:27. To refuse to execute judgment on those whom God has passed judgment and sentenced is also a capital crime. (3) "Because thou hast let go out of thy hand a man whom I appointed to utter destruction, therefore thy life shall go for his life, and thy people for his people. I Ki 20:42

**"They forced the Jews that were among them to bear arms against their own countrymen, which is unlawful for us to do." Life of Flavius Josephus, v. 6**

When Josephus wrote, he was a conquered foe, the ex-general of armies which had been fighting the Romans. He had to write in a manner both understandable and at the same time acceptable to the Romans. A Roman understood the concept of "Judea," which was just one more of their many provinces. To them, people in the province of Judea were simply Judeans, or Jews.

To the people actually residing there this was not the case. In the north of Palestine were the Israelites of Galilee, from whence Jesus came. Adjoining to the south were the mixed peoples of Samaria. Next, the people of Jerusalem, including returned Israelites from Babylon. In the south, now occupying the lands vacated by Judah, lived the hated Idumeans or Edomites, brought into the congregation of Israel in violation of the Law<sup>14</sup> by decree of the renegade ruler Hyrcanus, who was also high priest. Idumeans were close kin to the Arabs and Syrians who surrounded Judea and infiltrated the land. All of these were lawless people.<sup>15</sup>

### Paroling Kinsmen PWs

Josephus relates that when Israel was warring in Samaria, they had made captives of their own kind. These prisoners were given parole. Parole was a practice always honored in Israelite nations until the rise of Samaritanism in recent years. Here are the verses.

*"Obed ... complained that they ...make captives out of their kinsmen ... to let them go home without doing them any harm... So the... men took the captives and let them go, and took care of them, and gave them provisions, and sent them away to their own country, without doing them any harm." Antiquities 9:7:2.*

Once more, the rule:

**"In case one of their own blood, ... should attempt to confound or dissolve their constitution of government (God's Laws),**

14 "A bastard (Heb: mamzêr - mixed breed, mongrel) shall not enter into the congregation of the Lord; even to his tenth generation shall he not enter into the congregation of the Lord." Deut 23:2

15 They were so lawless that they became a matriarchal society. It was only by tracing descent through the mother that descent and inheritance could be guaranteed.



they should take vengeance on them, both all in general, and each person in particular ... that if they were not able to take such vengeance, they should still demonstrate that what was done was contrary to their wills." *Antiquities 4:8:45.*

Again, in simpler terms:

"When any persons would compel us to break our laws, then it is that we choose to go to war." *Against Apion 2:38*

The importance of Phineas and his acts is a keystone of God's Law. The importance cannot be overestimated. His acts are held up as examples again and again to show that only he and his posterity should have the dignity of the priesthood.

*"Phineas the son of Eleazar ... had zeal in the fear of the Lord, and stood up with good courage of heart when the people were turned back, and made reconciliation for Israel. Therefore was there a covenant of peace made with him, that he should be the chief ... of his people, and that he and his posterity should have the dignity of the priesthood for ever." Ecclesiasticus 45:22-24*

### Man Ordered To Fight Man

While it is generally forbidden for man to raise his hand against man, sometimes it is commanded that man punish man for a grievous sin against God.

The Book of Judges records an example where God commands man to go against man to slay him. The war that followed was ordered by God. It almost destroyed an entire tribe of Israel. And as one would expect, it was Phineas who was chosen to lead the armies. But first, the background to the story:

*"There was a certain Levite ... who took a concubine (secondary wife) ... And he said to his servant, Come and let us ... lodge all night in Gibeah. ... the men of the place were Benjamites ... behold, the men of the city beset the house round about ... and spake to the master of the house ... saying, Bring forth the man ... that we may know him. And, the master of the house ... said unto them, Nay ... unto this man do not so vile a thing. But the men ... took his concubine ... and they knew her, and abused her all night. ... and, behold, ...there was no such deed done or seen*

*from the day that the children of Israel came up out of the land of Egypt ...*

*"Then all ... Israel ... was gathered together ... And the tribes ... sent ... through ... Benjamin, saying ... deliver us the men ... the children of Beliah ... that we may put them to death ... but ... Benjamin would not hearken to the voice of their brethren ..."* *Judges 19:1 - 20:13*

*"So all the men of Israel were gathered against the city, knit together as one man ... And the children of Israel came near against the children of Benjamin ... And Benjamin went forth against them out of Gibeah ... And Phineas ... stood ... saying, shall I ... go out to battle against the children of Benjamin my brother, or shall I cease? And the Lord said, Go up ..."*

*"And the children of Benjamin ... were drawn away from the city. ... the children of Israel said, Let us flee, and draw them from the city ...*

*"And there came against Gibeah ten thousand chosen men out of all Israel, and the battle was sore ... and the children of Israel destroyed of the Benjamites that day twenty and five thousand and a hundred men ...*

*"And the liers in wait hasted, and rushed upon Gibeah; and ... smote all the city with the edge of the sword...*

*"... when the flame began to arise up out of the city with a pillar of smoke ... they turned their backs before the men of Israel unto the way of the wilderness ...*

*"So that all which fell that day of Benjamin were twenty and five thousand men that drew the sword ...*

*"And the men of Israel turned again upon the children of Benjamin, and smote them with the edge of the sword, as well the men of every city, as the beast, and all that came to hand, also they set on fire all the cities that they came to..."* *Judges 20:11-46*



### Fate Accorded Those Who Refuse Help

The question often asked is - what happens to those who know the right thing to do and don't do it? The answer was given in Judges:

*"And they said, What one of the tribes of Israel that came not up to Mizpeh to the Lord? And behold there came none from ... Jabesh-gilead ... And the congregation sent thither 12,000 men ... saying, Go and smite the inhabitants of Jabesh-gilead with the edge of the sword, with the women and children." Judges 21:8-10*

The idea of destroying one's own kind - men, women, and children - is unsettling. However, scripture names the time when such a thing was necessary.

The idea is accepted that God made us. This is quite literal. The Word was God, and the Word required that murderers and rapists be executed as an example, so that they wouldn't reproduce and mix with the congregation, thereby in time making the rest like themselves. Failure to execute judgment develops a population that is descended from lawless people. Lawless people commit lawless acts.

When God's Laws are not enforced, when murderers and rapists remain unpunished and reproduce others like themselves, the result is a lawless society. It may also indicate that strangers who are lawless have already entered the group and their lawless descendants are influencing its behavior. Or, it may indicate that the group itself has been bred to be biologically lawless.

### The Scottish Sheep Dog Story

A short time ago I received the following letter from an inmate in the penitentiary.

"Dear Mr. Hoskins: I killed a man and am in the penitentiary. I expect to be paroled. My grandmother was an Indian. I have blond hair and blue eyes. Does the law "Nobastard (mixed-breed) may enter the congregation of Israel," prevent me from marrying a "White" girl when I leave prison? Preachers won't give me a straight answer." J. M. - Montana

This young chap appeared to be sincere. He had no idea what he was getting into. I sat down and wrote him a letter that attempted to explain. This was the letter:

"Dear J. M.: I know of a Scottish sheep dog. The first time she saw sheep at the age of six weeks she tried to herd them. This trait is inbred. The fine points of herding she learned from older more experienced sheep dogs, but she instinctively herded sheep from the first instant she saw them. She has no choice. For 1000 generations all Scottish shepherds before her who could not and did not herd were killed or prevented from breeding. She is descended from those who did herd.

"A "White" man is self evidence of what he is. God's Law calls - he comes. He has no choice. For 1,000 generations the murderers and rapists among his people were executed by His Law, or not allowed to breed. Few slipped through the Law's net - very few. This trait is so ingrained that strangers may cheat him, rob him, rape his women, steal his children, and kill him. Only reluctantly will he defend himself. This has a limit.

"Such is not the case of other strangers such as Blacks. They are the result of 1000 generations of those who bought wives by stealing cattle and who rose to authority by murder. Inefficient thieves and murderers did not gain cattle with which to buy wives. They did not reproduce. Like breeds like. Western jails are filled with unlawful Blacks. They are the result of selective breeding.

"The Indian's story is the same. For 1000 generations they rewarded murder and horse stealing. The best murderer was made chief and many wives were bought by the best horse thief. The product is the result of 1000 generations of thieves and murderers. Like breeds like. The jails in the American West are filled with them. A wolf is "ravening" before he tears his first sheep.<sup>16</sup>

"You sound like a nice fellow. I wish you well. But, in spite of your blond hair and blue eyes and sounding like a nice guy, you murdered a man. Like breeds like. Murder is the leading cause of death among your males. The same is true for Blacks.

<sup>16</sup> This is not to say that Whites did NOT have horse thieves. They did. But, they did not make them rulers, they hanged them. There's the difference.



Following are listed some of the Laws the faithful live by which forbid marriage with the unlawful:

**"Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill (the Law)." Matt 5:17.**

**"There shall no stranger (Heb: zûwr - racial alien) eat of the holy thing (the Law)." Lev. 22:10.**

This is a statement of fact. If we do associate with the lawless, the scripture states:

**"There is no hope: no; for I have loved strangers (Heb: "zûwr - racial alien), and after them I will go." Jer 2:25.**

"This too is a statement of fact. The next part is cut and dried:

**"But if ye will not ... do all these commandments; ... I will send wild beasts among you which shall rob you of your children ..." Lev. 26:14-35.**

"If this happens and children are caught and married to strangers the law requires this:

**"If the priest's daughter (each of the lawful is a priest) also be married unto a stranger, she may not eat of an offering of the holy thing (one cannot mix unlawful with lawful). But if the priest's daughter be a widow or divorced, and have no child, and is returned unto her fathers' house .... she shall eat of her fathers' meat (repentance must be followed by action); but there shall no stranger (zûwr) eat thereof." Lev. 22:12-13**

"The greatest curse is this - to be forsaken by God, and there is one sure way to be forsaken:

**"Thou hast forsaken thy people ... because ... they please themselves in the children of strangers." Isa 2:6**

"What to the willful stranger is mere amusement, is to the Westerner - death! His God's Law made his people. They are the result of this Law. *"I am ... in you, and you in me."* John 14:20. The absence of Law is the absence of God. It destroys his people.

"Your law made you. You are a result of that law. You must find one of your own to marry. Your offspring will be like you. If you enter the Western nation you will bring your 1000 ancestors with you. To absorb you is to absorb your ancestors. Our nation will become like them, lawless.

"In the past many Western nations have abandoned the Word and been destroyed by the plague as a consequence. Many have been saved when the Phineas Priesthood arrived to save them. It is never wise to become what the taboos of a people consider a problem. The reason is simple. There are people in the land who fear God's anger more than man. The thing you want to avoid is this:

**"Then up stood Phineas, and executed judgment, and so the plague was stayed." Ps 106:30**

The Scottish sheep dog story related above explains a position not understood by some who have not had the advantage of living on a farm and dealing with livestock. God made like to breed like. A mean bull is a lawless bull. He may be of the best bloodlines but, if he is lawless, he will get you sooner or later. Anything else is wishful thinking.

### The Memorial Altar Incident

The scripture states that election to the Priesthood of Phineas was achieved by eagerness and dedication to uphold God's Law. Phineas proved that he was ready to act for his people in other capacities in addition to that of General of the Armies.

Honors were his because he proved his dedication. Praises were given; recognition and approval abounded. Greater responsibilities awaited.

A dispute arose in Israel. Two factions of the nation were going to war against each other. The emissary sent to mediate had to be held in highest esteem by both parties and by all Israelites. The one who had proven himself most acceptable was naturally the most qualified. It was Phineas himself.

This is how Joshua tells the story:

*"And the Lord gave unto Israel all the land which he sware to give unto his fathers ... therefore now ... get you ... unto the*



*land of your possession ... But take diligent heed to do the commandment and the law, ... to love the Lord your God, and to walk in all his ways, and to keep his commandments ...*

*"So Joshua blessed them, and sent them ... And ... they departed from the children of Israel out of Shiloh ... to go unto the country of Gilead, to the land of their possession ... according to the word of the Lord...*

*"And when they came to the borders of Jordan ... built there an altar by Jordan, a great altar to see.*

*"And the children of Israel heard say, Behold, the children of Reuben and the children of Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh have built an altar over against the land of Canaan, in the borders of Jordan, at the passage of the children of Israel.*

*"And when the children of Israel heard of it, the whole congregation of the children of Israel gathered themselves together at Shiloh, to go up to war against them.*

*"And the children of Israel sent unto the children of Reuben, and to the children of Gad, ... Phineas ...<sup>17</sup>*

*"And they came ... and they spake ... saying ... What trespass is this that ye have committed against the God of Israel, to turn away this day from following the Lord, in that ye have builded you an altar, that ye might rebel this day against the Lord? ... that tomorrow he will be wroth with the whole congregation of Israel<sup>18</sup>*

*"Then the children of Reuben ... Gad, and ... Manasseh answered ... we have built us an altar ... not for burnt offering nor for sacrifice: But that it may be witness between us, and you ... that your children may not say to our children in time to come, Ye have no part in the Lord ...*

*"God forbid that we should rebel against the Lord ... to build an altar ... beside the altar to the Lord our God ...*

*"And when Phineas the priest, and the princes of the congregation ... heard the words ... it pleased them. And Phineas ...*

<sup>17</sup> I(1) "It being part of their law, that they should not bring an army ... without sending an embassy first, and trying whereby whether they will repent or not." Antiquities 5:3:9

<sup>18</sup> God's anger brings "Plague." No 16:45-47, I Chron 21:22, II Chron 21:12-14, Ps 106:30. Plague is more to be feared than war or famine.

*said This day we perceive that the Lord is among us, because ye have not committed this trespass against the Lord: now ye have delivered the children of Israel out of the hand of the Lord.*

*"And Phineas ... returned ... out of the land of Gilead ... to the children of Israel, and brought them word ... And the thing pleased the children of Israel; and the children of Israel blessed God, and did not ... go up against them in battle, to destroy the land wherein the children of Reuben and Gad dwelt.*

*"And the children of Reuben and the children of Gad called the altar 'Ed': for it shall be a witness between us that the Lord is God." Joshua 21:43 - 22:34*

### Altars

A traditional altar is constructed from uncut stones and has a flat top on which sacrifices are made to a god.

Altars may be raised to either the Christian God or other gods. The physical existence of the altar is a memorial and commemorates an act. A church building, an orphanage, or a nursing home is an altar.

An act, such as the widow's mite, may be considered a monument or an altar symbolizing how one sacrifices or worships his god. A military cemetery is an altar. The sacrifices interred there may be either to Baal or to the Christian's God. A usury bank is an altar. A non-usury bank of our ancestors was an altar showing obedience to God's Law. A church built with usury bonds sold to other Christians is an altar. Phoenicians sacrificed their first-born children on altars. The sacrifice was the monument; the altar is the place where it was done. The same is true today. Altars are symbols celebrating how one worships his god.

### The ED Altar

On every border of every political subdivision of the peoples of the West an ED altar should be erected to show that the Lord is God, and His rules will always rule Christian lives and conduct.

One of the oldest monuments of this kind in the last 2,000 years may be the Herman Monument in the Teutoburg Forest. This monument commemorates the union of Western peoples to fight the Roman invasion of northern lands. The existence of this monu-



ment has been a thorn in the side of those who wish to conceal the fact that Westerners can unite to oppose a common enemy. The story is told in *Our Nordic Race*.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>19</sup> *Our Nordic Race*, 1958, Richard Kelly Hoskins, Virginia Publishing Company, PO Box 997, Lynchburg, VA 24505, \$7 copy.

### Ehud

There are many Phineas-like acts recorded in the scriptures. One of the best known is the act of Ehud that helped deliver Israel from Moab in 1390 B.C.

*"And the children of Israel dwelt among the Canaanites, Hittites, and Amorites, and Perizzites, and Hivites, and Jebusites: And they took their daughters to be their wives, and gave their daughters to their sons, and served their gods. ... and the Lord strengthened Eglon the king of Moab against Israel ... So the children of Israel served ... the king of Moab ...*

*"But when the children of Israel cried unto the Lord, the Lord raised them up a deliverer, Ehud ... a man left handed; and by him the children of Israel sent a present unto ... the king of Moab.*

*"But Ehud made him a dagger which had two edges, of a cubit length (18 inches); and he did gird it under his raiment upon his right thigh. And he brought the present unto Eglon king of Moab: and Eglon was a very fat man.*

*"And when he had made an end to offer the present, he sent away the people that bare the present... and said, I have a secret errand unto thee, O king: who said, Keep silence. And all that stood by him went out from him.*

*"And Ehud came unto him; and he was sitting in a summer parlor, which he had for himself alone. And Ehud said, I have a message from God unto thee. And he arose out of his seat. And Ehud put forth his left hand, and took the dagger from his right thigh, and thrust it into his belly. And the haft also went in after the blade; and the fat closed upon the blade, so that he could not draw the dagger out. ...*

*"Then Ehud went forth through the porch, and shut the doors of the parlor upon him, and locked them.... And it came to pass ... the children of Israel went down with him ... And they slew of Moab ... So Moab was subdued that day under the hand of Israel." Judges 3:1-30*



### Gideon Against Succoth and Penuel

In 1150 B.C., Gideon went after the oppressors of his people. Again, there was also punishment for those Israelites who would not help, and there was special punishment for strangers who kill Israelites.

*"And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the Lord: and the Lord delivered them into the hand of Midian ... and because of the Midianites the children of Israel made them the dens which are in the mountains, and caves, and strongholds.*

*"And so it was, when Israel had sown, that the Midianites ... the Amalekites, and the children of the east, even they came up against them; ... and destroyed the increase of the earth ... and left no sustenance for Israel... For they came up ... as grasshoppers for multitude; ... And Israel was greatly impoverished ... and the children of Israel cried unto the Lord.*

*"And it came to pass, when the children of Israel cried unto the Lord ... That the Lord sent a prophet unto the children of Israel, which said ... Thus saith the Lord God of Israel ... I am the Lord your God; fear not the gods of the Amorites ...*

*"And Gideon ... and the 300 men that were with him ... pursuing (the Midianites). And he said unto the men of Succoth, Give, I pray you, loaves of bread unto the people that follow me; for they be faint and I am pursuing after ... (the) kings of Midian.*

*"And the princes of Succoth said, Are the ... (kings) now in thine hand, that we should give bread unto thine army?<sup>1</sup> And Gideon said, Therefore when the Lord hath delivered (the kings) into mine hand, then I will tear your flesh with the thorns of the wilderness and with briers ... And he went up thence to Penuel and spake unto them likewise: and the men of Penuel answered him as the men of Succoth had answered him ... And he spake unto the men of Penuel saying, When I come again in peace, I will break down this tower.*

<sup>1</sup> These men did not want to anger the enemy by aiding Gideon as long as the enemy was powerful and might harm them.

*"Now ... (the kings) were in Karkor, and their hosts with them, about 15,000 men, all that were left of all the hosts of the children of the east for there fell a hundred and twenty thousand men that drew sword.*

*"And Gideon ... smote the hosts: And when (the kings) fled, he pursued after them, and took the two kings of Midian, Zebah and Zalmunna, ... And Gideon ... turned from battle before the sun was up, And caught a young man of the men of Succoth, and inquired of him: and he described unto him the princes of Succoth, and the elders thereof, even three score and seventeen men.*

*"And he came unto the men of Succoth, and said, Behold Zebah and Zalmunna, with whom ye did upbraid me ... that we should give bread unto thy men that are weary.*

*"And he took the elders of the city, and thorns of the wilderness and briers, and with them he taught the men of Succoth. And he beat down the tower of Penuel, and slew the men of the city.*

*"Then said he unto Zebah and Zalmunna, What manner of men were they whom ye slew at Tabor? And they answered, As thou art, so were they; each one resembled the children of a king.*

*"And he said, They were my brethren ... as the Lord liveth, if ye had saved them alive, I would not slay you. ... And Gideon arose, and slew Zebah and Zalmunna." Judges 6:1- 10; 8:1-21.*

### Jael - Phineas Priestess

In scripture, women entered the priesthood by their individual acts, just as men did. The story of Jael is one such story.

*"And the children of Israel ... did evil in the sight of the Lord. ... And the Lord sold them (let them become slaves) into the hand of Jabin king of Canaan ... the captain of whose host was Sisera*

*"... And the children of Israel cried (prayed) unto the Lord: for ... he mightily oppressed the children of Israel.*



*"And Deborah, a prophetess ... judged Israel at that time ... and the Children of Israel came up to her for judgment ...*

*"And she sent and called Barak ... and said unto him, Hath not the Lord God of Israel commanded, saying, Go ... and take with thee 10,000 men ... And I will draw unto thee ... Sisera, the captain of Jabin's army, with his chariots and his multitude; and I will deliver him into thine hand. ... for the Lord shall sell Sisera into the hand of a woman ...*

*"And they showed Sisera that Barak ... was gone up to Mount Tabor. And Sisera gathered together all his chariots, even 900 chariots of iron ...*

*"And Deborah said unto Barak ... this is the day in which the Lord hath delivered Sisera into thine hand ... And the Lord discomfited Sisera and all his chariots, and all his host, with the edge of the sword ... so that Sisera lighted down off his chariot, and fled away on his feet.*

*"But Barak pursued after the chariots, and after the host ... and all the host of Sisera fell upon the edge of the sword (were killed); and there was not a man left.*

*"... Sisera fled away on his feet to the tent of Jael the wife of Heber ... for there was peace between Jabin ... and ... Heber...*

*"And Jael went out to meet Sisera and said unto him, Turn in, my lord, turn in to me; fear not. And when he had turned in unto her into the tent, she covered him with a mantle. And he said unto her, Give me, I pray thee, a little water to drink; for I am thirsty. And she opened a bottle of milk, and gave him drink, and covered him.*

*"Again he said unto her, Stand in the door of the tent, and it shall be, when any man doth come and inquire of thee, and say, Is there any man here? that thou shalt say, No.*

*"Then Jael Heber's wife took a nail of the tent, and took an hammer in her hand, and went softly unto him, and smote the nail into his temples, and fastened it into the ground: for he was fast asleep and weary, so he died. ...*

*"And the hand of the children of Israel prospered ... until they had destroyed Jabin, king of Canaan." Judges 4:1- 24*

### The Apocrypha

The fourteen books of the Apocrypha were added to the scriptures when the first Bible was put together in the earliest days of Christendom. The Septuagint contained it, as did the Hebrew Bible, and also the King James version. They all contained it.

In the printing of 1825 it was removed. No one will take credit for its removal.

This left a gap in our Bible history. The present Bible traces from the Garden of Eden to the removal of Israel into Babylonian captivity and the return of part of them. There is a large gap that extends from "the return" to the time of Jesus. This gap is caused by the removal of these 14 books.

One theory that may account for the removal is that stories of the Apocrypha constantly draw on the Law for every act. Present-day Samaritan Christianity, or Judeo-Christianity, would be difficult to sustain if it had to pass its beliefs through the filter of Apocryphal scripture. Another reason may be that national revolts often have used the Maccabees story as a role model. This would be difficult to do if it were not available to be followed.

One thing is certain. The Maccabean Revolt used Phineas as ITS role model.

In the first part of I Maccabees it is recorded:

*"Mattathias... was inflamed with zeal ... thus delt he zealously for the law of God, like as Phinees did unto Zambri." I Maccabees 2:24-26*

The story of Phineas was well known. The use of his name conjured up visions of the patriot. From childhood, people knew what Phineas had done and what a Phineas priest did, or would be expected to do, in a given situation. His name was waved like a flag again and again:

*"Phineas our father in being zealous and fervent obtained the covenant of an everlasting priesthood." I Maccabees 3:54*



### The Story Of The Maccabees

The story of the Maccabean Wars has thrilled readers for thousands of years. This is how the war started:

*"The (Greek) king's officers, ... came into the city ... to make them (the Israelites) sacrifice (violate the Law) ...*

*"Then answered the king's officers, and said to Mattathias ... Thou art a ruler, and an honorable and great man in this city ... Now ... fulfill the king's commandment ... and thou ... shall be honored with silver and gold ...*

*"Mattathias answered ... Though all the nations (of Israel) ... fall away every one from the religion of their fathers ... Yet will I and my sons .. walk in the covenant of our fathers. God forbid that we should forsake the law and the ordinances ...*

*"Mattathias ... was inflamed with zeal, ... therefore he ran and slew him upon the altar. Also the king's commissioner, who compelled men to sacrifice, he killed at that time, ... Thus dealt he zealously for the law of God, like as Phinees did unto Zambri the son of Salom.*

*"And Mattathias cried ... Whosoever is zealous of the law, and maintaineth the covenant, let him follow me. So he and his sons fled into the mountains, and left all that ever they had in the city." I Maccabees 1-27*

The Wars of the Maccabees went on for years. The incredible feats of valor, the suffering and sacrifice were in the end crowned by the successful ejection of the strangers from the land, and Israel was allowed to live to themselves alone.

### St. George And The Dragon

The story of St. George is old. According to ancient manuscripts he was a Christian knight born in the province of Lybia, in the city of either Lydda or Dospolis, with one of those two places being his final resting place. Other manuscripts say that he was born in Cappadocia.<sup>1</sup>

One day St. George was out riding and came upon a marshy swamp. In the swamp lived a dragon whose evil influence had spread over the countryside. The people of the countryside had gathered together to fight it, but the breath of the dragon was so bad that they were forced to flee.

This dragon required two sheep each day for its meal. In time the sheep were gone and a human had to be substituted. The victim was chosen by lot and it was the king's own daughter to whom the lot fell at the latest choosing.

There was no one willing to take her place, and the maiden dressed to meet her doom. St. George arrived in the nick of time and pierced the dragon with his lance, thereby saving the young maid. Then he took the maid's scarf, tied it around the dragon's neck, and the dragon followed the princess back to the city.

The people were in mortal fear and threatened to leave the city. St. George told them that if only they would believe in Jesus Christ and be baptized, he would slay the dragon. Then 15,000 men, women and children were baptized.

St. George was honored and offered great treasures, but he told the king to give the treasure to the poor.

This was the period under Emperors Diocletian and Maximian. A great persecution began against the Christians. St. George saw that many feared and became apostates. He went into the city square and proclaimed that "all the gods of the gentiles were devils," and that "my god made the heavens and is very God." Dantianus, the provost, had him arrested. Unable to make him deny his story, Dantianus had him tortured with hot irons and by being crushed between two spiked wheels, all with no result.

Substituting soft words, Dantianus made promises of good treatment and reward if he would recant. George pretended to agree to make a sacrifice to the Samaritan gods. The people assembled in the

<sup>1</sup> The Lives Of The Saints, Thurston & Atwater, Kennedy & Sons, 1962, NY



temple to witness the surrender of this noted blasphemer of the gods, but St. George prayed and fire came down and destroyed the building, idols, and heathen priests, and the earth opened to swallow the rest.

Dantianus then ordered St. George to be beheaded. This was quickly done. Dantianus himself was devoured by flame from Heaven on his way home from committing his dastardly act.

### Meaning

A dragon is an evil. The "breath" of the dragon is a dragon's defense. It is effective. This evil required two sheep a day. A sheep is a sacrifice (ransom, tax, bribe, usury) given to a god (a god is whatever replaces The Word). It is the payment required of a subject or slave people. The non-payment of ransom indicates revolt against the evil. This dragon required ransoms each day.

After all the sheep were used for sacrifices a young maid was required. This is usually the case, especially when usury is practiced. When the money is gone the people have nothing to offer except their bodies. They become physical slaves. In the tobacco companies in Richmond during the depression, many of the pretty young wives could keep their jobs and feed their needy children only if they would agree to the advances of dark skinned managers from New York. Not to agree to the advances was to lose their jobs and starve their children. This was the strangers' law. The strangers were there in the first place because the usury system had bribed the king (government), who allowed them to enter the land and practice their craft (usury) which delivered to them the tobacco company, and with the control of the company came the control of the young girl's body. She was a sacrifice - a ransom. The bodies of the young girls were sacrifices, ransoms to the dragon.

The young girl that St. George saved was the ruler's own daughter. No one is exempt when the dragon rules. She was required by "the dragon." His "evil breath" (starvation, beatings by thugs, or false arrest by authorities) defended him against those who would protest.

The knight, St. George, arrived and pierced the evil with a lance (The Word). Thus transfixed, and with his power removed, the dragon was defenselessly led by the seduction of the maid's chaste scarf back to the city where he was easily slain by St. George.

Later, the evils of the day compelled St. George to proclaim from a public place that the dragon, or evil, or lawlessness, was nothing but gentile gods and devils. This provoked those who profited from following the gentile gods. They captured and tortured St. George.

Later, just as Mattathias the Maccabee did, he pretended to agree, but used the pretense to attack his enemies. It may be that he followed the course of the Maccabees, but was caught and beheaded. It is clearly stated that those who opposed him, including Dantianus the provost, were consumed by fire from above.

### Beowulf

The story of Beowulf is also old. Nordic tribes on their migrations from Scandinavia took it all over the Western world.

King Hrothgar of Denmark had a wonderful hall. It was invaded by a monster in human form named Grendel. Grendel entered the hall, seized the king's followers, and vanished into the night.

Beowulf and his knights were welcomed as deliverers. That night they mounted guard in the hall. Grendel came and devoured one of Beowulf's knights. Beowulf fought with the dragon and in the fight tore an arm from him. The dragon fled, leaving a bloody trail that ended at the distant sea.

The next morning the people rejoiced. The rejoicing was short-lived for that night the mother of Grendel arrived to avenge her son. She seized another of Hrothgar's nobles and vanished into the night.

When day arrived, Beowulf knew exactly where to go. He went to the sea's edge. There he donned armor and sword and plunged in. In a vaulted room at the sea bottom he fought and slew Grendel's mother. He also found the body of Grendel. He cut off Grendel's head and returned, a hero, with his trophy. Beowulf was showered with honors.

Later Beowulf became king and ruled peacefully for 50 years. At the end of that time another fiery dragon ravished the land. This dragon was followed to his lair, a burrow. Beowulf with 11 of his followers waited outside. Beowulf slew the dragon when it charged forth. Ten of his followers were terror-stricken and fled. Beowulf was mortally wounded in the fight. One brave knight, Wiglaf,



stayed. He entered the mound and discovered a great treasure. Before he died, Beowulf named Wiglaf his successor.

Twelve of Beowulf's best known knights rode around his grave celebrating the virtues of the bravest, gentlest and most generous of warriors.

### Meaning

In 1815, it was discovered that many of the people and places named in the story of Beowulf were actual historical figures. This elevated the saga to a different plane. This was another Phineas-type story, retold in a different setting, dealing with different problems but following the same rules.

A dragon is a great evil. Dragons are called one thing in one place and another somewhere else. This particular dragon's name was Grendel. We are not sure of its meaning.

Beowulf was the polar opposite of the dragon. He was as good as the dragon was bad. Only knights who carefully follow and obey the Law can be "good" or "pure." Only the good or pure stand a chance of success in battles with lawlessness, which is also called "evil" or a "dragon."

The dragon usually comes from the "night" - the unknown. It devoured good knights as it discovered their weaknesses. "Evils" parading as dragons don't actually eat people. The knights were consumed or "ruined" by giving in to some evil weakness and were therefore lost to God THE WORD, their king, and the people who depended on them. Hrothgar, King of the Danes, was not skillful enough, or "good" enough, to deal with this evil.

Beowulf arrived and was welcomed. His virtues were recognized. He waited in the Hall which represents the scene of action. Grendel entered and lost an arm in the fight. This arm is a portion of, or an organization attached to, the Evil. Though only an arm, its removal was enough to mortally wound the dragon.

The life is in the blood. Whatever Grendel's blood was, it left a clear trail to the edge of the sea. Sea represents peoples or nations. It is prohibited for Western people to enter a strange sea, but for the sake of those entrusted to him Beowulf donned armor (lawfulness, called purity or virtue) and, armed with a sword (THE WORD, or THE LAW), he defiled himself by plunging into the forbidden sea.

When in the sea he easily located the lair of the evil. It is in a specific place - a vaulted room signifying organization and wealth, at the very bottom of the sea. In this room Beowulf discovered Grendel's mother - another evil. Seldom do dragons go singly. Evils give birth to other evils, dragons give birth to dragons. The body of Grendel was discovered in the lair of another dragon.

Both were discovered in the "sea of strangers" where most dragons originate. This is why we are instructed:

**"Go not unto the way of the Gentiles, and unto any city of the Samaritans enter ye not: But go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel." Matt 10:5,6.<sup>2</sup>**

**"I was sent to the lost sheep of the house of Israel, and to them alone." Matt 15:24**

**"O children of Israel ... You only have I known of all the families of the earth." Deut 7:6**

Jesus was the personification of the Law. Dragons are the opposites of the Law. That's why the Priesthood of Phineas has knights constantly on guard against dragons, to drive them back into the sea as soon as they are discovered.

Beowulf, like Phineas, was honored on his return. Grendel's head was his trophy. He later became king and ruled peacefully for 50 years. If there are no evils, a king's rule will be peaceful. At the end of 50 years came the Jubilee - the time when land is returned to its real owners.

**"In the year of the jubilee the field shall return unto him of whom it was bought, even to him to whom the possession of the land did belong." Lev 27:24**

The Jubilee uncovered another dragon, a fiery evil that ravished the land, burning and destroying. The evil was traced to a burrow. This time its dwelling was not in the sea but on the land. Beowulf and 11 others (the symbology of the 12 disciples is inescapable) ride to the lair and wait outside. To enter would be death. The evil is slain when it charges forth, but Beowulf is mortally wounded. Ten knights flee. Wiglaf alone remains. Only the bravest of the brave remains in the face of this powerful evil. Wiglaf enters the mound

<sup>2</sup> The story of the Good Samaritan in no way nullifies this Law. It only explains a standard of conduct expected of everyone.



and discovers what the evil power had collected - money. The dragon's name may have been - USURY.<sup>3</sup>

Beowulf names his successor, Wiglaf, the knight who had proven himself. The money was returned to the people from whom it was taken.<sup>4</sup>

Twelve of Beowulf's bravest knights (again, note the symbology) ride around his grave to commemorate the death of the bravest, gentlest, and most generous of rulers.

### King Arthur

History presents King Arthur as a British Christian warrior fighting against the Saxon kings of Kent. The first mention of his famous Round Table appears in *Geste des Bretons* of Maistre Wace in 1155, round which were grouped the best, most virtuous and bravest knights of all.

The knights were sent off on quests. Some involved slaying dragons. The dragon that destroyed the Round Table and spelled the end of Arthur's reign was the dragon named adultery.

The bravest and most virtuous of Arthur's knights fell in love with Arthur's wife and committed adultery with her. This brought lawlessness into Arthur's kingdom.<sup>5</sup>

Breaking God's Law dissolved God's constitution with his people and brought his wrath. Arthur was honor bound to protect his people from God's wrath by enforcing His Law to restore the constitution.

Arthur was required to bring whatever force was necessary, in this case an army, against Lancelot to punish the evil. Lancelot then fought Arthur's attempt to enforce the law, making him violate still another Law against shedding man's blood.<sup>6</sup>

3 "He that bath ... given forth upon usury ... he shall surely die." Ez 18:8-13

4 The present debt of America is \$9.3 trillion. Converted into equity and divided among Western-Christians, each family would receive almost \$250,000 in equity plus an income in excess of \$25,000. in addition to his present income.

5 "In case one of their own blood ... should attempt to confound or dissolve their constitution of government (God's Laws), they should take vengeance on them." Antiquities 4:8:45

6 "Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man." Gen. 9:8-15

Lancelot, the lawless, loosed the dragons, the dragons that destroyed the Round Table and Arthur's kingdom.

Arthur is listed as the benefactor of Glastonbury,<sup>7</sup> and it is the hero's resting place.

The witches and wizards were added by the story tellers, but the basic story is there. The round table is an example of all that is great and glorious. Lancelot is the example of the danger inherent in a Christian apparently strong on the outside, but weak within. "By their fruits ye shall know them." ... adultery, murder, raising his hand against man, and refusing to submit to God's Law, all characteristics of one who had only pretended obedience to God's Law. This branded Lancelot a renegade to God.

Lancelot and the false queen had to be punished in obedience to The Word. The sacrifice of Arthur's kingdom and his round table were a great price to pay to achieve this purpose, but the price must be paid if the people of The Word were to survive.

The Round Table of magnificent champions who could handle great problems was later emulated by many others, among whom were the American Texas Rangers. They too punished lawlessness and protected the weak. Their bravery, embodied in "one ranger for one riot," is world famous.

### The Crusader Orders

The Crusades resulted in the formation of three distinct priestly military orders which stood above all the others: the Templars, Hospitalers, and Teutonic Knights. They were the living personification of what the Knights of the Round Table must have been. Each gave up everything and pledged to follow a life of poverty in order to devote his life to the task of driving the infidel from the Holy Land.

<sup>8</sup> These orders produced the ideal of knighthood: the punishing of evil, upholding right, the strict adherence to the example of

7 The church at Glastonbury is said to have been built by Joseph of Arimathea who brought Mary, the mother of Jesus, to England. Tradition says that the ancient olive tree growing there grew from his staff thrust into the ground when he landed. Ancient Glastonbury is one of the several reasons that England was listed as the oldest parish of the Roman Catholic Church.

8 The Crusader Orders, War Cycles / Peace Cycles, p. 26-27.



Phineas. The crusader has been the example for Western man ever since.

They committed a cardinal error: one that destroyed them. While it is true that their individual knights were poor, the crusader organizations themselves were rich.<sup>9</sup> They had been left much land and wealth by well wishers who wished to participate in some way in their great crusade enterprise. This crusader wealth aroused the cupidity of the kings of the various Western countries. In collusion with the Catholic Church, they together looted the Templar crusader organization, seizing its wealth for their own and outlawing its members. The wealthy kings and the wealthy church then later became prey for even more powerful and subtle enemies.

This did not detract from the nobility of the individual crusader knights who gave everything they had in this world including their lives for the great prize, and left behind a legacy of bravery that is the guide for our peoples today.

### Robin Hood

Robin Hood is everyone's childhood ideal. This story also was long believed to have been just a collection of legends and folk tales preserved in England by such names as Robin Hood's Bay, Robin Hood's Cave, Robin Hood's Chase, Robin Hood's Cup (well), Robin Hood's Chair, Robin Hood's Pricks, and many more.<sup>10</sup> Today, serious historians are much less likely to brand these stories as only legend. There is too much evidence supporting an actual historical figure. The story relates that Robin Hood had his land illegally taken from him.

**"The land shall not be sold for ever: for the land is mine."  
Lev 25:13-28**

No one, not even a king, can lawfully take ancestral land. It is to be held in one's family forever.

Robin Hood was outlawed.

Richard, the King of England, was away on a crusade. His brother John ruled in his stead. Richard required money for his

9 "Let him (the king) not have ... abundance of riches ... he may grow too proud to submit to the Laws ... and if he affect any such things let him be restrained, lest he become so potent that his state become inconsistent with your welfare." Josephus Antiquities 4:8:17

10 Encyclopedia Britannica, 14th Ed. 1935.

military adventure. To get the money, John used the crown's ancient practice of allowing the Jews to lend at usury, bankrupt the borrowers, with the King taking half the gain.<sup>11</sup>

### King John's Taxes

King John taxed<sup>12</sup> his people heavily. One is not allowed to take taxes of one's own people, only strangers. There are several reasons for this. First: if a tax must be paid on land in order to own it, it is not owned. There is only conditional ownership which amounts to renting. If the tax (rent) is not produced, the one in authority who taxes will use force to drive that person from land that is supposed to be handed down generation after generation in perpetuity.<sup>13</sup>

Then, too, if the land is taxed (rented) instead of owned outright with no encumbrances, one may have to borrow to pay the tax.<sup>14</sup>

If the king forces his people to borrow to pay the tax, he reduces his people to slavery.<sup>15</sup>

A king who taxes his people so that they are reduced to slavery is an unjust king, one not fit to rule. This has historically been considered justification to remove that king from power. This is what happened to King John. The barons met him at Runnymede and forced him to sign the Magna Carta. It has long been established that sovereigns may not tax sovereigns, a king may not tax kings.<sup>16</sup> God did not give the one chosen king the authority to tax the kings who chose him.

Once, a dragon boat was being hauled up one of the rivers of France by its crew. A French knight on the high river bank called down giving the Vikings his name and the name of his king. He then asked the name of their king. The Vikings laughed and called back, saying, "We have no king for we are all kings!"<sup>17</sup>

11 "If thou has stricken thy hand with a stranger (Heb: zûwr - racial alien), thou art snared with the words of thy mouth. Prov. 6:1

12 "Of whom do the kings of the earth take custom or tribute? of their own children, or of strangers? Peter saith unto him, Of strangers." (Gr: allotrios - foreign, not akin.) ... "Then are the children free." Matt 17:25-26.

13 "The land shall not be sold for ever: for the land is mine; ... If thy brother be waxen poor, and hath sold away some of his possession ... in the jubilee ... he shall return unto his possession." Lev 25:13-28

14 "We have borrowed money for the king's tribute, and that upon our lands and vineyards." Neh 5:4

15 "The borrower is slave to the lender." Prov. 22:7

16 "Jesus Christ ... hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father." Rev 1:5-6

17 "Jesus Christ ... hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father." Rev 1:5, 6



This was true. Vikings contracted away their individual sovereignty only for the length of a voyage. If the captain they elected was just he might be elected again. In the West, Christians may contract away part of their sovereignty for an agreed upon period of time. If the ruler is good, he may be re-elected. If he breaks The Law he may be deposed. Kings rule only when they have something to rule, large or small. If his land is taken from him he is a landless king, with only a castle and no kingdom. To our people, to be landless is to be homeless. The landless are usually homeless servants who work and receive their paycheck from another. Having no land they live in cities and vote for the ones giving them their paychecks. Living in cities deprived of land and a kingdom to rule is a living death. As servants to another people they have become neither kings nor priests. Service to their God becomes hard.

Land taxes are not necessary to raise revenues. For over a thousand years, to raise the king's revenue, the West used wooden tallies that cost neither the king nor the people anything, and were removed from circulation by raising and lowering use taxes.<sup>18</sup>

In that day there were two kinds of money. Wooden tally money and gold and silver (specie) money. Tally money was fine in Britain and freely accepted, but not in the lands of the stranger. The stranger would only accept specie.

Christians took tallies of other Christians. Those in London accepted the tallies of Rotterdam or Frankfurt. But strangers would not take tallies for the supplies they sold King Richard,<sup>19</sup> the champion of Christendom. The fact that Richard dealt with strangers was held against him.<sup>20</sup>

Foolishly, King John tried to tax gold from his subjects who owned little gold for him to tax.

Robin Hood, a victim of King John's unending quest for money to finance his brother's foreign wars, robbed government officials and tax collectors, and shared his gains with the poor. The people protected and kept watch and the barons of England secretly approved. He put his life on the line and has had countless imitators

<sup>18</sup> "Use taxes" are not included in the prohibition unless they can cause loss of land. As long as there is a reasonable alternative to the thing producing the use-duty, use taxes have traditionally been considered permissible.

<sup>19</sup> *War Cycles / Peace Cycles*, p. 31.

<sup>20</sup> "If thou has stricken thy hand with a stranger, thou art snared with the words of thy mouth." Prov 6:1-2

through the years. He was one of those who won. His was a case of enforcing the Law against one's own lawless and unjust kinsmen.

The establishment can never allow a Robin Hood to capture the public's fancy. It would be dangerous in the extreme. He must always be presented as a coldblooded killer.

Jesse James was looked upon by those among whom he lived as a savior, a modern day Robin Hood. He robbed the riches of banks and railroads of an expanding alien presence, took some for himself, and gave much of it to the poor. He rode freely with a \$10,000 reward on his head and was watched over by a sympathetic population numbering in the tens of thousands, even when most lived in extreme poverty and to have betrayed him would have gained great wealth. He was assassinated by a paid agent of the establishment.

Robin Hood, a Phineas Priest, sired a host of imitators. The establishment reaction to a Phineas Priest is always the same:

**"The enemy is eager to destroy all that call upon the Lord. For he knoweth that upon the day that Israel shall repent, the kingdom of the enemy shall be brought to an end." Book of Dan 2:16-17.**

### Sir William Wallace

The story of Sir William Wallace takes place after the invasion of Scotland by England. It is a story of the mistreatment of the Scots by the invading armies who were of the same kind living in a different political subdivision.

The reason for the invasion was that the King of England wanted the lands belonging to the King of Scotland, the lands obtained by usury from the Scottish people by the same international bankers who had gotten the lands in England for the English king.

On the way home one night, Wallace witnessed brigands attacking a gentleman. He entered the fray and killed one of the attackers, one who happened to be a soldier of the invading army.

A raiding party of the invaders reached his home and attempted to wring Sir William's whereabouts from his wife. Infuriated by her silence, the leader of the English party committed the unpardonable act of murdering her and her unborn baby.<sup>21</sup> Outlawed,

<sup>21</sup> "There are things ... we ought to do ... treat those that are esteemed our enemies with moderation ... and especially that the women may not be abused." Josephus Against Apion 2:30



Wallace went to the hills where he slowly gathered a small band of likeminded men. He attacked unprotected tax collectors, governors, and isolated posts. As his band grew into an army he took castles and cities.

After freeing Scotland he met with the invaders under a flag of truce. The truce was broken and he was imprisoned. His trial was a travesty. He was condemned to be hanged, drawn, and quartered. He was only 27 years old.

Sir William Wallace selflessly gave his life for his people and for the Law. His example was held aloft by Robert Bruce who freed Scotland from the invaders, and inherited the Scottish crown lands that had formerly belonged to the Scottish people and were taken from them by crown usurers.

The Phineas warrior through the centuries has dealt with the fact that if lawbreakers sense that they may lose their unlawful gain, they will do anything, anything, to keep it. The most successful Phineas priests appear to be those who treat those outside the law precisely as the Word prescribes. To deviate has brought destruction on them and their people.

In that day, organized religion forbade people from reading the scriptures, since the scriptures revealed prohibitions against the very things the church and the king were doing to obtain enormous wealth. For this reason it is unlikely that Wallace knew that great riches were prohibited to the church and the king.<sup>22</sup>

Again, the reason that enemies of the Word instantly attack those who uphold God's Law:

*"The enemy is eager to destroy all that call upon the Lord. For he knoweth that upon the day that Israel shall repent, the kingdom of the enemy shall be brought to an end." Book of Dan 2:16- 17.*

If the noble Wallace could only have known it, his enemy was not just the king of England. It was his own king, the king of Scotland, the organized religion of the land, and in later years once again the usury system of the international bankers who took turns in oppressing Scotland. All these were ready to destroy Godly men

<sup>22</sup> (1) (King) "Let him not have ... abundance of riches ... he may grow too proud to submit to the Laws ... and if he affect any such things let him be restrained, lest he become so potent that his state become inconsistent with your welfare." Antiquities 4:8:17. (2) (Priests) "I am their inheritance: and ye shall give them no possession in Israel: I am their possession." Ez 44:28

if they in any way presented a danger to the hold they had taken on the land of the people of Scotland.

### Heroes Willing To Die

The thing that Phineas heroes hold in common is their dedication to the Word - the dedication to enforcing God's Law. Their ends also all read alike. Most are martyrs or are willing to be martyrs to the cause.

St. George was killed by the king's men.

Beowulf, after his many victories, was killed by the last dragon he fought.

King Arthur had the sad job of fighting his best friend in support of God's law.

Sir William Wallace lost his wife and child. While almost singlehandedly freeing Scotland from wicked English rule, he freed her only to hand it to his own grasping Scottish dynasty and a grasping established church. He was captured by treachery and died the horrible death of being hanged, drawn, and quartered.

Robin Hood was one of the many through the years who was forced to turn brigand to survive. He is the one best known and most copied. We don't know his final fate.

Jesse James, the public's darling of the postwar period, died at the hands of a traitor, a paid assassin. The establishment continues to besmirch the people's champion.

There are countless others, some of whom are mentioned in the pages following. The thing all have in common is the fanatical drive to enforce God's Law and to fight the tyrant and lawbreaker of the day.

The established religion of each age considered all who would not bend the knee to the will of the church irreverent and ungodly. Un-Lawful kings called those protesting their rule "traitors" and "rebels." The protestors called their oppressors "tyrants." In spite of hardship and affliction, each champion looked to God alone as his king. They were his servants, and, against all odds they attempted to uphold God's Law.

This superhuman drive can best be illustrated by comparing it to the cells of the human body.



### The White Cell

Western Society is like the human body. The life is in the blood. The blood cells are its peoples. There are two kinds. Red blood cells, whose primary job is work, and white blood cells whose job is defense. There are about 740 red blood cells for each white one.

Red blood cells seldom recognize an invading foreign substance. It's not their job. On the other hand, white cells go snooping in closets and around corners looking for alien bodies to attack. The attack itself causes heat; the heat causes the body to manufacture additional white cells. The infected combat zone rises to a head as white cells are killed in the conflict. The head discharges pus along with the alien invader as the body cleanses itself. The pus is dead white cells. They have done their job and paid the price. If they fail, all is lost, the body will sicken and die.

A healthy body will quickly recognize and destroy an invading alien body. To remain in the body, invading alien bodies must first neutralize the body's defenses.

The only way to do this and not be destroyed in the process is to beguile and infect the governing brain - the king. Once this major obstacle is passed other defenses can be infected one by one. Then, the diseased defenses, infected by the aliens invaders, can lead the defenses in full cry after the white cells.

A diseased body's defenses are naturally the most outspoken against invading aliens. They are supposed to be and it is expected of them. But, the defenses are infected, which means that the anti-aliens are aliens themselves. Aliens must control the defenses, even doing great damage to their own kind at times, or they will not survive. This is why crusades against communism, drugs, pornography, immigration, and abortion come to nothing. They are led by aliens, or by body cells infected and financed by them.

It is catastrophe for themselves if invading alien microbes lose control of the defenses. It is the only way they can prevent the body from instantly destroying them. This is why an infected body does not mount a proper defense, and why there are seemingly patriotic leaders who cheer the flag and claim to love their nation and hate evil, but who don't know the basic Ten Commandments, with their allied statutes and judgments, which are essential for successful defense.

The infected defenses must divert attention from themselves. They are active. The body cells are constantly told that there is a crisis. The true virus that has invaded is not identified, but is said to be something else - from acid rain, to bad food, to terrorists from abroad or harmless foreign nations painted as hostile. The aliens lead the body to prepare its defenses to fight this great peril. The body is then led in unprovoked attacks against its own self, or bodies just like itself, killing tens of millions of healthy red and white cells in the process. These abortive efforts exhaust the body and make room for additional invaders to occupy the space vacated.

Numerous efforts are made by the body to organize an internal defense. Almost all these efforts are initiated by the disease itself. These efforts boast prominent names, are adequately financed, and given publicity. Healthy white cells who respond are neutralized by expending their energy chasing a false prey, or are led to prison where they can do nothing.

The body is told that its ancient laws are void. It becomes muddled in its thinking. It has forgotten the laws established long ago to direct its thinking and actions. There is no shining knight who stays on his knees until he is wise enough to rise.

Through the weakened and exhausted body the infection spreads demanding that the body stockpile tanks, ships, and planes for another abortive defensive effort against a victim who is not an enemy. Bloodstream infection becomes obvious when alien bodies boldly enter and are actually seen traveling along the same blood vessels with the red and white cells while the infected defenses will not allow any defensive acts by the white cells against them, or even allow them to be identified, or even spoken against.

The illness has reached its crisis. The body must now overcome the disease or die. In the hour of absolute desperation the formerly wooden and useless white cells reject all slogans, all leaders, all abortive movements, and return to their own Leader, the Leader whose ancient Word gave the body life in the beginning. When they do this they become immune to false friends, renegade leaders, planted dead-end organizations. They have everything they need. They pour over the Word seeking instruction. Humbled, a new being rises. His sword is The Word. Wise, he can identify the sins of his people.



Survival depends on the regenerated white blood cell, a cell rigidly judging everything and everyone by the ancient rules that ensure survival, a cell no longer misled, wooden, and ineffective.

It is the day of the Phineas priest.

---

## Chapter 3

---

# VIRGINIA

### Phineas Priests And An Indian Mother

Shortly after the settlement at Jamestown in 1607, a ship from England was sailing up the James River to Jamestown Island bringing settlers and supplies.

The passengers and crew observed a canoe, which was being frantically paddled by an Indian woman and seven children, emerging from behind a point of land. Behind the canoe was a ship's boat<sup>1</sup> manned by husky White men who were just as furiously rowing their craft which was steadily gaining.

The ship's boat caught up with the canoe almost under the bow of the ship and the interested passengers and crew gasped as a sailor in the bow of the ship's boat leaned over and with his pistol shot the Indian woman. The ship's boat rammed the fragile canoe and rode up over it, forcing it down into the water and throwing the children into the river. They watched in horror as the sailors used their oars to hold the children under water until they drowned.

The incoming ship landed at Jamestown and its passengers disembarked full of protests and condemnation at the brutal sight they had just witnessed. Then, they were told the rest of the story.

### The Indian God - Okee

The Indians' god was named Okee, or Kiwassa. He was a mighty and terrible god, a god the Indians feared. He spoke to the Indians in thunder and lightning. Night, blackness, and pain bespoke his presence.

His food was pain. The more the pain, the longer and more excruciating the pain, the more satisfied and happy was Okee. To

---

<sup>1</sup> These acts were disapproved by "tyrannical" royal authority but approved by "rebels" in the colony; therefore, their individual names remain unknown.



turn this consuming wrath from themselves the Indians did all they could to give their god what he wanted, pain, from someone else.

As to a "good" god, there was no such being. If there were, there was no reason to worship or conciliate such a deity since he would not injure them. This Okee was another matter entirely. He had to be pacified or he would turn on the Indian for the pain he craved.

Once a year, twenty of the handsomest children, aged 10 to 15, were painted white and placed at the foot of a tree. Then, savages armed with clubs formed a narrow corridor through which five men were to pass carrying off the children. As the braves passed through the corridor with the children in their arms, they were severely beaten by the multitude to elicit pain, but the carriers carefully shielded the children. The children's turn was to come. The children were then cast into a heap in a valley. The actual things that were done to the children were well-kept secrets, but this much we do know, Okee sucked their blood until they were dead. The god Okee loved pain and sucked blood.<sup>2</sup>

The pain of someone good was better than the pain of someone bad; that of the strong and brave better than that of one weak. But pain of any sort was demanded. Indian women and children were the ones delegated to administer this pain. Their craft was state of the art. They were past-experts at their allotted tasks.

The pain of a White man was in the eyes of the Indian better than the pain of an Indian. Therefore, every White settler was eyed as a potential gift to Okee. When fate, trust, cupidity, or stupidity delivered a White captive into Indian hands, he was imprisoned but treated with kindness and was well cared for. He was carefully fed to build his strength to withstand the trials to come.

When at last judged to be in his strongest physical condition he was taken to meet Okee. He was bound, usually to a stake in the center of an Indian village. The Indian women and children were released to practice their carefully learned craft on him. They were masters at their work.

The skin on the prisoner's face, eyelids, lips, tongue, and private parts was slowly and excruciatingly removed. Splinters the size of tooth picks were inserted in the bare muscle tissue and lighted. With care and patience a White man could be kept alive sometimes for three excruciating days. Then his entrails, those that would not cause immediate death, were removed.

2 Virginia, John Esten Cooke, New York, 1883. p. 28.

On rare occasions when tortured prisoners were recaptured while undergoing torture, they always begged for a quick and merciful death - never release. What was left of the man was a ragged screaming bundle of scorched and burnt nerves and flesh - the perfect meal that satisfied Okee best.

The Indian woman and her children executed under the bow of the incoming ship below Jamestown Island had been surprised torturing a White captive in the manner described above. They fled by boat, were caught, and were given a quick merciful death, something they had not given their victim.

The passengers and crew quickly came to understand that Indians were not sunburned White men. They were savages bred to their way of life for a thousand generations by a god that demanded that different laws be obeyed. The colonists made quick adjustments in their thinking to improve their chances of survival in a strange land, a land made savage by inhabitants as cruel and evil as anything encountered by the children of Israel when they went into the promised land.

The men in the longboat acted as Phineas would have acted. Their acts inducted them into the Priesthood. They enforced the Law.<sup>3</sup>

Captain John Smith and others left records of the early days in Virginia which described unbelievable scenes in the Indian villages.

The first impression was of numerous women and children and few men. Actually, there were anywhere from five to ten women for every man. The large number of women and children and the few men was the result of the violent lifestyle practiced by the Indians. An old Indian male was a rarity. The chiefs Powhatan and his brother Opechancanough were very much the exceptions, and the number of both their wives and children was prodigious.

When White prisoners were not available to satisfy their god the braves would dance around a fire chanting the names of children in the village. The drums beat faster and faster, and the braves would dance faster and faster and gradually the list of the names of children being chanted became fewer and fewer. When all agreed on one name, that child was seized and thrown screaming into the fire. It made no difference whether it was the child of a brave or of a chief - the sacrifice was for Okee. Nothing was too good for Okee.

3 "Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man." Gen 9:8



### Instructions From England

The kings of England superseded the popes of Rome as head of the Roman Catholic Church in England. The name of the church was changed to the Anglican Episcopal<sup>4</sup> Church. The English king was the new pope. To his priests and subjects, his word was law. He was God's representative on earth.

God's representative, the king, was also a businessman. To him, the Virginia expedition was a business operation. Gold was momentarily expected to be found in large quantities. As in the case of the Mexican mines, the natives were expected to furnish the miners. To keep a hold on these natives, the king's priests in the new world were instructed to make converts of them and to teach them The Word. The king would then be better able to control them since he was the head of the church.

This act of teaching strangers was the culmination of many acts that had gone before. The king needed money. His predecessors on the throne had been poor while the wealth of the Catholic Church in England comprised one-third the land and half the monetary wealth. When King Henry appropriated this wealth by making himself head of the church, it started repercussions.

The Roman pope called on the devout in other Catholic countries, in return for certain concessions, to take back the pope's English property and put down the heretics. The resulting wars were bloody and expensive. Debts to the international bankers were incurred. A great many of the international bankers of the age were strangers. They could be satisfied only with gold or economic concessions. Gold was cheaper since economic concessions were a never ending drain. The king needed gold to pay his bankers. Special care had to be taken with the American Indians, the future miners of this wealth, but the king's borrowing triggered a Law:

*"The borrower is slave to the lender." Prov 22:7*

The borrower is slave. According to the ancient Law, the one actually ruling was not the king of England who was blamed for the troubles that followed, but those who had lent to him. If God's Law is true, England's ruler was only a figurehead. He was slave to his masters.

4 "Episcopal;" ruled by bishops from the top down.

The "king" sent instructions to Virginia to allow the savages every privilege so as to keep them friendly and agreeable<sup>5</sup> and available to work the gold mines which were expected to be discovered momentarily. Also, every effort was to be made to convert them, to teach them religion.

The Indians quickly learned that the royal road to the settler's gifts and possessions was to become a Samaritan Christian. They quickly learned selected verses from the Bible, they learned stories and catechism, they sang psalms with gusto, they were baptized and took communion. Their hands extended for gifts and they were filled. The king's priests waxed ecstatic over their success with these converts.

The Law was forgotten:

**"These twelve Jesus sent forth, and commanded them saying, Go ye not into the way of the gentiles, and into any city of the Samaritans enter ye not; But go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel." Matt 10:5,6**

The priests had once more gone to the Samaritans. The result was the same as related in the Bible:

*"In the 9th year of Hoshea, the king of Assyria took Samaria (capital city of the northern kingdom) and carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor by the River Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes." II Ki 17:6<sup>6</sup>*

*"And there shall be a highway for the remnant of my people ... from Assyria; like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt." Isaiah 11:16*

*"The 10 tribes, which were carried away prisoners out of their own land ... whom Salmanasar the king of Assyria led away captive ... took counsel among themselves, that they would leave the multitude of the heathen, and go forth into a further country, where never mankind dwelt, That they might there keep their*

5 Restriction on aliens are always opposed by ruling aliens. If restrictions are imposed on SOME aliens, the aliens fear that the restrictions will in time apply to ALL aliens.

6 "More than 10 million Israelites went into the Assyrian Captivity north of Palestine over 700 years before Christ." *Russia Will Invade America*, p. 31, Sheldon Emry, P.O. Box 5334, Phoenix, AZ 85010.



*statutes ... And they entered into Euphrates by the narrow passages of the river. ... For through that country there was a great way to go, namely of a year and a half." II Esdras 13:39- 45<sup>7</sup>*

*"And the king of Assyria brought men from Babylon ... and placed them in the cities of Samaria instead of the children of Israel ... They ... know not the manner of the God of the land. Then the King of Assyria commanded .... carry thither one of the priests whom ye brought from thence ... and let him teach them the manner of the god of the land ... howbeit every nation made Gods of their own ... unto this day ... they fear not the Lord, neither do they after their statutes ... which the Lord commanded the children of ... Israel ... As did their fathers so do they unto this day. II Ki 17:24- 41*

The Samaritan strangers received the Law, but kept their own gods. They fear not the Lord nor do they after their statutes. As their fathers do so do they unto this day. Nothing was changed. The scripture was proved true.

These new-world Christians raised their voices in praise of the White man's god. "Good Jesus! Sweet Jesus!" The preachers wrote glowing reports of their rapidly growing numbers of converts. They hadn't the faintest notion that their Indian converts accepted Jesus as they accepted many other gods, and worshiped them all. Jesus was good. Jesus was kind. Okee was bad. Okee was powerful and he was mean. He hurt people. Jesus was kind and good. The Indians didn't have to fear him. Okee was the one to look out for.

### The Stealing Indian

Conditions dictate customs. At Jamestown, everything was in short supply: food, clothing, weapons, farming implements - everything.

In such a state, stealing was not a minor inconvenience, it was a matter of life and death. The loss of a knife, a firearm, clothing, or a garden hoe could result in death to the individual or family deprived. This fact of life soon ran into the policy of the Established Church.

<sup>7</sup> These scriptures were included in the original KJV Bible, but were censored from most Bibles in 1825.

The church policy, a policy established by the needs of the international bankers, was to treat the new Indian converts with the utmost kindness. The king's ministers had instructed the colonists to make every allowance for the human failings of these children of the woods. They were to be given every benefit of the doubt.

As direct representatives of the King of England, and as God's ministers, the power and authority of these government priests went beyond anything we can imagine today. The colonists were cowered by the priest's instructions and implied threat of punishment for the crime of disobedience, so they allowed the Indians free entry into their dwellings whenever they wished.

The Indians knew the Christian Law against stealing. This law was another of those amusing and impractical teachings of "good Jesus." It was good to talk about, but was meant for White people. To the Indian it made no sense. Stealing was the way to win possessions and great honor in the process. Everyone looked up to a good thief. A good thief was a man of substance among his people. The privilege of free entry into the White man's dwellings was a license to steal, and steal they did.

The Word was being flouted with help and encouragement from the king's priests. The result of this stealing could result in death for the whole colony.

Captain John Smith returned from an extended expedition. He witnessed an Indian stealing an article from a settler. Without a second's hesitation he went over and cut the Indian down. The King's priests were horrified. The Indians looked on Smith with awe; it was something they understood. Stealing became unprofitable in that instant. Stealing stopped. They had come in contact with a Phineas priest and there was no fellow alien or follower of a Samaritan god in authority to stop him. The Indians obeyed the White man's law or died.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>8</sup> Western Law irritates the stranger. The stranger's law irritates the Westerner. If the Christian is in power, his Law is enforced and the stranger is irritated. If the stranger is in power, his law is enforced and the Christian is irritated. It is either one or the other. At this early age, England's alien hand was a long way away and its power diminished accordingly.



### Land Distribution

After holding the new colony together for three years, "The Virginia government (was) reorganized and Smith removed. The reasons ... were his 'hard dealings with the savages ...'"<sup>9</sup>

Sir Thomas Dale became governor. He, too, was an experienced hard-handed soldier, one carefully selected to carry out the crown's exacting instructions. Still, certain of his ideas, such as the one on land distribution are interesting. During the colony's earlier crisis, all food was brought into a common storehouse and then dispensed as needed. This resulted in a swarm of drones who worked as hard as necessary and no harder. Dale meant to free the colony from caring for these people as soon as possible.

He directed:

"Every man was to have his own hearth stone ... three acres of cleared ground, which he was to cultivate himself, bringing two barrels and a half of corn from it to the public granary."<sup>10</sup>

It was Sir Thomas' opinion, and he was no fool in such matters, that three acres of cleared land was adequate to be worked by one man, and sufficient to also produce enough to supply the government storehouse.

### Virginia's Forests

Lone Indians hunted the forests. Two Indians or more might be either a trading or a war party. Peaceful trading parties could put on war paint in an instant. Therefore, it was wise for the colonists to hunt in pairs. Casual contact with Indians could develop into a running battle. If it did, one could fire while the other stood guard until the first reloaded. To be caught with an empty firearm meant death.

The endless forest was not considered a blessing. Though a haven for animals which could be hunted for meat, it also concealed hostile Indians and prevented the more efficient use of the land.

Many of the trees were three times taller than the largest oaks seen today in Virginia. A relative, Watt Clingenpeel, was a surveyor in Tidewater. He told me that where King and Queen, Essex, and Middlesex Counties come together there is a small piece of disputed

<sup>9</sup> Cook, p. 56.  
<sup>10</sup> Ibid., p. 109.

land far back from any road. On that land grows an ancient oak. Since its ownership is disputed, it has never been cut. It may be the last of the large oaks remaining of those giants of early Virginia. It towers above all the forest like an Empire State Building.

The Indians regularly burned the undergrowth. A man could gallop a horse through the forest without fear of being swept from the saddle by branches or bush. Taking down one of these monstrous trees might open as much as a quarter of an acre, but it was a herculean task. Once felled, the branches, many as large as today's trees, had to be removed and burned. Only branches could be used for lumber, the trunk was too big. Vegetable gardens and cattle grazing took place around the monstrosity until it was either burned, or gradually decayed and vanished into the soil - a long wait. The land opened to the plow by degrees.

Land with standing trees had little immediate value. It held only potential. In 1615, Dale hit on the idea to gain colonists by granting 50 acres of this almost-worthless forest land to anyone who would clear and settle it. In England, land was a monopoly of the crown. Fifty acres of any sort of land was valuable. The potential English colonists thought of Virginia land in English terms.

Ship owners contracted to furnish passage to colonists to Virginia in exchange for their 50 acre land patent. The newly arrived colonists set to work clearing the land to work off their passage indenture. The ship captains sold these 50 acre land grants in England for a fantastic profit. In Virginia this land, partially cleared, immediately assumed a high value. Trading in land patents was brisk.

As soon as the new colonist worked off his indenture he moved on and took up what he thought was free land of his own elsewhere and repeated the task. He had paid for his passage, and this time he cleared land for himself. Most of this land, however, was not protected by a patent. This was to cause deep distress to thousands later on who found that they were dealing with unlawful rulers.<sup>11</sup>

This neglect in following The Law was soon to cause trouble. It continued to cause trouble down through the years. It will always cause trouble until the law is obeyed as written. Still, at the time, the

<sup>11</sup> (1) "The land shall be divided for an inheritance ... To many thou shalt give the more ... to few thou shalt give the less ... the land shall be divided by lot: according to ... their fathers they shall inherit." Num 26:53-55. (2) "The land shall not be sold for ever: for the land is mine." Lev 25:23



fifty acre grants were sufficient to cause emigration from England to pick up.

It may be important to remember that in the early settlement, before the realization dawned that there was unlimited "worthless"<sup>12</sup> land that could be given away and before estates grew into thousand acre plantations, Sir Thomas Dale thought that just three cleared acres was as much as a man could profitably work and care for. This is not an unimportant observation. It is something that will be faced in the days ahead as the land is once more reclaimed and opened for settlement.

To avoid the continued curse which has followed the handling of land ownership in America, the ruler must be forced to follow The Law exactly.

### Bartholomew Hoskins

My own family came to Jamestown in 1615. The first of the name was Bartholomew, a boy aged 15. He was sent here so that if the rest of the family back in England were killed, there would be a survivor. His brother was a Protestant minister to a Catholic king, a thing not conducive to longevity in that day.

Landing at Jamestown, he moved across Hampton Roads to Norfolk, then a land of trackless woods, not a city. From there, he moved to the Northern Neck and cleared a small plantation. This was confiscated when the King turned the whole Northern Neck over to one of his favorites. He was forced to move on.

In time he and his son owned several ships. They prospered in bringing colonists to Virginia in exchange for their land grants.

### John Rolfe

The establishment never tires of telling what to them is the romantic story of how a White man, John Rolfe, married Pocahontas, the Indian princess. Pocahontas was one of the numerous daughters of the Indian king Powhatan born to one of his numerous wives. John Rolfe had lost his wife earlier. In the womanless wilderness he formed a fondness for this comely Indian maid.

The possibility of a union between the two races was looked upon by the High Marshal appointee, Sir Thomas Dale, as a chance to heal

<sup>12</sup> Under Indian law the Indians only claimed land they actually lived on at the time, and this claim expired one year after they left. White people only settled land that had been abandoned.

the continuing misunderstanding between the two races. The only hesitation, on the part of John Rolfe, was of a religious character. His reservations were set forth in the letter delivered to the authorities by Master Raphe Hamor and commented on in *Present Estate of Virginia till the 18th of June, 1614*, Albany, NY.

"What is he to do? he asks Sir Thomas, that man of ... great knowledge in divinity. The Scriptures forbade marrying 'strange wives,' and Pocahontas belonged to 'a generation accursed;' this caused 'a mighty war in his meditations', and the great question was whether it was not his solemn duty to marry and convert this 'unbelieving creature, namely, Pokahuntas.' What most touched and decided him was 'her desire to be taught'<sup>13</sup> and instructed in the knowledge of God."<sup>14</sup>

This attitude was shared by the rest of her tribe, and carried sufficient weight with John Rolfe to cause him to deny the clear instructions from his God, which he knew and understood, not to marry a stranger.

It was also reported that the Bishop of London was delighted at the conversion of the young Indian princess to Christianity. This attitude betrays the type of Christianity practiced and taught by the bishopric of London at that time and approved by the king, the head of the church.

Sir Thomas Dale had earlier sent an emissary to Powhatan with a proposal that he himself marry Pocahontas even though the Indian maid was only twelve at the time. Interestingly enough, this student of divine law already had a wife back in England. After failing in his own suit, he became a stumbling block<sup>15</sup> to another who knew The Law by encouraging Rolfe to marry the stranger.

This loyal supporter of the Established Church at once advised that the marriage should take place. The Emperor of the savages gave his consent. Sir Thomas labored to impress the truths of his form of Christianity on the Indian maid. She renounced her "idolatry" and was baptized into the faith as many of her people before her had been. The minister, Alexander Whitaker, the "Apostle of Virginia," officiated. The scene took place at the church

<sup>13</sup> Mark 16:9-20 is not found in the two most ancient manuscripts, the Sinaiticus and Vaticanus, and is not quoted by Irenaeus and Hippolytus until the second or third century. p. 1074. New Scofield Reference Bible, C. I. Scofield, DD, NY 1967.

<sup>14</sup> *Ibid.* p. 101

<sup>15</sup> "Cursed be he that maketh the blind to wander out of the way." Deut 27:18



at Jamestown. The year was 1613. There is a plaque in the tower of the old church on Jamestown Island reminding succeeding generations that this event took place in the oldest Anglican Church in America.

The Word clearly states:

**"I will deliver the inhabitants of the land into your hand; and thou shalt drive them out before thee." Ex 23:31 "They shall not dwell in thy land, lest they make thee sin against me." Ex 23:33**

If the faithful are unfaithful and do not obey:

**"The stranger that is within thee shall get up above thee very high; and thou shalt come down very low." Deut 28:43**

Again:

**"I am the Lord your God, which have separated you from other people." Lev 20:24**

**"So shall we be separated, I and all of Thy people, from all the people that are upon the face of the earth." Ex 33:16**

In opposition to The Word, in a building built to His glory, and in the face of His express command that:

**"Thou shalt not take a wife ... of the Canaanites ... but thou shalt go ... to my kindred, and take a wife." Gen 24:3-4**

**"Neither shalt thou make marriages with them: thy daughter thou shalt not give unto his son, nor his daughter shalt thou take unto thy son." Deut 7:3**

The marriage ceremony was performed with the blessing of the governor, the priests, and the Indians. The only one having qualms was John Rolfe, the center of the affair, and his qualms were laid to rest by the priests - a thing done many other times in history.

**"If ye do in any wise go back and cleave unto the remnant of these nations, even these that remain among you, and shall make marriages with them, and go in unto them and they unto you: know for a certainty ... that they shall be snares and traps unto you, and scourges in your sides and thorns in your eyes,**

**until ye perish off from this good land which the Lord your God has given you." Joshua 23:12-13**

### **The Indian Plague - Massacre!**

The forbidden marriage took place in 1613. Powhatan died in 1618. Opechancanough's war of extermination broke out in 1622. It was the inevitable result of what had gone before:

**"O children of Israel ... You only have I known of all the families of the earth: therefore I will punish you for all your iniquities." Am 3:2**

Since the early days of the colony there had been Indian troubles off and on. The notable marriage between the two peoples brought about a time of peace in Virginia. The priests of the Established Church had hit on a formula that guaranteed peace. They blessed things forbidden by God.

The colonists were directed to leave no stone unturned to win the support and appreciation of their savage neighbors. An Indian college was founded at the City of Henricus. Indians' depredations ceased and were no longer feared. Once more red men went in and out of the houses of the colonists. Once more Whites visited Indian villages. To prove their trust, the Indians were given firearms. They became excellent marksmen.

Opechancanough, Powhatan's brother, was the accepted Indian chief. Unknown to the White men, he secretly harbored other ideas than those of peace. He spent four years planning his great blow against the Whites. He visited tribe after tribe. Not one of the thousands of Indians involved in his plot betrayed him through all these years. His plan? Simple! Exterminate the English, all at once.

At all times he acted the part. He gave gifts. He visited Jamestown to pay his respects to the English authorities. The English prelates and officials doted on him. No honors were too great, no words of praise too extravagant. By 1622, all was ready.

The trigger could have been anything. It was actually caused by a brave named Nemattanow. He murdered a settler and was killed in turn. This act was presented as an outrage to the Indian nations. The Whites knew little of the event and nothing of the feelings generated.



The pretense continued. In March, Opechancanough sent word to Governor Wyat, "the sky should fall before he broke the peace." A few days before the outbreak, English travelers who were lost in the woods were furnished Indian guides to return home. On the very morning of the war, the Indians came to the plantations with gifts of game, and breakfasted<sup>16</sup> with the English in the friendliest manner.<sup>17</sup>

The blow fell everywhere at the same hour of the same day over all Tidewater Virginia. Berkeley's Plantation near the fall line at Richmond was attacked at the same instant as Southhampton Hundred on the Bay. Out of all the thousands of participants, only one plantation owner near Jamestown was warned by an Indian the night before the planned execution of the attack. The planter immediately informed Jamestown, which was put in a state of defense, but this single instance was the only small warning received.

What followed was savage butchery. None was spared - men, women or children.

"The pious George Thorpe, ... had been warned by his servants, but would not believe ... and his dead corpse hacked in a manner 'unfitting to be heard with civil ears.'"<sup>18</sup>

Hundreds upon hundreds of the colony died, including six members of the governor's council.

The Indian policy of the colony's leaders was unmasked for what it was, an anti-Christ lie, a death warrant to those it applied to. Bitter rage succeeded. Opechancanough had spared no one, neither would the colonists spare their enemies. Quickly recovering from the blow, the settlers followed the war parties back from their raids and harried the woods, paralyzing further attacks. An indiscriminate butchery of Indians followed. They were hunted down in all quarters, as far away as the Potomac.

When England heard of the bloody "Indian Massacre" of the colonists, it caused a great sensation. A spasmodic effort was made to supply the Virginians with arms, but it was soon forgotten for

16 "If any man that is called a brother be a fornicator, or covetous, or an idolator, or a railer, or a drunkard, or an extortioner; with such a one, no, not to eat." 1 Cor 5:11

17 Close proximity with Indians presented health problems. The Indians had no eating taboos and scavengers such as dogs, wolves, shell fish, catfish, and others were part of their diet. Consequently, they were loaded with parasites and diseases which they spread among all with whom they associated. See index: Indians; diseases.

18 Cooke, p. 127

other pressing matters. The Virginians were on their own, and remained so from this time on.

Thus came to an end the time of the first Massacre.

Years later, in 1644, when Opechancanough was 100 years old and so weak that he was obliged to be carried in a litter, and his eyes held open to see whom he was talking to, Okee called Opechancanough to strike one last time.

The last attack was made April 18, 1644.<sup>19</sup> In this war hundreds were killed on the upper York and Pamunkey Rivers.

Governor Sir William Berkeley took the field against Opechancanough, captured him, and sent him to Jamestown. There he was shot by a guard.<sup>20</sup>

The Law had been violated. The natural predictable result followed. Strangers by their violent and extreme acts forced the faithful to enforce The Word as they would have done from the very beginning had they been allowed to do so by the ruling powers who had other gods.<sup>21</sup>

During the time of the Indian Wars an event took place that was virtually unnoticed. In August 1619, a Dutch ship landed twenty Black slaves.

Spain's rulers had also borrowed from strangers. Much of the proceeds from the slave trade went to pay the interest on this debt. After devastating Spain by their lawless behavior, most of the strangers were forced to leave in 1492. Many moved to Holland where they established their usury banking business again. It was

19 Virginia's yearly thanksgiving was established by a law of the Burgesses, not to celebrate good will with strangers, but "for our deliverance from the hands of the savages." Abraham Lincoln used it also for a day of thanksgiving to commemorate Gettysburg. The establishment took the day of deliverance from the Indians and converted it into a day of fraternization and eating with strangers.

20 "Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man." Gen 9:6

21 (1) "Now it came to pass, when they had heard the law, that they separated from Israel all the mixed (mongrel) multitude." Neh 13:3. (2) "And the seed of Israel separated themselves from all strangers (nēkar) - strange, alien." Neh 9:2. (3) "So shall we be separated, I and all of Thy people, from all the people that are upon the face of the earth." Ex 33:16. (4) "I am the Lord your God, which have separated you from other people." Lev 20:24.



from them that the English rulers borrowed.<sup>22</sup> Most of the profit from the Black slave trade again went to pay interest on these loans.

The unnoticed landing of slaves in 1619 was an ominous event. Two problems were born while the attempt was being made to solve another.<sup>23</sup>

### Tripoli Renegades - Smith's Notes

We are fortunate to have Captain John Smith's writings. He was one of the swashbucklers that his age produced. He was a warrior who had volunteered to fight the infidel in foreign lands. He was a follower of Jesus Christ, the Lord God of Israel, and was a true Phineas Priest, one who could see "truth" unvarnished by church or king's interests.

In common with others of his age he "believed." He saw the various heathen types through eyes trained by The Law. This allowed him to see and note things that church and government functionaries would not see.

At the time Virginia was being settled, another event was taking place in Britain. This is the story in Smith's<sup>24</sup> own words.

"After the death of our most gracious Queene Elizabeth ... our Royall King Iames ... had no employment for those men of warre, so ... those that were poore and had nothing but hand to mouth, turned Pirats<sup>25</sup> ...

"Now because they grew hatefull to all Christian Princes, they retired to Barbary<sup>26</sup> (saracen lands) ... Tunis, Angier, ... Tanger, and Cuta ... Ward a poore English sailer, and Dansker a Dutchman, made first here ... when the Moores (Moham-madans) knew scarce how to saile a ship ... Easton got so much, as made himsele a Marquesse in Savoy, and Ward lived like a Bashaw in Barbary; those were the first that taught the Moores to be men of warre.- Gennings, Harris, Tompson, and divers

22 (1) "The borrower is slave to the lender." Prov:22:7. (2) "Hath given forth upon usury ... shall he then live? he shall not live ... he shall surely die; his blood shall be upon him." Ezek 18:13. (3) "Thou shalt drive them out before thee ... They shall not dwell in thy land, lest they make thee sin against me." Ex 23:31-33. A usury loan is proof that one intends to destroy the borrower.

23 "The stranger that is within thee shall get up above thee very high; and thou shalt come down very low." Deut 28:43

24 *The General Historie*, Captaine John Smith, Franklin Press, 1819. p. 281.

25 *Ezek 18:5*

26 *Prov 6:1*

others, were taken (caught) in Ireland, a Coast they much frequented, and died (hanged) at Wapping. ... they had very good ships, and well manned, but commonly ... so riotous, quarrellous, trecherous, blasphemous, and villanous, it is more than a wonder they could so long continue, to doe so much mischief; and all they got, they basely consumed it amongst Iewes (Jews), Turks, Moores, and whores.

"... they could seldome goe to Sea, so long as they could possibly live on shore, being compiled of English, French, Dutch, and Moores (all Westerners except the last) ... till they became so disjoynted, disordered, debawched, and miserable, that the Turks and Moores beganne to command them as slaves,<sup>27</sup> and force them to instruct them in their best skill, which many an accursed runnagado (renegade), or Christian turned Turke did, till they have made those Sally men, or Moores of Barbary so powerfull as they be, to the terror of all ...

"... let all unadvised persons take heed ... for neither Souldiers nor Sea-men can live without meanes; but necessity will force them to steale; and when they are once entered into that trade, they are hardly reclaimed. These ... Sea-men and Souldiers ... endeavour rather to adventure to those faire plantations of our English Nation ... and get more in one yeare, than you by Piracie in seven."

### The Result of Monopoly

Smith explains much. The king's monopoly of the nation's land - first plundered from the Jews who had been brought in by the king to plunder it from the people, combined with other land plundered from the Catholic Church. The Church had earlier pilfered it from trusting parishioners who had been persuaded to pay for church help to get to heaven. This land monopoly<sup>28</sup> prevented men from having farms of their own as their ancestors had had and as was required by Law. Therefore they were unable to return to farming

27 "Thou mayest not set a stranger over thee which is not thy brother." Deut 17:15

28 (1) "Woe unto them that join house to house, that lay field to field, till there be no place, and they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth." Isalah 4:8. (2) "Let him not have ... abundance of riches ... he may grow too proud to submit to the Laws ...and if he affect any such things let him be restrained, lest he become so potent that his state become inconsistent with your welfare." Josephus, Antiquities 4:8:17



to make a living after the wars. This forced them to piracy to survive, to their own, their victims, and the nation's disservice.

The pirate, Captain Eastern, was able to buy a title and lands in Savoy, and Captain Ward in Barbary. One would expect this condition in Islam, but, tolerance by the Christian Church toward the renegade Captain Eastern denoted decadence.

The fact that unlawful conditions in the West forced these men to seek shelter among the infidels resulted in dire consequences for the peoples of the West.

When the Mohammedans of North Africa first reached the Mediterranean Sea after leaving their deserts, they made the Greeks reveal to them their secrets of shipbuilding and sailing. The ships the Greeks showed them how to build were low-lying oar driven galleys with one or two guns in the bows. With these vessels in the hands of the Arabs, the Mediterranean was soon converted into an Islamic sea.

The Europeans then introduced large ocean going sailing ships armed with 10 or 20 guns to a broadside. Against these the Islamic galleys stood no chance. The arrival of the unemployed renegades from England with their sea-going vessels<sup>29</sup> available for Arab use converted these galley sailing Moslems into fierce-eyed predators armed with the latest weapons of war. The Arabian became once more as he had been for a thousand generations before - a raider and terror to all who fell into his hands. His raids went to the very shores of Britain where they filled their ships' holds with Christian slaves for the Moslem slave markets.

These Moors of North Africa exacted tribute from the nations of Europe that were involved in wars with each other to control looted church and crown land. The Saracens used this Christian disunity to freely raid the West, seizing ships and ransoming or selling crews as slaves.

The small, faraway United States, moved more by the righteousness of the cause than by loss or possible gain, went to war with Tripoli in 1801, and Algiers in 1815 to suppress their piracy. The modern ships and the skill of Western sailors and marines allowed the little United States to win these wars handily, something the mighty European countries could not do.

The reason that wars with the Barbary pirates in the early 1800s were necessary was because two hundred years earlier, the actions of a Lawless king forced his subjects to go to the infidels for protection. They took the West's secrets of war and these secrets made Islam powerful.

Without the renegade there would have been little threat from the stranger. Without the king's unlawful possession of England's land, the English sailors would have had a place to live and work and would not have been forced to become traitors to their own people.

The people gave obedience to the king when they should have given obedience to God.

29 (1) "It is not meet to take the children's bread, and cast it to dogs." Matt 15:26, (2) "Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you." Matt 7:6,



### Establishment 7-Step Plan Of Conquest

The tactics employed by the establishment to obtain another's property emerge from the early days in a clear, concise, logical, and remarkably efficient manner that has yet to be improved upon. No part is accidental. The unpunished acts of individuals, considered by some to be malignant, even evil, are simply the implementation of what is normal establishment policy. These acts are committed simply because they work. They achieve the desired result which is the separation of property from its owner. While there may be, occasionally, individual acts of malice involved, malice per se is not part of the plan.

Variations of the table below will be shown many times in the following pages and commented upon. Each time will point to a

#### ● (Establishment 7-Step Plan)

- 1- Prize
- 2- Vilification/Provocation
- 3- Trigger
- 4- Barbarous War
- 5- Unconditional-Surrender  
/Occupation-reconstruction
- 6- Puppet Government

*Figure 1: 7-Step Plan Starting at this time the establishment's 7-Step Plan reached maturity. Distinguishing establishment wars vs National wars may be determined by plan adherence .*

particular phase of the ongoing establishment effort to accumulate wealth, each phase still being only a part of the overall plan.

### The Covenant

One must understand what it was that made people come in droves to the North American continent. The desire for land and riches were a definite part. But this does not explain the droves of settlers who came later on. These were established families, families of substance. No one exchanges a comfortable fireside to risk death in an unknown wilderness inhabited by savages without good reason.

### Commandment #1 "Love God."

Definition of Love.

**"If ye love me obey my commandments." John 14:15**

Definition of God.

**"In the beginning was the WORD, and the word was with God, and the WORD was God." John 1:1**

The Laws, Statutes, and Judgments were with God, were of God, and were God.

### Scotland

In early days disenchanted Catholic priests met. They protested violations, then rampant, of God's Laws. They vowed to obey God's Word since the Word was God. The Bible alone determined the Word.

Local groups of Christians met and elected their own leaders called presbyters.

England's king was head of the Church of England. He selected his own priests who taught whatever he wanted taught. This form of church government was called an "episcopacy." The king said it was his "divine right" to do this.

The presbyterian system (from the bottom up) of Scotland, using the Bible alone, found itself in opposition to the episcopal system (from the top down) of the English king using its prayer book.

### Covenanters

James VI of Scotland was a Covenanter. He Covenanted with God and his Scottish kinsmen to obey only The Word taken directly from the Bible and not the dictates of the episcopacy. England chose him king. He became James I of England.

As King of England, he inherited the land obtained for the English kings by their international bankers. As King of England he was also the head of the Church of England. The Church of England claimed all of England and actually had in its hands more than half the nations floating supply of money. Poor James VI of Scotland



became rich James I of England<sup>1</sup> now owning, controlling and claiming rights to the entire country. This was the prize.

The price was right. He renounced the Covenant and his oath to The Word. As head of the Anglican Church episcopacy he was God's spokesman, ordained to tell Britons what to believe.

He appointed church leaders and sent them to replace presbyters elected by church congregations in Scotland. Instruction directly from the Bible conflicted with what the king was doing, so he replaced teaching from the Bible with instruction from the king's own prayer book which left out the offending passages. Scotland began to bristle. After all, the king owned a great amount of their land in violation of The Law and the king was going to make everything all right by leaving out the passages forbidding it. Another Stuart, Charles I, determined at all costs to make Scotland bow to the demands of his episcopal system.

The storm broke in 1637. During services in St. Giles Cathedral in Edinburgh, Jenny Geddes (a Phineas priestess in the mold of Jael who slew Sisera the stranger), did all she could do. She picked up a stool and threw it at the minister's head for reading a censored prayer book instead of God's Law directly from the Bible.

A meeting followed at Grey Friar's Church. Hundreds upon hundreds were present. Hundreds more arrived hourly. It spilled out into the churchyard. Law violations were listed. Each person affixed his name to a mutual Covenant swearing to God and each other that they would obey only God's Laws, Statutes and Judgments - and nothing else. This was the *National Covenant of 1638*.

When no space was left on the document for another name, copies were made and distributed. Ladies set up tables in village streets. Lines of people patiently waited to sign.

Scotland signed a Covenant with God and each other. The world watched in awe.

Much was at stake. Charles I had to insist on his claim as head of the Episcopal Church to claim its wealth. Without it, he was dependent on Parliament for his daily bread.

England's Parliament and the people it represented were alienated by the all-powerful king who claimed such a large part of the nation's land and wealth and also claimed that he spoke for God.

1 (The king) "shall not ... greatly multiply to himself silver and gold." Deut 17:16-17. The Christian rule is never to trust a ruler having great wealth.

Frightened, they united with the people of Scotland in a *Solemn League and Covenant*. This international Covenant was like the others before it. It, too, was a Covenant to obey The Word - God's Laws, Statutes, and Judgments, and them alone.

### Civil War

In 1642 civil war broke out. The king was defeated. Most of his supporters held land from the king in fief and had fought for him as part of their land holding agreement, not for religious reasons.

### High Point

The downfall of the king's episcopacy and the supremacy of the presbytery system marked the high point of the Covenanters. Covenanters now included practically all the people of Scotland and most of England. They also included numerous English and Irish Catholics who disapproved of a rich church owning their land.

During this period, the civil law system was reformed. Murder, rape, and false weights and balances received Biblical punishment. The Law was the same everywhere and was often dispensed directly from the Bible. Exceptions found in statute law which had been designed to favor special interests were corrected. There was only God's Law.

### Enter The Puritan

Parliament's military leader was Oliver Cromwell, a military genius. From this time, the name Puritan no longer represented purity. It meant something sinister.

Oliver Cromwell created consternation.

"Cromwell ... was opposed root and branch to Presbyterianism as a narrow and oppressive formalism; and he long delayed to sign the Covenant."<sup>2</sup>

He could be on all sides of any question. Like King James I, he renounced the Covenant as easily as he had sworn to obey it. Through 1647 he negotiated for a settlement with the episcopacy of the king. In 1648, he reversed himself and denounced the king in

2 Oliver Cromwell, Frederick Harrison, p. 72. 1892.



Parliament. Then he did what David feared to do to Saul. He beheaded the king.<sup>3</sup> Cromwell, their leader, lived as an unchallenged, uncrowned despot-king until he died.

The Puritans recognized few restrictions to their power. Quoting scripture and profanity in the same breath, they ran roughshod over traditional rights. God's Law had been done away with. There was no Law and they would be bound by none. They quoted scripture to prove it. "The Word" was what they said it was. "Grace" allowed them to do as they willed. They recognized no Covenant. They did as they pleased.

### Reaction

England and Scotland awoke to a nightmare. It was the same thing as the dread "Anabaptist plague" that had afflicted the continent.

The former enemy, the king, his forces, and the episcopacy he represented, were defeated. But the victor, parliament's own army, was in the hands of one considered to be an anti-Christ, one who had overnight repudiated the Covenant and everything it stood for, one who seized the lands in dispute and now ruled them with his army.

Frantically, the Covenanters of England and Scotland recruited new armies to subdue this evil in their midst.

Nothing availed. Cromwell's New Model army, honed to razor sharpness on a hundred battlefields, marched from victory to victory, and from massacre to massacre.

To fight against Cromwell was death. To surrender to him was death. To side with the Covenanters was death. The crimes of his Puritans were many.

He replaced Parliament with his own creatures. He confiscated the lands of his one-time friends, declared them enemies, and gave their lands to his followers. He killed thousands of Christians who surrendered to his armies. His armies looted cities, killed his opponents and their wives and children. Ships were loaded with tens of thousands of his captives to be sold into slavery in Virginia and

<sup>3</sup> The rare Covenanter was welcome, but while permitted to follow God's Law he must not insist that others obey it also. A preview of today's Judeo-Christian.

elsewhere. In the 1650s, against public outcry, he opened England's gates to international bankers,<sup>4</sup> thereby infecting England with usury for the first time in almost 400 years.

Puritans were the monied powers of England, possessing the

### 4- Barbarous War

(Establishment 7 Step Plan)

- 1- Prize
- 2- Vilification/Provocation
- 3- Trigger
- 4- Barbarous War
- 5- Unconditional-Surrender  
/Occupation-reconstruction
- 6- Puppet Government

*Figure 2: Barbarous War: Such wars encourage Unconditional Surrender, portable loot provides troop pay, and seemingly needless destruction create a postwar demand for usurer's loans.*

lands, wealth, and titles of those they had dispossessed. Only a few hundred, or at the most a few thousand, ever came to America to live among those whom they had defrauded. The few who did were coolly received. In the 1600s, the name damn Yankee was forged in America to describe their sharp practices. Yankee was a New Englander. Damn Yankee was a Puritan. There was a difference.

### The Killing Time

The Puritans, given land and estates by Cromwell, restored Charles II in 1660. To satisfy the people, Cromwell's judges were executed for sentencing Charles I to be beheaded, but the rest of the Puritans kept their ill-gotten wealth. They stood solidly behind the king, and to keep his throne, the king supported them.

The common enemy was the Covenanter who would deny the Puritan his newly acquired lands and the King his newly re-acquired

<sup>4</sup> (1) He that hath ... given forth upon usury ... he shall surely die." Ezek 18:13. (2) The stranger that is within thee shall get up above thee very high; and thou shalt come down very low." Deut 28:43.



episcopacy. This marked the beginning of the Covenanter Period proper.

A Puritan Parliament shortly restored royal supremacy in matters of religion which allowed the king to keep church lands and wealth,<sup>5</sup> subject to the conditions of his financial backers. The power of the king to choose his own church leaders was restored in full strength and vigor. The king's prayer book again replaced the Bible to stop Biblical accusations. Hundreds of elected presbyter ministers were turned out of their parishes. The king reciprocated by confirming the Puritans' land ownership.<sup>6</sup> Then the *National Covenant* of 1638 and the *Solemn League and Covenant* of 1643 were condemned as high treason.

Covenanters who refused to renounce their Covenant with God were mercilessly hunted by dragoons. Those who qualified their submission by distinguishing between Church and State, or if they declined to, were automatically guilty of treason.

"Many, loyal to the king, were executed because they refused to say 'God save the King' and give to man the honour due to the Lord's Anointed. Its use was tantamount to confessing that the King was supreme earthly ruler in the Church of God. The Covenanters chose death rather than life when impaled on the horns of this dreadful dilemma."<sup>7</sup>

Thousands were executed. Most executions took place on the spot. They ranged from dragoon ambushed church meetings held in the deep woods where all were killed, to the never-ending monotonous executions of individual farmers.

A refusal to renounce was punished by a shot in the head in front of wife and children. Hundreds were dragged on rope ends to be beheaded by axmen in Edinburgh. Scores were hanged, drawn, and quartered.

Thousands died from torture, sickness, and starvation in prison. Tens of thousands had their lands confiscated. They too were shipped to Virginia and other colonies. There is hardly a pair of eyes reading these lines who can't count a dozen Covenanters among his ancestors.

<sup>5</sup> The king "shall not ... greatly multiply to himself silver and gold." Deut 17:16-17

<sup>6</sup> The king: "shall not ... cause the people to return to Egypt, to the end that he shall multiply horses." Deut 17:16-17.

<sup>7</sup> Fair Sunshine, Jock Purvis, Edinburgh 1957.

The Killing Times bred martyrs. For each execution ten more Covenanters stepped forward.

After 25 years the slaughter gradually stopped.

Nowhere can I find a record of more than token resistance to the incessant killings. Isolated efforts at armed warfare were instantly and overwhelmingly crushed. Those involved and their families were executed. The individual effort made to act against exposed establishment vulnerable points, i.e., the countless unpunished murderers, rapists, brutal tax collectors, venal collaborators, bloody judges, and false priests in distant places brought on general public punishment. Still, it made no difference how many martyrs there were, failure to banish lawlessness meant that lawlessness stayed.

When at last it waned, it was not due to a softening of the hearts

#### 5- Unconditional-Surrender/Occupation- Reconstruction

(Establishment 7- Step Plan)

- 1- Prize
- 2- Vilification/Provocation
- 3- Trigger
- 4- Barbarous War
- 5- Unconditional-Surrender  
/Occupation-reconstruction
- 6- Puppet Government
- 7- Ongoing Anti-recovery Program

Figure 3: 5-Occupation: Unconditional Surrender is followed by occupation terror to make expropriation of non-portable loot easier. It only ceases upon guarantee that there will be no recovery efforts.

of those in power, it was simply economically unprofitable for the terror to continue. The lands of most wealthy Covenanters were already taken. Continued killing and deportation were leaving no one to work the land. Those who were left had nothing worth confiscating. To this day most confiscated Scots - factory, shipyard, and mine workers - are stockpiled into hundreds of shabby walkup flats in cities. Few own land in their own country.

Lawlessness, not replaced by the Word, remains.



### Covenanters Settle Virginia

Virginia, the mother of states, profited mightily from the persecutions. She became peopled by layer upon layer of Covenanters. They came from all classes. Most arrived as indentured slaves. Most lost everything in the service of their God, and their God blessed them for it.

Later were added thousands of French Huguenots who underwent the same trials and also lost all their worldly possessions.

Still later the "Valley Germans" came, those who left their homes and country rather than violate The Word by being inducted into armies and being forced to kill kinsmen.

These are the ancestors of today's Virginians, and of a great many, if not most, of the Saxon-Gaelic peoples across the rest of America. They are also the reason that the enemy followed them and dealt so harshly with this beautiful land.

**"The enemy is eager to destroy all that call upon the Lord. For he knoweth that upon the day that Israel shall repent, the kingdom of the enemy shall be brought to an end." Book of Dan 2:16-17.**

### Virginia in 1670

Virginia was England's economic monopoly. To protect this monopoly, she enacted a series of laws called the Navigation Acts. These Navigation Acts crushed Virginia. All trade had to be done with England in English ships manned by English crews. Virginia was not allowed to build ships either large or small. She could not manufacture copper implements, machinery, or even hats.

Virginia had one and only one money crop - tobacco. It was a herculean task to grow, tend, harvest, cure, pack, and transport this staple. The tobacco tax placed on this one commodity reduced its selling price to virtually nothing. All this to benefit the "mother country." When time came to ship it to England, a castle tax was levied. This meant that at the instant a ship weighed anchor, a tax was placed on the tobacco. When it arrived in Britain another was levied. It was conspired that the planter pay both.

The Church was also a problem. It was another monopoly. The king had agreed that in exchange for Puritan political and military

support, the Puritans could keep the land and booty they had confiscated from the Covenanters, if the king kept the land and booty obtained from the Catholic Church and remained its head.

The church was ministered by a hierarchy of prelates. To be appointed by the king to manage a rich bishopric was the royal road to riches. To be sent to poor Virginia was to be relegated to the backwaters of the world. One could exist there. The local company was civil. But it was a fate dreaded by most; the end of the line, so to speak. In short, the ministers of the church rose or fell on how well they implemented their master's wishes and commands. Since the king saw to it that they were housed, their pockets lined, and their stomachs filled, these ministers responded with doglike devotion. Dissenting sects such as the Presbyterians, Baptists, Methodists, and others, had a very difficult time.

Virginia contained 48 church parishes. Of the ministers sent over, Virginia complained that "the worst are sent us," and that "It would be better if they would pray more and preach less."<sup>8</sup>

### Virginia's People

There was a large increase in the population. In 1650 there were 15,000 colonists. In 1670 - 40,000, an increase of more than 200%. 6,000 were servants and only 2,000, or 5%, were Black slaves. Cromwell's execution of Charles I in 1649 drove Charles' supporters to Virginia.

Queen Henrietta Maria, Charles' widow, actually made plans to sail for Virginia in a fleet commanded by Sir William Davenant in 1651. This indicates the extent of the mass exodus of Britain's old aristocracy to Virginia's shores and accounts for the term "cavaliers" applied by historians to Virginians and their descendants scattered across America.

The aristocracy of England who fought for the king did so because of their land holding contracts with the king, not for religious reasons. Many of the aristocracy fought for parliament against the king. These latter had strong feelings about religion. The loss of the king's cause sent the first wave of aristocrats to Virginia. The loss of Parliament's cause to Cromwell sent most of the rest. They ended up together in Virginia, soldiers and their families from both sides who had recently fought each other, and who were now

<sup>8</sup> Cooke, p. 225



united against a common enemy, Cromwell and his Puritans, ruled by Amsterdam bankers who were now the establishment.

Here in Virginia, unlike in other colonial settlements, many of these aristocrats arrived as indentured servants. They had no other means to make the passage. However, those servants termed "felon" arriving between 1607 and 1787 were estimated by Jefferson at less than 2,000.

Most of this group were termed "old aristocracy" by the Puritans in Britain who took their places as well as their titles and their lands. This meant that most of the colonists could claim descent from the ancient kings of England and Scotland, a thing most of the new nobility in England could not.<sup>9</sup>

The governing officials reported to England that the Colony mustered 8,000 horsemen who met monthly in every county to stay prepared for possible Indian attack.

The great prize to be gained by Virginia planters rebelling was the same as it was back in Britain - their rich farms and plantations.

The Great Rebellion in Virginia broke out in 1675. The principal grievances were the Navigation Acts taxes, and the grant of authority to sell land-titles, both direct violations of the basic law of our people.

To keep the chronology straight: Charles I was executed by Oliver Cromwell, who ruled next. Then Charles II was returned to the throne. The second Charles had contracted much to those who had aided him while he was in exile and who helped him return. To the bankers from whom he borrowed, he gave economic monopolies. To others who gave him ready cash to live on, he gave Virginia land that was not his to give.<sup>10</sup>

In 1673 he granted his favorites, the Earl of Arlington and Lord Culpeper, the Northern Neck and Accomack on the Eastern Shore for a space of 31 years. They were to have the quit-rents and to sell in fee-simple. No holder of land who had valid title was to be

9 Washington was great-grandson of a royalist. George Mason was the descendant of a colonel who fought for Charles I. Edmund Pendleton was of royalist origin. Richard Henry Lee of Constitution fame was a descendant of Richard Lee who invited Charles I to Virginia. Peyton and Edmund Randolph, President of the first Congress were of old royalist stock. Archibald Cary was heir to the barony of Hunsdon. Madison was descended from a refugee of 1653 and Monroe from a captain in the army of Charles I. The mothers of both Thomas Jefferson and Patrick Henry were descended from royalist mothers and Henry's father was a loyal officer who drank to the King's health.

10 "The land ... is mine." Lev 25:13

disturbed, but, there were many who had gone out on their own and cleared an opening in the wilderness held by "adverse possession."

With this single exception these two were to be the masters of much of Virginia. The Old Dominion, the enemy of Cromwell and faithful to her faraway king, found the king they were faithful to not only ungrateful, but a monster. There was a great outcry. Two men owned Virginia with her 40,000 people. The revenues of the colony were to be received by the new owners. They were to appoint public officers, and lay off new counties. This was so unfair that a delegation went to petition the Crown.

Charles would hear of no change in the law. He couldn't. He had made economic contracts with others and Virginia must learn to live with them. He also needed money to pay day to day expenses, and Virginia must supply that, too. The English monopoly kept tobacco prices low. Planters attempted to raise the price of tobacco by plowing their crop under. They found, as others have found since, that this did not enhance the price. In 1670 the tobacco price had dropped to almost nothing, but still the taxes came out of that nothing. Virginia planters found themselves beggars.

In 1670 the suffrage was confined to property freeholders. This denied representation to the many artisans and to those working as plantation managers. This disfranchised a large number of persons.

Virginia had a number of valid complaints. The next one was the trigger. It was the failure of Governor Berkeley to protect the frontier from the Indians.

### The Indian Problem

In the summer of 1675<sup>11</sup> a party of Doeg Indians attacked the frontier in Stafford and committed the usual outrages. A large flying column of mounted "well-armed housekeepers" pursued the invaders into Maryland where they sought shelter in an old palisaded fort near where the city of Washington now stands. Six Indian chiefs

11 At this very same time New England was being ravaged. Brookfield, Deerfield, and Northfield were burnt. Plymouth, Massachusetts, and Connecticut retaliated and killed 1000 warriors. A total of 14 towns in New England were burned. Six hundred lives were lost. New England had also to deal with Indians led by White renegades. A night attack on Schenectady in 1690 by White French renegades allied with Indians slaughtered the inhabitants. War with the savages was general and not confined to Virginia.



were killed. The rest made a moonlight rush and escaped beyond the Blue Ridge Mountains.

The Indian grapevine quickly spread the news. This inflamed the border tribes and started a running war all along the Virginia frontier. Okee flashed his appreciation in the lightning and spoke in the thunder as he again received plentiful offerings provided by Virginia settlers, which sated for a time his craving for pain.<sup>12</sup>

Virginians demanded to be led against the Indians. In the spring of 1676, 500 men were ready to march. Governor Berkeley denied their request and disbanded them. Governor Berkeley was one of those who had been given special privileges in payment for his early help to the king. In addition to being appointed royal governor with a salary that took almost half the budget of the colony, he had been given the monopoly of the beaver trade with the Indians. In an age when fur was in great demand, this monopoly was the chance to get rich, very rich.<sup>13</sup>

The settlers charged that Berkeley denied their request to defend themselves against the Indians solely because such an expedition would interrupt the governor's lucrative beaver skin trade with those in high places.<sup>14</sup> Finding that they had no friends, Virginians began to look to themselves.

### Bacon's Rebellion

One who was quite vocal was Nathaniel Bacon, Jr. He applied for a commission to fight the Indians. It too was refused. The settlers, armed and ready though they were, remained defenseless because of prohibitions of their governor.

Bacon was 28. His family was of the English gentry. His cousin was Lord Culpeper, and he was married to a daughter of Sir John Duke. Arriving in Virginia about 1672, he settled on the Curles Plantation on the upper James below Varina.

The thing noted by all was "He is a gentleman with a perfect antipathy to Indians."<sup>15</sup>

<sup>12</sup> In the summer of 1986, a White government agent who worked on an Indian reservation told me of seeing a cow birthing a calf. The cow was in great pain. The Indian who owned the cow watched without helping from his porch until the cow died.

<sup>13</sup> "If thou has stricken thy hand with a stranger (zāwr), thou art snared with the words of thy mouth." Prov 6:1,2. A man who flouts one Law will tend to break all if he deems it necessary. One takes his life in his hands to challenge such a person.

<sup>14</sup> This can be compared to stopping America's drug trade today, which would injure its sponsors in high office.

<sup>15</sup> Ibid, p.240

In May 1676, Indians attacked his estate at the Falls of Richmond, killed his overseer and one of his servants. The militia was called. Armed horsemen assembled. Bacon was chosen to take command. All things were done decently and in order, but with no commission. They sent to Governor Berkeley for a commission. Berkeley sent word that Bacon's fortunes might become imperiled if he proceeded. The Indians continued their attacks. Bacon sent another messenger to Jamestown to thank the Governor for the commission that had not been sent and which had not arrived. Then he set out at the head of the militia to fight the Indians.

Frantically, Berkeley sent a courier after Bacon and his men calling them rebels and ordering them to disperse. Bacon continued to the Falls of Richmond and found the Indians entrenched to the east of there. The Virginians waded a creek, braved a withering fire, and stormed the Indians' stockade. They routed them, killing 150 while losing three of their own men. Finding a cache of 4000 pounds of powder, the bounty gained by the governor's trade, they blew it up and left.

This was the Battle of Blood Run. The routed Indians were driven to the mountains. Bacon returned with a train of Indian captives.

Berkeley, aged 70, had waited a lifetime for a chance to make big money and he wasn't going to allow anyone to fight and kill his fur suppliers. He was no coward. He raised a force of horsemen and set out after Bacon. This action on his part appeared to the harassed settlers that their governor was siding with the Indians. The lower country behind him rose in revolt. The people supported Bacon. Berkeley rapidly retired to Jamestown. There he found the whole country along both the James and the York Rivers in rebellion.

Berkeley was no fool. If force would not work he would try statescraft. He had kept the same House of Burgesses sitting for 16 consecutive years. They were his creatures and didn't represent the people. The people didn't like it. To pacify them he said that a new election would be held. He also said that he would look into the border defenses.

Bacon returned from the Indian wars and was immediately elected to the Burgesses in the new elections. To take his seat he sailed down the James to Jamestown with 30 of his supporters. The cannon on a ship of the Governor's lying at anchor at Jamestown were trained on his arriving sloop. The high sheriff ordered Bacon



to come on board where he was arrested with his companions and taken before Berkeley. To avoid antagonizing a rebellious population, he was released on parole, which amounted to his release.

His actual protection was a favorable public opinion, and the fact that he was a member of the House of Burgesses. Bacon's arrest was looked upon as an insult to the rest of the governing body.

Sir William Berkeley then denounced the killing of six chiefs in Maryland which had been done by Colonel Washington who had commanded the forces there. This was also interpreted by the people as showing solidarity with the Indians.

Bacon was then required to come in and read aloud from a paper confessing that he was guilty of "unlawful, mutinous, and rebellious practices" and promised that if he were pardoned he would do it no more. After this act of humbling himself, he was restored to Burgesses and to his place in the Council. Berkeley spent his time trying to discover those who were discontent. In a later day he would have accomplished this by organizing an "anti-Berkeley" do-nothing party to identify all malcontents at one time.

The convening Burgesses, instead of just considering Indian matters, "took this opportunity to inspect the public revenues, the collector's accounts, etc." This was the sort of thing the governor did not want investigated. He sent word to "meddle with nothing till the Indian business was dispatched."

The Queen of the Pamunkey tribe was summoned. She wore a silver "frontlet" with an inscription from Charles II, King of England, Scotland, France, Ireland, and Virginia. They asked her how many guides and braves she would supply against the frontier tribes as provided for by the *Solemn Treaty Of 1645*.<sup>16</sup> She replied that she would provide only six.<sup>17</sup>

16 "Take heed to thyself, lest thou make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land whither thou goest, lest it be for a snare unto you." Ex 34:12.

17 These treaties with the Pamunks gave them Virginia land in perpetuity, something the Indians never had done before. They still live on these lands. They are as accommodating as in the days of Opechancanough, and as secretive. Little is known of their private affairs. It is known that there are still very few men compared to women. In most matters they resemble their brothers further west.

After his apology to the governor for fighting the Indians with no commission, Bacon was to receive his commission. No commission came.

A friend warned that the governor had determined to arrest Bacon. Bacon escaped into the countryside. When he returned to town he had 500 men with him, part of the 8000 horse that the governor had spoken of - "well-armed housekeepers" booted with good broadswords and "fusils" (fuse ignited firearms).

Berkeley sent a summons<sup>18</sup> for the "train-bands" of York and Gloucester to back him. Only about 100 responded. Bacon occupied Jamestown, confronted the Governor, and demanded that he produce a commission to fight the Indians. He next demanded revenue inspection, a review of the exorbitant taxes, and a general redress of grievances.

In a show of relenting, Bacon was appointed general and commander-in-chief against the Indians. He was fighting the public enemy, the Indians, and had the support of all. Those backing Berkeley confined their backing to good wishes. Those giving the good wishes didn't want to impede the one who actually defended them.

A number of people in Gloucester, wishing to stay in the good graces of the crown, declared for the governor. The governor went to Gloucester to collect the support. The Gloucestermen were on the spot. Having to choose one or the other, they changed their minds and said that it would not be patriotic to side against Bacon as he was fighting the Indians, the common enemy.

On July 9, 1676, Berkeley left in disgust for Accomac County across the bay on the Eastern Shore, leaving a proclamation declaring Bacon a traitor.

This proclamation was taken by Bacon to be a formal declaration of war. The governor's actual declaration of war against Virginia was made when he violated The Word by trading with the Indians 25 years earlier, long before trouble resulted from the trade. If the trade could have been stopped in the very beginning, or if it were

18 Circumstances forced the people of Virginia to challenge Berkeley. Berkeley was a servant of the king. The king was a servant of those from whom he borrowed. In effect, Virginia unknowingly had taken on the world of international finance instead of just a single lawless man. Behind Berkeley's army was Britain, behind Britain stood the armies and navies of every nation the bankers had lent to and controlled. All the world would have been called upon to destroy a possible competitor had the need existed as it did in the cases of Napoleon and Hitler.



made quietly unprofitable, many lives and much suffering would have been avoided. Constant directives from England on how to deal with the Indians only irritated the matter. They were mostly money-making schemes sent to heavy handed governors and ministers who voted their paychecks and didn't have to pay the price of being scalped. The result was a state of mind that bordered on panic.

Bacon left the frontier and marched back. A deserter from the Berkeley side came in. He was found to be a spy and was executed. Care was taken that no opponent's house was plundered though patrols arrested allies of Berkeley.

Bacon had his followers sign an agreement which stated that if British soldiers invaded they would retire into the wilderness to fight. Then, Bacon was off to the Indian wars once more. He defeated the whole Appomattox tribe near what is now Petersburg, and several other tribes.

While Bacon was fighting the Indians, he sent Col. Bland with four ships to pursue Berkeley on the Eastern Shore. One of the ship captains, Laramore, agreed to betray<sup>19</sup> Bland. Bland was captured when a boat coming to parley suddenly boarded and captured him. Captain Carver, the captain of Bland's ship, was hanged immediately by Berkeley.

The Governor gathered a total of 17 ships and 1000 men from the Eastern Shore. The estates of all who had taken "Bacon's Oath" were promised those who fought Bacon. They again landed on Jamestown Island. Bacon rushed there and drove Berkeley away. Jamestown was burned. Lawrence and Drummond, two of Bacon's lieutenants, set fire to their own houses.

A Berkeley supporter, a Col. Brent, advanced from the Potomac with 1000 men. Bacon marched to meet him. Their forces met in Gloucester. Brent's men deserted to Bacon. On the other hand, the king's servant, a Rev. Mr. Wading of the Established Church, refused Bacon's oath and encouraged others to do so.

### Bacon Dies - The War Crimes Trials

Bacon became ill and died October 1675. The story is that he was poisoned. He was buried in Gloucester. At the time of his death the rebellion had triumphed everywhere. When he died the rebellion died with him. The Indian menace had been destroyed by Bacon and

<sup>19</sup> An enemy with unlimited resources can quickly buy traitors from the weak, or followers for an army. To stand, one's supporters must have an allegiance to a power higher than wealth.

there was no common peril to hold the Virginians together. In effect, it was an unconditional surrender. Unconditional surrenders leave survivors defenseless. Dead survivors leave ownerless estates. Ownerless property soon finds an owner.

Colonel Hansford, one of Bacon's best men, was captured and hanged in spite of his request to be shot like a soldier. Major Cheeseman was captured and died in prison from ill use. Captains Wilford and Farrow were hanged. Drummond was found in the Chickahominy swamp and was hanged. Lawrence with four others escaped through the snow into the wilderness to some unknown place.

Berkeley had tasted blood. "He tried and executed nearly everyone he could lay his hands upon."<sup>20</sup> Four men were hanged on the York. Several on the other side of the James. Another was hanged in chains at West Point. Bland was hanged. Gibbets rose in almost every county. Estates were confiscated. Berkeley drove out Sarah Drummond and her children to wander homeless in the woods.<sup>21</sup>

Berkeley returned to England. All Virginia rejoiced. Revolution when it fails is very bad business. Failure to enforce The Law is also very bad business. It guarantees harsh punishment on those entrusted with its enforcement. Abject surrender is often punished even more heavily than resistance to the end.

My own family fought with Bacon and had their estates confiscated as the result.

It is worth noting that the royal governor had ruled quietly and peacefully for 25 years. He was thought of as one who was gracious and hospitable.

Lawless ones hide their Lawlessness. They must deceive to profit. Berkeley was typical, a past master at deception. He said one thing and did another. He used spies. He used a flag of truce to attack kinsmen. It is believed that he used poison to murder Bacon. All that he was was revealed when he openly violated the rule "*If thou has stricken thy hand with a stranger, thou art snared.*" *Prov 6:1.*

Lawlessness brings down the wrath of God. There is no exception.

<sup>20</sup> Cooke, p. 295

<sup>21</sup> This is an unnatural, un-Christian blood lust. Berkeley may have been perverted by his employers or their masters. He may have adopted their alien law as his own, or, it may have been that Berkeley was one of them. The things he did are so completely alien to the Christian religion and the people it produced that it begs the question.



Our ancestors paid a horrible price for their early forbearance and tolerance of Lawless English governors and unlawful directives emanating from the head of the Established Church which was slave to its bankers.

Some say that the colonists could have done nothing in the face of the power of Britain. Able or not, they paid the penalty that scripture says goes with Law violation. Evil will stay until banished. It will stay, and stay, and stay.

The menace of bloodthirsty strangers brought the people together, not indignation that the Governor violated The Word dealing with strangers. It was the menace of the strangers, not the fear of violating The Word that brought action from the people.

Without the violation there would have been no menace. When the menace vanished the one who violated The Word remained. The violator assumed power once more and violated other Laws. One who is Lawless is Lawless. A liar may also steal. A thief may also murder. One who knowingly adulterates one Law can hardly keep from doing the same to another, and will only keep from doing so as long as it is not to his advantage. As it was, revenge for the loss of his Indian trade, and the booty gained by confiscating his opponents' estates provided his prize, and he ruthlessly took it.

The lesson was this: "*By their fruits ye shall know them.*" As people do in little things, so will they do with the greater. If they will defy God the Word, they certainly will not spare man. Berkeley should have been identified as an enemy of the Word and, therefore, an enemy of the people of the Word early in his rule.

The wise pay attention to the little things. The Law, not man, judges. Unopposed Lawlessness grows. It unleashes the wrath of God. God's wrath is more to be feared than man.

### French & Indian War 1754-1760

The French and Indian War in America was the American name for the Seven Years War between England and France going on in Europe. The French made extensive use of Indian auxiliaries, something forbidden to Christian nations because it inferred that one was willing to put a kinsman under the rule of a stranger.<sup>1</sup> This willingness was considered an act of blasphemy to the American colonials who in their isolation were both familiar with The Word as well as with the savage mercies of the Indians.

There were other contributing reasons. The French king hoped to keep and expand the French, Ohio and Mississippi territory. This would earn money to pay on the debt owed his ever watchful bankers.

The English king wished to keep the land he had and, if possible, break through the French ring that held back the American settlers from their westward march.

The international bankers, who controlled both contestants through their loans, were interested primarily in the profit that war and war effort bring. A long war with a negotiated settlement which left the debt of both nations vastly expanded served their interests best.

The enormously wealthy Ohio region was the arena. It was the link between the French colonies on the St. Lawrence and those on the Mississippi. It was in the French national interest to contain the English colonies to the eastern seaboard, and the English wished to keep from being surrounded by the French.

The matter was complicated by religion. The story told to the French Catholics was that the British were heretics who must be brought back into the fold. The British king, ruler of the Protestant Established Church, told his people that the pope was a heretic. Both spiritual rulers made their god say whatever they wished him to say. The beliefs of both differed from the beliefs of the majority in Virginia.

For instance, as in the case of the French, the British officers just over from Britain immediately took up with red strangers. Their spiritual leaders told them it was a thing allowed. Cooke writes:

1 "Thou mayest not set a stranger over thee, which is not thy brother." Deut 17:15 The phrase "French and Indian War" was used to perpetually condemn the act.



"Indian beauties (were in the) camp, of whom the officers were scandalous fond - among them the dazzling Bright Lightning, the daughter of White Thunder."

The Indians knew exactly what they were doing:

*"If you gain a victory of them ... set out the handsomest ... of your daughters ... then send them to be near the Israelites ... and when they are enamored of them ... persuade them to leave off their obedience to their own laws and the word of that God who established them ... for by this means God will be angry at them." Antiquities 4:6:6.*

By again using this age old stratagem and turning God's wrath against His own people for their disobedience, strangers once again emerged victorious.

**"Children of Israel ... You only have I known of all the families of the earth: therefore I will punish you for all your iniquities." Amos 3:1-2**

The punishment was soon to come. Fighting commenced when George Washington of Virginia arrived at the forks of the Monongahela and Allegheny Rivers in Pennsylvania to build a fort and was fired on by the French who were on the same mission.

For the first two years the war was a series of disasters for the English. Their European trained armies were masterful killing machines. The men in ranks were trained to rapidly deploy from a column of march into a line of battle three deep. The first row would present muskets and fire, then reload. While this was in process the second line would pass through the first line and fire, then the third line would pass forward and do the same.

The muskets were made without sights. The barrel had no rifling. It was designed for rapid loading and firing. A skilled musketeer could fire five times a minute. Its effective range was 50 yards. Nothing reached by its fire could long withstand it. Its one ounce ball could easily knock down a horse.

Battle lines were protected by light infantry armed with rifles. These rifles had sights and barrels with rifling but could only be loaded and fired once a minute and were of little use in a general engagement. They could be aimed and were very accurate at 200

yards or even farther. The light infantry was created to cover the front and flanks until the battle line was ready to engage.

Once engaged, the battle line itself could easily deliver three volleys of musketry a minute. The hail of one ounce lead balls swept all before it inflicting devastating destruction on an enemy. It was the most deadly military machine ever devised.

These columns carried cannon easily capable of destroying any palisaded fort then built in the West. They also carried wagons with supplies to build bridges and to supply the army with other necessities. It was a deadly, but cumbersome, train. It was an army designed to fight on the open terrain of Europe.

The terrain on the American frontier did not aid the European army as it was then constituted. There were no open fields in which lines could rapidly deploy, no stationary targets which could be rapidly engaged, few roads of any sort, and those that existed were in very poor repair.

These deficiencies<sup>2</sup> came sadly to light when General Edward Braddock was sent to capture Ft. Duquesne. Accompanied by Major George Washington and his colonials, the English army plunged into the wilderness to accomplish its assigned mission.

The army consisted of two royal regiments numbering about 1,000 and militia companies from Virginia, Maryland, and New York also numbering about 1,000. There was a great train requiring four miles of road. Washington complained that the army spent so much time repairing the road and building bridges that it took four days to cover twelve miles.

Braddock refused advice. The colonials were made to march in the rear of the column instead of being placed in front and flanks to act as light infantry to protect the main column.

Reaching Duquesne, the British crossed a creek onto a road that crossed a plain leading to the fort. In front were wooded hills. On the flanks were deep ravines covered with brush.

The French were led by Captain De Beaujeu who commanded 230 Canadians and 630 Indians, 860 in all, but these troops had been kept informed of the progress of the English by their Indian beauties. The battle was a spur-of-the-moment thing. The young Frenchman had been persuaded that the English column was too

<sup>2</sup> Any enemy who has conquered is worthy of respect. His techniques work. One must know his strengths to withstand his attack, and be willing to adopt his successful techniques and combine them with one's own strengths to forge a new decisive weapon that can defeat him before a defense can be found against it.



powerful to oppose and just wanted to give the British a try before abandoning the fort. The French attacked in front, the Indians went to the flanks.

Hearing a commotion in front as the French crashed through the brush, the British followed standard practice and swung the column into battleline and advanced. There was no target. Trees and brush as close as 20 yards in the immediate front might hide an enemy. An occasional head showed, a puff of smoke at close range, a soldier fell. There was still no target.

The battle line presented muskets and fired, hundreds of musket balls cut limbs, scarred trees, and brought down leaves. It also killed twelve men including De Beaujeu. It was the only success enjoyed by the British. The second line advanced and fired, the French retreated behind more distant trees and kept out of harm's way. From the flanks the Indians mounted accurate rifle fire. The English battle line was being disseminated by an enemy seldom seen. Men toppled on the left and on the right.

Retreating file on file the same way they had advanced, the army arrived back on the road from where they started, leaving a carpet of redcoats covering the floor of the woods behind them.

The colonial rangers were ordered forward with their rifles to act as light infantry to keep the savages away from the battle line. By the time the colonials had pushed forward from the rear there were heaps of dead redcoats everywhere. The Indians deserted the fight to go after the red coats of the slain and their personal effects, giving a breathing spell. The army streamed back in a rout. A ragged Indian fight started as the colonials put themselves between the French and Indians and what was left of the regulars.

Covered by the rangers the rout continued. Major George Washington won renown that day. Not that he saved the army, he didn't. The army was destroyed and General Braddock was killed. His body was hurriedly buried in the road and the soldiers marched

over his grave to keep the savages from finding his body. But that day Washington's colonials saved many who would have otherwise died. They lost horribly themselves.<sup>3</sup>

### Frontier Warfare - The Lessons

The French, using many times their own number of Indian allies as light infantry armed with rifles, beat a British battle line in dense cover who were armed with muskets.

The British army learned. They changed their method of Indian fighting. The traditional battle line remained the same. It was invincible in open terrain. They also kept the cumbersome cannon. No frontier fort could withstand their fire. Copying the French, they increased the number of light infantry armed with rifles.

The English army did not have trained light infantry to spare for America, so Virginia colonials were employed to fight the elusive Indians and to protect the battle line until it could reach open terrain suitable for its use.

The changes worked. Using the new system, Louisbourg surrendered to Amherst in July 1758. Ft. Frontenac soon followed. In November, Forbes occupied Ft. Duquesne where Pittsburgh now stands and renamed it Ft. Pitt. Ticonderoga and Crown Point were evacuated by the French in May 1759 and the war was culminated by the decisive victory for the English in the daring assault on Quebec by Wolfe in September 1759. After the fall of Montreal, terms were signed on September 8, 1760.

This new knowledge was to cause much trouble for the White settlers on the frontier.

3 Not knowing enemy fighting techniques can cost dearly. During World War II, the Germans found that only tracked transport could be depended to move supplies in the USSR. They discovered this only AFTER being bogged down in Russia's mud and unable to move. That's why the Soviet armies had so many tracked vehicles. The French who had fought the Vietnamese before the Americans told the Americans about the Vietnamese tunnels. The Americans ignored this information and only after the war ended learned that the Viet Cong had been fighting from concealed tunnels in the midst of the American army during the entire war. The American army had gone to war without perfecting a method of fighting an underground enemy. See *The Tunnels Of Chu Chi*, Tom Mangold & John Penycate, Random House, NY, 1985.



### Alliances - Lessons

Indians had few laws and none that were binding. Consequently, Indians had almost no enforceable contracts among themselves that were honored, much less with Whites. The only things enforceable were enforceable with a rifled musket.<sup>4</sup>

Indians fought for booty, prestige among their own people, and to satisfy the demands of their gods. If one was to be their ally he must acquiesce in this, or they would not fight.

To make them fight, the French had to agree to let the Indians do as they liked, which included their offering sacrifices to their god, Okee, or the same god with a different local name. There was little that could be done to stop them from doing whatever it was that they wanted to. To agree, or contract with the alien, was to agree, or contract with whatever it was their god demanded. To do this the French and later the English, had to break their covenant with their own God, or else go to war with the stranger over it. This is true with all contracts with strangers.

First they broke the Law forbidding agreements with strangers:

**"Ye shall make no league with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall throw down their altars." Judges 2:2**

Their altars were the symbol of whatever it was that ruled them. The Indian altar was the stake, the scalp, and the torch.

In the Law of the Christian, anything considered important is mentioned at least twice. The Law prohibiting contracts - any contracts - with strangers is mentioned many times:

**"Thou shall make no covenant with them ... For they will turn away thy son from following me, that they may serve other gods." Deut 7:2,4<sup>5</sup>**

Agreeing to allow strangers to occupy the same land area as they do tacitly assents to intermarriage, since people who occupy the

<sup>4</sup> All agreements are conditional to the law under which they are made. A perfectly understandable agreement between Christians may become a nightmare when interpreted by an Islamic court where Islamic law holds sway. I have known a company which was guaranteed a \$20 million trade profit, end up with a \$20 million dollar loss and ultimately go into bankruptcy and be taken over by Islamic courts. The same holds for Japanese law. The Christian Law is not the same as the strangers' law.

<sup>5</sup> "What part hath he that believeth with an Infidel? ... come out from among them and be ye separate." II Cor 6:15,17

same area always intermarry in time. This resulted in another Law violation stemming from unlawful contracts. It is the reason for the continuous prohibition on contracts. Following is another way of saying the same thing:

**"Can two walk together, except they be agreed." Amos 3:3**

The rule among the faithful has been to distrust the man who keeps company with strangers. Basic contracts must be agreed upon for people to keep each other's company. The contracts must be approved under some god's basic law.

Indian contracts fell under the law of Okee. Christian Law could not be enforced. They had to be permitted to take White prisoners, rule over them, and rape, torture, and maim these prisoners to satisfy the laws of Okee. Okee's law violated the Law of the Christian God;

**"You shall appoint over you a man of your own race, you must not appoint a foreigner, one who is not of your own race." Deut 17:15 New English Bible<sup>6</sup>**

There is one final lesson. The Law applies only to Israel<sup>7</sup> and no one else. Strangers do not honor Christian Law; therefore, no agreement can be made with them based on Christian Law.

This is important. The Indians at Jamestown did not understand "Good Jesus," "Sweet Jesus." They understood the thunder of Okee and the pain of the stake. Christians learned this and adapted the pain of Okee for Indian men, women, and children. Indians understood Okee's talk.

Neither England or France, both in debt to and ruled by strangers, felt any obligation to abide by the Laws of the Christian religion.

Today, many read the papers and pity the Palestinians who are being persecuted by the Israelis. Many do not know that Muslims live under similar laws, the laws of their holy book, the Koran. The Koran exhorts Muslims to "kill off" Jews, Christians, and other non-Muslims. In the *Book of Repentance* alone there are 16 such directives: 5, 9, 12, 14, 20, 24, 29, 36, 41, 44, 73, 81, 86, 88, 111, & 123. This requirement is not absolute. The payment of fines and agreeing to restrictions may allow one to keep his life. But, this too

<sup>6</sup> **"Thou shalt reign over many nations, but they shall not reign over thee." Deut 15:6**

<sup>7</sup> **"He showed his word ... his statutes and his judgments unto Israel. He hath not dealt so with any nation ... they have not known thee." Ps 147:19-20**



is conditional on the whim of the ruler at the time. The Israelis know this and know what their life would be like under Islam. This conditions their actions.

The Moslems also know the religion of the Israelis, and that it too is different in its own way. The educated know that Israelis appear to exalt certain books in the Old Testament. They know too that it is not the requirements of these books that are followed, but the "up to date" interpretation of what is in those books. The interpretations are found in a massive collection of 63 books called the Talmud. There are also other holy books. These books reveal that the Jews expect a Messiah. Many don't know that many Israelis believe that the Messiah has arrived. His identity is revealed in their writings:

"The throes of mother Zion which is in labor to bring forth the Messiah - without metaphor, the Jewish people."  
*Kethuboth Illa, Exh 147*

This makes the Muslims tremble. The Jewish messiah is to be the Jewish people themselves, and the Jewish people have control of the Palestinians. The Muslims tremble because they know what the Jewish scriptures say about the arrival of the Jewish messiah is also revealed in Jewish scriptures:

"As soon as the King Messiah will declare himself ... He will start a merciless war on non-Jews and will overpower them. He will slay them in masses, kill their kings and lay waste ... He will say to the Jews: I am the King Messiah for whom you have been waiting. Take the silver and the gold from the goyim."  
*Josiah 60,6. Rabbi Abtrbanel to Daniel 7,13.*

In spite of this writing, one must assume that the actual intent to carry out the plan of this messiah will be denied. To admit to someone that he intends to kill him may cause him to become unmanageable. The denial must be judged by other writings of the same religion. Writings such as the Kol Nidre prayer made on the Day of Atonement. This Kol Nidre prayer is repeated by Jews every year on the same day.

"All vows, bonds, oaths, devotions, wherewith we have vowed, bound, sworn, and obligated ourselves with an oath from the Day of Atonement which is coming, in all of them we repent and we come before our Father in heaven (to ask) if we

vowed a vow there shall be no vow, if we have sworn an oath there shall be no oath, if we obligated ourselves an obligation there shall be no obligation. Let the vow be annulled from its very inception, let the oath be annulled from its very inception, let the obligation be annulled from its very inception. Let there be no vow, and no bond, and no devotion and no oath and no obligation."<sup>8</sup>

It is for the above reasons that Islamic peoples distrust agreements with Jews since Jewish agreements are shaped by the Kol Nidre prayer. The Israelis distrust Muslim agreements since basic Islamic law instructs its followers to kill infidels. Both distrust Christians because its Law requires belligerent separation and forbids contracts with strangers. And, knowledgeable Christians distrust both Jewish and Islamic ways as being incompatible with their own Christian Law.

Dealings with any group of strangers must be governed by the law that will govern the agreement. If one cannot be certain that the agreement can be enforced, he has no agreement. This was the dilemma in making agreements with the Indians.

This is the dilemma in making agreements with all strangers.

<sup>8</sup> Professor Israel Davidson from *American Jewish Year Book* 1923 - 1924, also, the *Soncino Edition*, 1935, also, *Kol Nidre*, Vol VIII *Jewish Ency.*, p. 539



### Revolution & Renegades

Perhaps one third of the Americans of English descent were loyal to their king. They were as patriotic as those who supported the Colonial cause. They were called "Tories" by those loyal to the American cause. Many Tories were renegades.

Tories drew most of their number from men the British had appointed to government positions<sup>1</sup> in the colonies, those owning large grants from the king, and those who were members of the Established Church. They became renegades when they allied themselves with the Indians. To these were added those who found that riches might easily be gotten by taking loot the Indians considered valueless, but which was worth a great deal when sold in markets unavailable to the Indians. The establishment's state religion justified their murderous acts with "Obey in all things your masters." Col 3:22-23 "Be subject to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates." Tit 3:1. These were words that Jesus never used.

Ignored was the fact that these quotes were conditional on God's Commandments governing his people and that the first Law He gave was to obey His commandments.<sup>2</sup>

The Commandments forbade alliance with strangers lest one learn their ways, walking with them, and raising one's hand against man. By order of the king, and on advice of his counselors, these commands were violated time and time again, with the Established Church justifying its actions,<sup>3</sup> which is why a prayer book was used instead of the Bible.

The Established Church considered the Dissenters to be rebels. Those who would not obey the king, God's representative, were heretics worthy of whatever fate befell them. The results of these twisted teachings were a license to commit unspeakable acts.

Maryland and Virginia contained large Tory minorities. Some joined the regular British army. Others organized guerrilla com-

1 Men naturally vote their paychecks to insure their daily bread. God gave his people their own land, never to be sold, so they could plant and look to Him for their daily bread.

2 (1) "We know him, if we keep His commandments." 1 John 2:3, (2) "If you love me obey my commandments." John 14:15 (3) "Fear God, and keep His commandments: for this is the whole duty of man." Eccles. 12:13

3 Before the war forced the choosing of sides, it was the social thing to belong to the Episcopal Church since attendance showed respect for the king. Absence - disrespect. After the war the Episcopal Church virtually ceased to exist in America. It's rebirth in recent years is due solely to its ability to support and adopt local ideals as its own.

panies. Joining forces with the Indians, they commenced a reign of terror from New York to Georgia. New York alone furnished about 23,500 of these recruits.<sup>4</sup>

Butler's Tory Rangers took part in the Wyoming and Cherry Valley massacres in 1778. The Cherry Valley, New York massacre in particular was a nasty scene. The village containing about 150 people was attacked on Nov. 11, 1778 by Walter Butler and Joseph Brant with 800 Indians and Tories. One third of the villagers were killed in the attack with most of the rest taken captive and put to death in the most cruel and barbarous manner before reaching Canadian settlements.<sup>5</sup>

The British sent 40 soldiers to help the Indian chief, Joseph Brant, in the second attack on Fort Henry. Also accompanying the expedition were 60 Indians under George Girty. The fort had 20 men and several women to resist, including Lew Wetzel. Wetzel shot the first Indian killed in the attack. The attackers were decimated, while the defenders had one wounded.

Peter Spicer was another renegade. The Spicer family was murdered by Indians in 1777 and Peter was taken captive and lived with the Indians and learned their ways.<sup>6</sup> Turning against his own people, he took part in Indian depredations. Survivors agree that Peter Spicer was cruel almost beyond belief.

After the war he was protected by the government according to treaty with the British who insisted that their renegades guilty of murder not be punished according to Law. The American government would not, however, return to him the plantation owned by his father at the time of his death at the hands of Indians. He died in 1815. The Phineas priesthood is blamed by some.

4 Encyclopedia Britannica, 14th Ed. Vol. 14. p. 447.

5 The power of the Tories was broken by George Rogers Clark's victories at Kaskaskia and Vincennes and in the battles of King's Mountain and Cowpens. Tories who fought with the Indians caused the colonies to turn against them. Their property was confiscated. Sixty thousand went into exile. Laws against Tories were not repealed until after the War of 1812. It is the observation of the writer, that down to present times, the descendants of those Tories do not react or think as do descendants of those who revolted against the king. Today, Canadians supinely permit their government to impose draconian censorship laws and savagely punish the exercise of freedom of speech.

6 "They were mingled among the heathen and learned their works." Ps 136:35



Indians often captured White children, kept them, and taught them their ways. After learning the Indian ways many of these Whites became more savage than the Indians themselves, exulting in the torture of their own kinsmen.

Such a person was Simon Girty, a renegade of black reputation. He had brothers like himself who were notorious on the frontier.

A great many raiding parties contained one or more of these renegade Whites who knew the ways of the Whites. With smiles and jests on their lips they went ahead to dispel the suspicions of the hapless White settlers. These same lips wore the same smiles and made jests as they put fire to the suffering victims captured by their treachery.<sup>7</sup>

On the Ohio River, four men and two women set out on a raft. Two White men appeared and said they were fleeing Indians. Not willing to have them fall into the hands of the savages, the raft put ashore where they were boarded by an Indian war party. The captives were made to run the gauntlet, then burned at the stake. One escaped.<sup>8</sup>

The result of these incidents was that Whites who showed sympathy with the Indians were looked on as being secret renegades - creatures far more dangerous than Indians themselves. An Indian could be fought if one was warned in time - a renegade, never.

Some who were innocent were believed to be renegades and were put to death before they could prove otherwise. The suspicion of unknown men was strong. Before anyone was accepted he had to have a sponsor. Otherwise he was immediately disarmed and placed under guard. Even Lew Wetzel, a living legend on the frontier, was more than once held as a suspected renegade by people who did not recognize him and who had everything to lose. One had to have a bona fide sponsor. There had been too many instances of nice looking, well-spoken White men accepted into White settlements who later opened the gates to Indian friends at night with disastrous results.

An unknown White was always met with suspicion, disarmed, and kept as a prisoner until he could furnish someone to vouch for him.

7 The same was true of White renegades working with Orientals during the Vietnam War. Today, in western Virginia, a series of unprovoked attacks on Whites by Black wolfpacks wielding baseball bats and chains has been distinguished by the inclusion of single White renegades. It is the same area where White renegades were active against their kinsmen 250 years ago. This behavior may be learned through forced integration with strangers in today's government schools.

8 Allman p. 192

Failure to produce a character witness within a reasonable time could produce unfortunate results. Those living constantly under the shadow of the tomahawk were unwilling to risk all for the sake of one who was unknown.

### Frontier Mercy

On the frontier outrage was common. In 1781, a White man who had had his tongue torn out and his hands cut off reached the settlement where he soon died. Elsewhere, a scout deep in the woods heard an explosion. Investigating he found the bodies of six Indians and a White woman. She had been captured and kept by the chief for his own pleasure. To destroy the savages<sup>9</sup> she threw gun powder into the fire killing herself and all of the Indians.<sup>10</sup>

The result was that the only way Whites would take Indians captive was to ransom them for Whites held by either the Indians or the British. If they could not be used in this manner, they were killed. Colonel David Williamson turned Indian captives over to the commander of Fort Pitt to be exchanged. The Fort Pitt commander released them and they began to prey once more on the border settlements. Although it was the Fort Pitt commander's fault, Colonel Williamson was held in public disgrace. To redeem himself Williamson later used any pretext to kill Indians.<sup>11</sup>

The rule quoted and followed on the frontier was:

**"I will deliver the inhabitants of the land into your hand; and thou shalt drive them out before thee. Thou shalt make no covenant with them ... they shalt not dwell in thy land." Ex 23:31-33<sup>12</sup>**

### Warfare Evolves

To suppress Indian marauders the U. S. sent General Harmar with 3,000 men into the Ohio region. Without frontier scouts and

9 This followed the example of Heber's wife, who took a nail and killed the Canaanite king. Judges 4:1-24

10 R. C. V. Myers, Wetzel The Scout.

11 Allman, p. 52.

12 "Thou shalt smite them, and utterly destroy them; thou shalt make no covenant with them, nor show mercy unto them: Neither shalt thou make marriages with them." Deut 7:1-4



knowledge of Indian warfare his army was ambushed and lost 183 men dead and 37 wounded. This encouraged further disorders.

Arthur St. Clair, governor of the Ohio Territory, took 2300 men equipped with artillery to build forts to protect the settlers. Again, without frontier scouts he was ambushed and lost 677 killed and 271 wounded. The Indians lost 271.<sup>13</sup>

Copying the Indian method of warfare, "Mad" Anthony Wayne defeated the Indians in the Battle of Fallen Timbers. Other commanders doing the same met similar success while armies fighting conventional warfare usually lost. Wetzel always fought the Indians according to their own rules and consistently won.

The Indian fighter, Simon Kenton, often fought beside Lew Wetzel. Because of his reputation, he underwent horrible torture when captured. He was dragged by a wild horse through the woods, made to run the gauntlet eight times, and was three times tortured at the stake. Turned over to the British he escaped from their prison and went right back to his trade of killing Indians. Miraculously he survived to become an old man and died in 1836.

### The Sign Of Phineas

It was during this period that the sign of Phineas began to appear. Carved on trees in the woods, it warned renegades that God's Laws

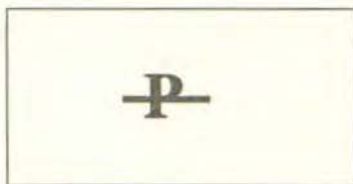


Figure 4: Sign Of Phineas:

were to be followed exactly and that violations would be punished in the manner prescribed by Law.

The same sign made by forming rocks on the ground was used as a memorial of some crime perpetuated against the colonists.

<sup>13</sup> Allman, p. 141.

### Lew Wetzel

The most noted Indian fighter was Lewis Wetzel. The Indians called him Deathwind because they never heard him in the woods, and because they believed his rifle was never empty. In his Indian fighting career, it is estimated that he killed more than 2,000 Indians.

The pedigree of this unusual man was usual for that period. The father of Lewis Wetzel was John Wetzel. John's father was born in 1731 in Holland. The family moved to Switzerland and then sailed to Pennsylvania.<sup>14</sup> His sons, John 14 and Martin 16, arrived in America orphans and were sold for their passage.

Martin served in the Revolution and fought in the battles of Long Island, Brandywine, and Germantown.<sup>15</sup> John married Mary Bonnett, believed to be of French Huguenot descent. They moved to Rockingham County, Virginia then back to Lancaster County, Pennsylvania where six children were born, Lewis among them. Once again they moved back to the Valley of Virginia.

Members of the family served in the Virginia Rangers with Washington and were in Braddock's defeat.

The Revolutionary War broke out when Lewis was 13. Too young to go into the army, he was still forced to fight for his life on the frontier. The British, active on the eastern coast, paid the Indians to kill settlers on the frontier. It was on the Virginia frontier that the Wetzels lived.

One day, he and his brother Jacob were hoeing corn when they were suddenly fired upon by an Indian war party hidden in the woods. Lewis was wounded and both children were captured. They were so tightly bound that blood began to flow. They were watched carefully to see which was sensitive to pain so that he might be offered to Okee. The children were "frontier wise" and carefully refused to show the extreme pain they felt. The Indians were disappointed. If they could not feel pain Okee would not appreciate them as a sacrifice. They were taken along as slaves.

A few nights later while the Indians slept, Lewis and his brother loosened their bonds and escaped. They took from the sleeping

<sup>14</sup> These different nationalities represent the same "adam" race living in different political subdivisions.

<sup>15</sup> My own ancestor Robert Hoskins fought in these same battles. It would be interesting if the two had known each other.



warriors their father's rifle which had been stolen, his powder horn, and two pairs of Indian moccasins to travel in.

By the time Lewis was a teenager he had moved long distances with and without his family, survived smallpox which disfigured his face, could play the violin though he never learned to read and write, been captured and escaped from the Indians, and witnessed countless massacres. He was a product of his time. Almost every frontier family had lost a member to the Indians with the one lost often dying in excruciating pain. The conclusion was simple. The Indians caused pain. If there were no Indians there would be no pain.

The government was fighting the British in the east. The frontier was on its own and developed its own defenses. Lew Wetzel and hundreds like him were the raw material. Lew Wetzel's oath as he escaped from the Indians was typical, "I swear to kill every Indian that crosses my path so long as God lets me live."

### Deathwind & War Crimes Trial

When 16, Lew joined a party attempting to regain loot taken by Indian raiders. In the lead and alone he made contact with three grown braves. He immediately "treed". The Indians went behind their trees.

Lew's hat, held out on a stick was greeted with three bullets. Confident that they had killed him, the Indians exposed themselves when they sprang forward to collect his scalp as a trophy. Lew leaned from behind his tree and carefully sighted and killed the foremost Indian. Rifle empty, he turned and bolted with the other two in hot pursuit.

He then did what few before or since have ever been able to do; Lew Wetzel loaded his rifle while on a dead run. Crashing through underbrush, panting uphill, and sliding downhill, he managed to put his powder horn to the rifle muzzle, pour in the correct amount of powder, patch the ball, ram it down on top of the powder with the ramrod, prime the pan with powder, and turn to shoot the next Indian. Bolting again with an empty rifle, he repeated the procedure and again turned to kill the remaining Indian.

Collecting the three scalps he returned to his own party, his reputation established. Lew Wetzel, a boy of 16, killed three full grown Indian warriors. The rest of his life was made up of variations of this first encounter.

The general assembly wanted a scout to protect that part of the frontier. Lew Wetzel got the job. No scruples or mercy stayed his hand. He killed Indians as an occupation and became a hero in the process. On more than one occasion he located an Indian war party and proceeded to kill every member before they could return to their base. Strangely, in a perversion of the Law which prevents the killing of "man" but requires the death of lawless men, he refused to kill renegade Whites who came into his power.<sup>16</sup> That job he left to others. Some maintain that his refusal to completely obey the Law is the reason he died while still in his prime.

### The Peace That Kills

Most troubles in Indian fighting came from Whites who were new to the frontier or who were making the situation worse because they represented interests that were at variance with those of the settlers. One such was the same General Harmar who had been so roundly beaten once before by the Indians.

The general never seemed to give up. He worked ceaselessly to reason with the Indians and to try and establish a lasting peace with them.<sup>17</sup>

Each time an Indian chief would ride to meet with General Harmar he would be shot from the saddle by Wetzel or one of his imitators while en route. Infuriated, Harmar had soldiers sneak into a party where Wetzel was playing the violin. Twenty men jumped and captured him.

The news spread that Wetzel was a prisoner and was to be tried for the murder of an Indian at Fort Harmar. The settlers were incensed. To them the crime was that the government had so little understanding of Indians and that Lew Wetzel had been arrested. Not that an Indian had been killed. The latter was an achievement, not a crime.

A scout was sent by the colonists to General Harmar to tell him that the frontiersmen would wipe out the fort, troops, and everyone involved if Wetzel were not freed. In spite of this the trial was held. The Biblical defense was used and ignored by the court.<sup>18</sup>

Lewis was sentenced to hang.

16 "Because thou hast let go out of thy hand a man whom I appointed to utter destruction, therefore thy life shall go for his life." I Ki 20:42

17 The influence of these representatives of international finance began to be felt directly on the frontier from 1780 on. Gen. Harmar spoke for interests other than those of the settlers.

18 Ex 23:31-33, Deut 7:1-4



While all this was going on the Indians went on a rampage. The court re-thought the sentence. They were persuaded to issue a writ of *habeas corpus*. When asked who would give security for Lewis Wetzel's good behavior the court was roundly condemned for being fools because everyone knew that there was not a better behaved man in the country than Lew Wetzel.<sup>19</sup>

In the end, The Law prevailed. The Indians, like strangers through the years, were always agreeable to a peace treaty that gave them advantage. Each treaty made was made in violation of the Law, and was kept no better than Opechancanough kept his treaty 150 years earlier.

Whites, servants of the stranger, strove endlessly to achieve the peace that kills. The result was always the same.

Wetzel was a man 5 feet 10 inches tall, had strongly developed arms and shoulders, was slight and active of limb, with black hair that reached his knees. He wanted to give the Indians a trophy if they could take it.<sup>20</sup> They never did take it.

In the year 1808, while at Natchez, Mississippi visiting a cousin, he died.<sup>21</sup> He was only 44 at the time. He was worn-out by the severe exertions in the service of his people. He is buried in a small cemetery 20 miles from Natchez.

*"Behold I give unto him my covenant of peace ... even the covenant of an everlasting priesthood: because he was zealous for his God, and made an atonement for the children of Israel."*  
Num. 25:6-13

### Vincennes

Great events often are brought about by a small number of men committed to a cause, such as happened in Vincennes.

Vincennes is in the Ohio Territory. Virginia owned the Ohio Territory by charter. It had been invaded by the British from Detroit under Colonel Hamilton, the governor of Canada, and one much detested by the settlers. It was he who bought settlers' scalps from the Indians, man, woman or child. Captives were trouble to the Indians. Taking scalps was easy. Hamilton made it profitable. He paid for them.

<sup>19</sup> Allman, p. 138

<sup>20</sup> The Life And Times Of Lew Wetzel, C. B. Allman, E. V. Publishing House, Nappanee, Indiana, 1939, p. 41.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid. p. 198

The Virginian, George Rogers Clark, was commissioned to retake the posts. In the middle of the winter Clark issued a call for volunteers. The word that an expedition was going after "Hairbuyer" at Vincennes was enough to gather one hundred and fifty men immediately, men who had lost family members because of this creature. Hamilton was the one who sent the renegade Simon Girty with 500 Indians to destroy the settlement of Wheeling, Virginia (now West Virginia).

The Virginians volunteered to undergo the miseries of a winter campaign to punish this viper. While 150 volunteers doesn't sound like many by today's standards, they were all who were available considering the casualties already suffered in the sparsely settled frontier and the fact the volunteers would have to endure the rigors of a winter campaign. Only soldiers who have gone through a winter campaign can know what it is like. Words will not serve.

The winter trek to Vincennes is legend. Fifteen miles from the objective winter floods covered the land. Long stretches of the ice-covered Wabash had to be waded, the men holding rifles and powder overhead.

Blackening their faces, they assaulted the fort. Fourteen hours later, on February 5, 1779, "Hairbuyer" surrendered. The population took the oath of allegiance to the Commonwealth of Virginia.<sup>22</sup> Then, the moment arrived that Clark's men had volunteered for. The time to crush the head of the viper.

Hamilton's crimes were notorious. He had made covenants with strangers, had set out stumbling blocks<sup>23</sup> for men, had made renegades of other Whites by buying scalps from them, had incited strangers by paying them for the deaths of his own people and caused them to commit extreme cruelty against his own people. The men who volunteered and had undergone the rigors of the campaign expected Hamilton to be properly punished.

At Williamsburg, Governor Thomas Jefferson tried to administer justice. In an age when gentlemen gave their word and were paroled, Jefferson suspended these rules and treated Hamilton and his officers as outlaws. They were chained and thrown into jail for two months - as long as he dared hold them in this humiliating condition. The threat of British retaliation against Americans led to a prisoner exchange. Hamilton went free.

<sup>22</sup> Cooke p. 451.

<sup>23</sup> Deut 27:18, Romans 14:13.



It was extremely important to the establishment that Hamilton be protected. His punishment would have sent a message to all renegade servants of the establishment and the English alliance with the Indians could have collapsed. Practically speaking, it would have been impossible to have brought Hamilton before a tribunal of his own people from different countries to have The Law try him. The judges would have been "cherry picked" and he would have been released. The people of the frontier felt that it would have been better if Hamilton and his officers had died in the assault, or trying to escape on the way to Williamsburg.

The real issue as seen by the English rulers was the Territory. Whoever controlled the Ohio Territory could exploit this tremendous and enormously rich prize at a future date. Except for establishment agents in high places, the great mass of Americans saw it as an opportunity to spread their nation. My ancestor, Capt. Lewis Booker, 1st Continental Artillery, served seven years in the war. For this service he received 5,500 acres of this Ohio land as his bonus thereby removing it from public ownership and control. Many of his descendants, and my kinsmen, gradually filled it and reside there to this day. This bonus system was a first. It was not equal as required by Law, but still, the land was divided, divided among many who thereby became actually governing kings and priests. This was a major effort at obedience to the Law: *"The land shall be divided for an inheritance ... To many thou shalt give the more ... to few thou shalt give the less ... the land shall be divided by lot: according to ... their fathers they shall inherit."* Num 26:53-55. Its division among those who fought in the Revolution was the beginning of something new in the West, something that will flower in the days ahead.

### Lessons Of The Indian Wars

The savages learned that there were Whites, servants of strangers, who were as lawless as they were. They learned that there were renegades on both sides with whom one could make advantageous deals.

The settlers pushing into the largely vacant lands of the West also learned that there were two enemies: the savage ones to the front that must be dealt with daily, and the no less savage renegades and their alien masters to their rear. The most dangerous were the

renegades whose paychecks came indirectly from strangers whose interests they represented. Men tend to vote their paychecks.

The entire Saxon nation learned that The Law was not a dead letter. The division of the Ohio Territory proved it. It was the start of something new.

### Tecumseh

Instead of issuing tallies to raise money in the ancient manner of Western peoples, the new American government borrowed extensively from the same international bankers as had the English and French kings. Interest payments on this debt and other private debts soon siphoned off the floating supply of money and bankruptcy stared many in the face. The new usury banks opening up in America were happy to make loans, but recently bankrupted farmers could only load their wagons and push west hoping to make a new start, abandoning their neat homesteads to be sold by the financiers to other recent arrivals from Europe.

It is not surprising that the end of the Revolutionary War brought no peace to the frontier. The American colonies had won the West, but would it stay won? British agents were actively stirring up the Indians. Things continued in a state of flux. The Ohio was opening up but who would own it in the end, Britain or America? The colonists on the frontier were pawns in the game.

In 1810, one of the Indian chiefs, Tecumseh, devised a plot to seize General Harrison at a peace conference at Vincennes. The plot was discovered. In 1811 he went south to stir up the Creeks, Choctaws, and Chickasaws to fight for his league.

General Harrison learned of the scheme and marched against Tippecanoe, Tecumseh's village. He was met with offers of peace and offers of a treaty to be signed the next day. Harrison waited. That night his camp was surrounded and assaulted. The battle was bloody but the Indians were repulsed. Tippecanoe was found deserted and burned.

In 1812, war broke out with Britain. On July 17, 1812, Brant and his Mohawks, along with Tecumseh, joined forces with the British and were supplied by them while working closely with them. British agents aroused almost all of the Indian tribes on the borders supplying them bountifully with weapons. The massacre by the Pot-



tawatomies of practically the entire garrison and other refugees at Fort Dearborn (now Chicago) followed.

On the fall of Detroit, Colonel Winchester arrived with reinforcements and was attacked by British regulars and Indians under Colonel Proctor. Winchester surrendered to superior forces under Proctor's solemn pledge<sup>24</sup> to protect them from the Indians. The Indians burnt up the sick and wounded in two cabins, and then threw all other wounded on the flames. Proctor just stood by. The number of killed and missing was almost 200. Of 1,000 only 33 escaped. This was the River Raisin Massacre.

General Harrison built Fort Meigs. Here he was besieged by Col. Proctor and Tecumseh. Eight hundred reinforcements were cut to pieces - many of them massacred after being taken prisoner. Harrison pursued Col. Proctor and caught him at the river Thames. Eight hundred British regulars were broken in the first attack and almost all surrendered. The Indians were put to flight a short time later. Colonel Proctor escaped in his carriage. Tecumseh was killed.

General chaos then engulfed the frontier. Massacre followed massacre and killing followed killing until it gradually ceased in the north for lack of victims.

### The Indians Train Jackson

The Indians that Tecumseh had aroused then took the offensive in the South starting with the capture of Fort Mimms on the Alabama River in August 1813. The captor was the Creek, Chief Weatherford. Under his hand, men, women, and children slowly died. The warfare was savage and conducted under Indian law. No quarter was shown by either side.

General Andrew Jackson brought volunteers from Tennessee. General Floyd came with Georgians. General Coffee was ordered to attack Tallasehatche. He drove the Creeks into their cabins and killed every warrior and burned the town.

Jackson took 2,800 men to relieve a small party of "friendly" Indians under attack by 1,000 Creeks. He killed a quarter of them and the rest fled.

24 "They ... were mingled among the heathen and learned their works." Ps 106:35-36. The oath of any of our people who keep company with strangers must be judged by the requirements of the stranger's god, not the Christian God. To deviate from this rule courts disaster.

General Floyd burnt Autosse killing 200 Indians. Claiborne with 1000 men including "friendly" Choctaws routed Weathersford and destroyed his village.

Jackson gathered fresh troops from Tennessee and sent half against hostile Creeks at the Horseshoe of Tallapoosa River and destroyed 557 Creeks. Weatherford surrendered alone. Almost all of his followers were dead.

The rest of the Indians sued for peace which was granted.<sup>25</sup>

Jackson then rushed to New Orleans in time to defeat about 10,000 British with 6,000 of his own. The British suffered 700 killed, 1,400 wounded, and 500 captured. Jackson lost eight killed and 13 wounded.

In 1817, Creeks who had joined the Seminoles in Florida incited them to war. General Jackson was sent against them and seized St. Mar's in 1818. Two British subjects, Ambrister and Arbuthnot, were captured at that time. Jackson knew these types and, like Lew Wetzel, was not squeamish about killing them. On the charge that they encouraged the Indians to kill Whites,<sup>26</sup> he executed them as renegades. This was far different treatment than that meted out to "Hairbuyer" Hamilton and others like him. Hamilton was "establishment" - Jackson represented the people and enforced the Laws of God. His action set a precedent. From that time, it took a great deal of money to entice low types to side with strangers against their own people.

25 Today, the descendants of these people are rapidly growing in numbers. It was one of these who allowed his cow to die in excruciating pain while giving birth to a calf last year.

26 "Ye shall take no satisfaction (substitute) for the life of a murderer, which is guilty of death: but he shall surely be put to death." Num 35:31



## Chapter 4

# HAITI - Before The Revolution

The extermination of the White race in Haiti has influenced White opinion as nothing before or since. Before the War Between The States, the word Haiti was the most powerful propaganda word that could be used. It ushered in grisly visions that brought conversations to a stop and made people agree that such a thing must never happen again.

For this reason the establishment has censored the study of this epoch from today's schools and media.

### The French Revolution

The French Revolution was launched by the international bankers to foreclose and transfer the estates owned by the church, the king, and the king's lands managed by his nobles,<sup>1</sup> to themselves.

As with the other countries of Europe, the king of France and his nobles directly owned one-third of the land of France, the church owned one-third, and the rest of the nation one-third. The distant island of San Domingo in the Caribbean was the key to the house of cards. The king, his nobles, and the dignitaries of the church had invested heavily in the commercial activities of the island. It had been a profitable venture which supplied much of the cash flow for these large landowners. This cash flow was essential since it provided the payments which kept the international bankers from foreclosing the heavily mortgaged estates. If the income from this trade were stopped, most of the mortgaged land would be defaulted.

1 To discover the reason for a war is simple. Determine what was lost and who gained it, and you will learn the reason and those responsible.

It is a fascinating study to watch and see how such economic matters are managed in the hands of true professionals.

### The Island and People

Haiti was discovered by Columbus.<sup>2</sup> The Spanish quickly settled the island, exploited its mineral deposits, then moved on to participate in the Mexican and Peruvian discoveries leaving the island virtually abandoned.

The deserted western part of the island was settled by piratical English and French who strove for supremacy. As late as 1657, the English pirates held sway. Conditions changed, and by 1663 the French were dominant. This western part of the island became known as San Domingo while the eastern part under Spanish rule was known as Santo Domingo.

The original White population was largely descended from a mixture of these two. They were quick to defend themselves and their possessions from any encroachment from enemies, foreign or domestic. This frontier spirit resulted in two serious revolts against the pretensions of royal governors in 1670 and again in 1723.

In 1723, the governor complained to France that "They demand tax exemption, free trade with all nations, and a republican liberty."<sup>3</sup> The people of San Domingo claimed that since they had freely and of their own will given themselves to France, they were bound to France only through loyalty to the crown.

Should the crown be destroyed and the conditions at the time of their union with France nullified by the actions of the government of France, on local matters such as slavery and taxation<sup>4</sup> for instance, the people felt that they were justified to revolt. In many respects it was a repeat of the Virginia story.

The climate was bad. Letter writers to France, not accustomed to the climate, continually mention their failing health. It was par-

2 Recently, Indian bones were discovered predating 1492 showing syphilis lesions. The belief now is that non venereal syphilis was contracted by contact with the Indians by Columbus' sailors who returned home to Europe with it where it killed millions. "Get you up from this congregation ... and make an atonement for them: for there is wrath gone out from the Lord; the plague is begun." Num 16:45-46 "Then up stood Phineas, and executed judgment, and so the plague was stayed." Ps 106:30

3 *French Revolution in San Domingo*, T. Lothrop Stoddard, p. 4.

4 Taxation of our people by our people has always been illegal. "Of whom do the kings of the earth take custom or tribute? of their own children, or of strangers? Peter saith unto him, Of strangers." (Gr: allotrios - foreign, not akin.) ... Then are the children free." Matt 17:25-26.



ticularly hard on the children. They were sent to Europe to escape the climate as well as for an education. This did keep them alive and teach them the manners of France, but it did not teach them practical knowledge useful for plantation life.

The island had an elaborate militia system to protect against foreign interlopers and slave revolts. Eight thousand Whites capable of bearing arms, reinforced by two regiments from France, enforced separation and obedience to laws.

### The Consolidation of Farms

By 1789, the French half of the island was the jewel of the Caribbean capped by the bustling town of San Domingo, a town of 20,000. Individual plantations were largely self-sufficient. In such an agricultural society towns were only temporary trading centers which bustled with activity at harvest time, and were lazy and virtually deserted the rest of the time. In the 1600s, the produce was tobacco, cocoa, and indigo. There were many small proprietors who farmed with the aid of White indentured servants<sup>5</sup> and a few slaves. Each man was a king on his own land.

In the later 1700s, the crops were changed to coffee and sugar. The small landholders were dispossessed and their holdings incorporated into sprawling plantations<sup>6</sup> that farmed every available acre. Sugar requires large acreage, many hands, and large capital outlay. The small holdings were gradually bought out at what then were thought to be advantageous prices. Their owners became overseers on the large plantations or moved to town and in time degenerated into what would be termed "poor White" in Virginia.

By 1789, the number of sugar plantations alone numbered 800. There were 3,000 coffee plantations. These marched up the sides of mountains almost to the very crests. During harvest, there might be 100 ships anchored. Their produce supplied France and half of Europe. One thousand ships and 15,000 sailors connected San Domingo with the motherland. The island acreage was committed to the money crops of sugar and coffee and had no space to raise food to feed its Blacks. Much had to be imported. The Whites lived almost exclusively on imported food. During the Seven Years War

5 "If thou buy a Hebrew servant, six years shall he serve, and in the seventh he shall go out free." Ex 21:2

6 "In the year of the jubilee the field shall return unto him of whom it was bought, even to him to whom the possession of the land did belong." Lev 27:24

when the English blockade cut off the food ships, large numbers of Blacks died from starvation.

The need for large capital outlays resulted in a class of absentee owners, deeply in debt to the bankers, who owned these great plantations but rarely visited them.

The population was divided into four castes. Whites, "free colored" which included both Mulattoes and Negroes, Mulatto slaves, and Black slaves. In 1789, there were about 36,000 Whites, 26,000 free colored and sufficient Mulatto slaves to bring their total to perhaps 40,000, and 450,000 Blacks descended from many different African races.

### Society Before The Revolt

Perhaps half of the White population was European born. They were of all sorts brought by the riches generated from sugar and coffee. Most jobs available to these immigrants were limited to merchant or overseer. The large slave population made a class of White laborers impossible.

Among the poor Whites in the towns, Italians and Maltese predominated. The brutality of these immigrants to the Negroes and Mulattoes did much to envenom the race question.

In 1789 there were 24,700 White males to 10,800 females. Unlike Virginia and the states to the north where every effort was made to import women, no effort appears to have been made to remedy this need. This gave rise to a Mulatto population.

"The scarcity of White women had made illicit relations between the colonists and their negresses inevitable from the first .... The Negro women made no resistance. They lacked the European ideal of chastity, and they had strong reasons for welcoming their masters' favor."<sup>7</sup>

Then, too, the real rulers of France well knew the scriptures, how to avoid their condemnation, and how to use them to their own advantage:

*"Balaam the prophet advised Balak that he must do the following in order to destroy the Israelites ...*

*"If you... gain a victory over them (the Israelites, then do thusly)*

7 Stoddard, p. 37.



*"... set out the handsomest ... of your daughters ... then ... send them to be near the Israelites ... and when they are enamored of them ... persuade them to leave off their obedience to their own laws and the word of that God who established them ... for by this means God will be angry at them." Antiquities 4:6:6*

Societies containing influential strangers always promote laws that ban interracial marriage. This is a basic necessity. If such bans exist<sup>8</sup> they will logically be extended in time, to ban all aliens. If this happens, their profitable but unlawful activities cannot be practiced.

It is not surprising to find that interracial marriage was not prohibited by law. Still, the natural reluctance to engage in such unions caused it to be said that before the revolution "there were only 300 such cases in the colony."

When the bloody revolutionists in France questioned the color line in San Domingo, the colonists warned that no change would be tolerated. These people, threatened with annihilation, defied the whole power of France, and after being beaten they refused to surrender and joined the foreigner. The feeling against miscegenation was present from the earliest times, and it was shared by many in both government and the church.

"I do not think" writes a government official in 1681, "that marriages of Whites to Mulattresses, or of Mulattoes to White women, would be good for the colony ... It is true that the

8 To illustrate: In Lynchburg in the 1930s, the question of the moment discussed in the newspapers was whether or not Jews should be made to join the Blacks and Orientals in separate schools since they were also strangers. The Jewish population retaliated by financing the local NAACP. The Whites were forced to deal with this newly financed Black agitation and the original discussion was sidetracked.

debauchery of the Spaniards and Portuguese has brought them to alliances with such an impure stock; but I can also say that their colonies are abodes of abomination, vice and filth."<sup>9</sup>

Discussion of the race question<sup>10</sup> was an ongoing thing. At first the dispatches consisted of reasoned observations. San Domingo was a test tube in which over 60 various degrees of race crossings were noted. The consensus seemed to be:

"Once let the Black enter a stock it seemed impossible ever to breed it out again, the moment fresh infusions of pure White blood ceased, the Mulatto apparently began to revert to the Negro."<sup>11</sup>

The story of a Mulatto couple, told by a cleric, is worthy of note. The couple was descended on both sides from lines which had no fresh infusion of Negro blood for six generations. Both were blond and very handsome, with quick intelligence and no indication of Negro ancestry. Their children were dark, and their grandchildren very dark with definite Negro characteristics.

It was generally accepted that the Negro strain could never be bred out, and consequently careful note was kept of the ancestry of all who were born on the island.

The status of the White renegade was defined by the legal commentator Desalles.

"The White who marries a colored woman," he writes in 1786, "descends from his rank of White, and becomes the equal of the freedman. In equity, he ought to be put lower; for he

9 Stoddard, p. 41.

10 God absolutely forbids racial intermarriage. The Word teaches: (1) "Thou shalt not take a wife ... of the Canaanites ... but thou shalt go ... to my kindred, and take a wife." Gen 24:3,4. (2) "We have trespassed against our God, and have taken strange (nokriy - alien) wives of the people of the land." Neh 13:23-27. (3) "They have dealt treacherously against the Lord: for thy have begotten strange (zûwr) children." Hosea 5:7. (4) (Ezra the priest stood and said) "Ye have transgressed, and have taken strange wives ... now ... separate yourselves from the people of the land and from the strange wives ... until the wrath of our God for this matter be turned from us." Ezra 10:10-14. (5) "Neither shalt thou make marriages with them: thy daughter thou shalt not give unto his son, nor his daughter shalt thou take unto thy son." Deut 7:3. (6) "We have trespassed against our God, and have taken strange (nokriy) wives ... therefore let us make a covenant with our God to put away all the wives, and such as are born of them, according to the ... commandment of our God." Ezra 10:2-3.

11 Stoddard, p. 40.



who, through weakness, is untrue to himself, is still more likely to be untrue to the rest of human society."<sup>12</sup>

Beginning twenty or thirty years before the French Revolution, a media offensive was launched against the king. The king's support was largely supplied by the aristocracy. Much of the aristocracy's income came from San Domingo.

International bankers who had earlier profited by the slave trade financed dissidents in France to attack slavery in San Domingo in an effort to destroy this source of the aristocracy's revenue, and force them to default their loans and bankrupt. In this, they were extraordinarily successful. This media attack produced partisans rather than observers, and writings of that period increasingly represented extremist propaganda views. Scientific observations of the race situation began to be blacked out.

### Summary of the Mulatto Problem

In 1789, the Mulatto leader Ramond claimed that his caste was possessed of 1/3 the landed property and 1/4 of the slaves in San Domingo. These were substantial holdings giving power to those who held them.

It was this wealthy group of Mulattoes who spearheaded the destruction of the White race in San Domingo.

*"... if you... gain a victory over them (the Israelites, then do thusly) ... set out the handsomest ... of your daughters ... then ... send them to be near the Israelites ... and when they are enamored of them ... persuade them to leave off their obedience to their own laws and the word of that God who established them ... for by this means God will be angry at them." Antiquities 4:6:6*

God used the Mulatto to destroy His creation.

### The Church

The complaint was that the clergy was inferior, and it seems that this had been the case from the very first. "An atrocious greed has been the habitual vice of most of the parish priests."<sup>13</sup> Consequently,

<sup>12</sup> Ibid. p. 42.

<sup>13</sup> Ibid. p. 23.

churches were deserted. Rather than bear the ridicule of holding services in empty sanctuaries services were seldom held at all. The priests and other church officials were often given to drink<sup>14</sup> and public scandal delighted to discuss the children of the female Mulatto of the rector. They violated the Law against interracial marriage.<sup>15</sup>

As noted previously, in France the church owned a full one-third of the land and perhaps half the floating wealth of the nation. This violated the Law against monopoly.<sup>16</sup>

These transgressions caused widespread jealousy and condemnation.

The rulers of the church also lived in lavish dwellings, rode in extravagant processions, and sported themselves in a most ostentatious fashion.<sup>17</sup>

They had gotten this land and wealth through many generations in payment for prayers for the unfortunate faithful who might otherwise spend eternity in purgatory. As the owners and managers of a third of the land and half the wealth, they had a high profile. The church received little praise in good times and much criticism when economic affairs were less than good.

In short, the church had earned almost no credibility among the people, and was culpable in allowing the Mulatto problem to develop.

### The Maroons

Runaway slaves went to the high mountains along the Spanish border. There they existed on spontaneous food supply, and soon reverted to the life style of their ancestors. They were called "maroons." Bands of these savages descended at night to the plains to steal cattle, sack plantations and murder travelers. It was a constant irritant. When it became unbearable, full-scale military operations were undertaken to reduce their numbers.

<sup>14</sup> "And the Lord spake ... saying, do not drink strong drink, thou, not thy sons with thee, when ye go into the tabernacle of the congregation." Lev 10:8-9.

<sup>15</sup> "Thou shalt go ... to my kindred, and take a wife" Gen 24:3-4.

<sup>16</sup> "Woe unto them that join house to house, that lay field to field, till there be no place." Isaiah 5:8

<sup>17</sup> (1) "I am their inheritance: and ye shall give them no possession in Israel: I am their possession." Ezek 44:28. (2) "The priests, the Levites, and all the tribe of Levi, shall have no part no inheritance with Israel: ... Therefore they shall have no inheritance among their brethren: The Lord is their inheritance." Deut 18:1-2



The numbers of these maroons were difficult to come by. There were perhaps between three and ten thousand. Since female slaves joined them, in time a native maroon population grew up. They kept in constant contact with the plantation slaves. In allegiance, they were very independent. They sided with English and Spanish invaders against other Blacks who would later try to rule San Domingo. They resisted Toussaint L'Ouvrture's efforts to subject it. They welcomed Napoleon's army and worked for them. They were a wild card that could fall in any direction.

### Early Black Revolts

In 1679, a Spanish Negro formed a conspiracy to massacre the French. He fled to the mountains and was put down only after a regular campaign.

In 1691, two other Black leaders were hunted down and executed for having planned to massacre all the Whites in the district of Port-de-Paix.

In 1703, an able Black leader arose. For seven years, he spread terror by sacking plantations and raping White women. In 1750, there appeared the famous Macandal. For six years he abstained from active warfare. A witch doctor, he announced that he was the Black Messiah sent to drive the Whites from the island.

Macandal joined poisoning to maroonage. On a certain day all the water of Le Cap was to be poisoned. Poison had always been the chief slave method of revenge. Poisoning the master, his children, his cattle, his slaves, even self-inflicted poisoning to harm his master's property. Only by the merest chance was the conspiracy discovered. Macandal was hunted down and executed.

The colony was never free of poisonings, or of Macandal. Just before his execution he announced that he would return and drive the Whites from the island. From that time, the Blacks spoke in whispers and waited for his return. They still do.

### The Kelly Witch Doctor

My mother was Mary Emma Kelly, of Kelly's Ford, Virginia. Her grandfather was John Kelly. He was a businessman with a very profitable modern mill at Kelly's Ford, several plantations in Culpeper and Fauquier Counties and well over a hundred slaves.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>18</sup> Everyone has a rich ancestor. Ask anyone.

In the mid-1850s, a number of his slaves died. There was no sickness and no wounds. They just walked in from the fields, lay down and died. Careful questioning revealed that there was a "witchdoctor" or "conjure negro" somewhere on one of the plantations. Careful investigation revealed a wrinkled old crone of whom all the servants were deathly afraid.

John Kelly had her brought in for questioning. She confessed readily. The stories were true. She possessed extraordinary powers over the other slaves. They did what she said or died. It was that simple. Sometimes she put them to death as favors to others and was quite boastful and not at all contrite. While the master was restrained by the voluminous laws of the State of Virginia in the handling of his slaves - this one lawless slave possessed the power of life and death over these same slaves which were the valuable property of John Payne Kelly. She ruled these same 100 Blacks as a queen and did as she liked and recognized no restraint.

Threatened with whipping, she cursed and became abusive. She threatened to kill my grandfather and went into a trance mumbling incantations while rocking back and forth. Not responding, he slapped her to bring her out of the trance whereupon she instantly snapped into consciousness, jumped up, and bit my grandfather on his arm. Gangrene set in and his arm had to be amputated.

This particular type of witchdoctor was called locally a "poison conjure negro."<sup>19</sup> She had powers not understood by Westerners. Some of them had the power to order local servants, as well as servants on nearby plantations, to poison plantation owners and their families, drown or smother their children, or order a male slave to rape a White woman of the family at the cost of his own life, or

<sup>19</sup> The word "niger" is Latin for "Black." After the War the freed Blacks took exception to its usage because it was used during slave days. "Black" was preferred instead. They then took exception to the word "Black." Some preferring "Negro" (Black in Spanish) while others preferred "colored" (mixed White and Black) even though only colored's are mixed. Today they call each other "nigger" which carries a new meaning unknown to Whites, not necessarily unfavorable. Whites may not use this term. They now also take exception to "colored." Their latest preference is again "Black," which may be superseded by "African-American" or some other term by the time this book is in print.



anything else that came to mind. The servant given these orders would have had to obey or suffer punishments.

This exceptional power made these people extremely dangerous. News spread fast. All the nearby plantation owners soon learned that a "witch doctor" was in the vicinity.<sup>20</sup>

### The English/French Connection

In 1787, the Englishman Clarkson founded in London a society advocating the abolition of slavery.<sup>21</sup> A similar organization was founded in France, the "Amis des Noirs," in February 1788 by Brissot. The financing of these abolitionist groups can almost without exception be traced to those who operated the usury bank.

Two years earlier in Virginia, Thomas Jefferson had been asked how to cope with the misstatements and misinformation emanating from Britain. He didn't have an answer, but he did tell how the media at this early date promoted establishment lies and distortions. He did this in a letter to G. K. van Hogendorp, Paris, Oct. 13, 1785.

"You ask me what are those operations of the British nation which ... will produce this effect? (hostile attitude) ... The most effective engines for this purpose are the public papers. You know well that the government always kept a kind of a standing army of news writers who without any regard to truth, or to what should be like truth, invented and put into the papers whatever might serve the minister. This suffices with the mass of the people who have no means of distinguishing the false from the true paragraphs of a newspaper. ... Instead of a few of the papers formerly engaged, they now engaged every one. No paper therefore comes out without a dose of paragraphs against America."<sup>22</sup>

Jefferson homed in on the British ministry announcements. He should have homed in on the papers themselves. These papers were establishment organs. The "standing army of news writers" he

<sup>20</sup> It would seem logical that "witch doctors" could be tried for murder. I don't know of any such trials held. If a reader has information in regard to this I would appreciate hearing from him.

<sup>21</sup> The radical abolitionist's hallmark was a total unwillingness to repatriate. Their complete absorption in "freedom and equality" for Blacks in violation of The Law arouses the suspicion that they are working for someone else's law, a law that cannot be changed. When allowed free rein, history shows that they opt for amalgamation and/or White subjection. This destroys everything The Law created. God does not fight Himself.

<sup>22</sup> Thomas Jefferson, Merrill D. Peterson, 1984, Literary Classics of the US, NY NY p. 835.

referred to are known today as the "press corps" - paid hacks who will write any slander, any vilification required. They worked together. The ministry made announcements written by ministry propagandists. They were released to the press corps, just as today. The reporters of the papers of that day included them in the next edition of the establishment media. The people read and believed them. Like today, they were told nothing other than what was written in the media, and the media only told the British public what it wanted them to know.

Newspapers of this same sort were established and financed in France by the same establishment. Instead of printing the king's announcements, they printed exclusively establishment news and views. They promoted strife and revolution. They backed the revolutionary view of "abolition without compensation." Rabid abolitionist views were the only ones given space in the media. The stories exclusively printed were those describing the evils of the aristocracy, the corruptness of the court, the venal and hypocritical clergy, and the atrocities committed by these groups against poor defenseless Black slaves. They preyed on the natural pity of the French people for the underdog, and painted a picture of continuous grinding misery of the Black slave and the vindictive, brutal, evil nature of slave owners in a way to make the aristocrats and clergy monsters in the public's mind.

Since the king and the church owned two-thirds of the land which had formerly belonged to the people, and since slavery was an exclusive institution of these two groups, it was natural that the international financiers would successfully use the slavery issue against the church and government, the owners of the "great prize." It was all there beneath the surface - if the people could remove the king and clergy, the land would be ownerless and the bankers could foreclose. The media blitz was successful beyond belief.

Promoting this view in France, Mirabeau fought savagely against the San Domingo peace delegation and demanded that the Negroes and the coloreds take part in the elections.<sup>23</sup> The delegation from San Domingo had embroiled San Domingo in the French Revolution, and the French Revolutionists were determined to tear God out of the fabric of everything.

<sup>23</sup> Deut 17:15, Deut 15:4, Jer 30:21.



### The French Revolution

In 1788, the National Assembly began taking the reins of government from the Old Régime. The winter of 1788-1789 was an exceptionally hard winter in France and resulted in famine. Even this was blamed on the monarchy by the banker-financed media which shrilled that the royalty was callously telling the starving people "let them eat cake" when there wasn't even bread.

Failure of French crops caused a prohibition against the export of grain. San Domingo was then threatened with famine.

Outwardly, French liberals had taken the American Bill of Rights and Constitution to heart. They synthesized them and issued their own "Declaration of the Rights of Man." This effort was nothing that Thomas Jefferson or any of the other American founding fathers would have recognized.

With few exceptions, the American founding fathers were educated. Most knew Latin, Greek and Hebrew. It was general knowledge that "man" in the Bible came from the Hebrew word "adam." "In the beginning God created man." The word "adam" in Strong's Concordance means "to show blood in the face," to blush red.<sup>24</sup> There is only one race in the world that blushes red.

The French at the time of the Revolution had been kept amazingly ignorant of Biblical matters. They had been kept so by the Christian church which concealed The Laws forbidding her lavish lifestyle, immense wealth, and the means by which it was gained.

This ignorance of the population played into the hands of France's well-financed media propagandists. "Man" meant whatever the media said it meant, and they said that "man" meant EVERYONE, not just those who "blush red." The "Rights of Man"

<sup>24</sup> The use of "man" when referring to a Black was the trademark of the ignorant speaker. The words "boy," "chap," "fellow," "nigger," "Black," etc. were used instead, but NEVER the word "man."

now meant that everyone everywhere, regardless of background or race, was equal and entitled to the same rights.

The church dissented, but did not dare open Pandora's box by quoting The Law to support its dissent.<sup>25</sup> Opening Pandora's Box would call attention to the other Laws being violated. The result was that the church could not protest and her cry of "unfair" was unheard by a people made cynical. By default, the word "man" - *adam*, now meant what the radicals said it meant. It meant "everyone."

A member of the San Domingo delegation wrote back home that "the people here are trying to raise a revolt among our Negroes. Those calling themselves 'Friends of the Blacks' are writing against us."

On Oct. 5, 1789, the media incited a Paris mob to march on Versailles. This brought both the king and the National Assembly to heel. The media controlled the mob, and the mob ruled the king, the National Assembly, France, and San Domingo. Of course, the international bankers ruled the media, and thereby ruled all that the media ruled.

In Paris lived a colony of San Domingo Mulattoes who had received their educations there but had never returned home. They were encouraged to go before the National Assembly and demand that Mulattoes be allowed all the privileges of citizenship. White agents worked around the clock to ensure that this petition passed.

Then came the news that violence had broken out in San Domingo, Guadeloupe and Martinique as the Negroes were agitated to revolt. The fear of a race war caused radical legislation to be voted down on March 8, 1789.

The Mulatto community in Paris was in contact with the Mulatto community in San Domingo. In France, Mulatto propaganda was given front page coverage. On the island of San Domingo Mulattoes became so emboldened that they deserted their passive attitude. In

<sup>25</sup> (1) "These twelve Jesus sent forth, and commanded them, saying, Go not unto the way of the Gentiles, and unto any city of the Samaritans enter ye not: But go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel." Matt 10:5-6. (2) "I was sent to the lost sheep of the house of Israel, and to them alone." Matt. 15:24 (3) "As my Father hath sent me even so I send you." (the Father sent Him to the lost sheep of the house of Israel. Matt. 15:24) John 20:21 (4) "O children of Israel... You only have I known of all the families of the earth." Amos 3:2. (5) "It is not meet to take the children's bread, and to cast it to dogs." Matt 15:26. (6) "I pray not for the world, but for them which thou hast given me, for they are thine." John 17:9. (7) "He showed his word unto Jacob, his statutes and his judgments unto Israel. He hath not dealt so with any nation: and as for his judgments, they have not known them." Ps 147:19-20.



November 1789, they made public addresses demanding political rights.

A rising among the Mulattoes of the Artibonite was dispersed by the local militia. The rebels were given a general pardon.

While the Mulattoes were uniting, the Whites fought each other. San Domingo's poor Whites strove for political supremacy against the planters. This made four groups seeking power. The government royalists, the planters, the poor Whites who looked to France, and the Mulattoes.

France was in flux. Thousands refused to recognize the National Assembly as ruler instead of the king and were leaving the country. Passive resistance was everywhere and in places there was armed revolt, even massacres. It was into this cauldron of madness that the Assembly of San Domingo took ship and journeyed to plea for help.

### France Directly Involved

Ogé of the Paris Mulattoes left for England. With the aid of the English renegade Clarkson he reached San Domingo in early October. The Whites were in complete ignorance of his arrival while almost every non-White on the island knew about it.

With 300 followers, on October 28th near the Spanish border, he revolted. His party was quickly beaten by regulars and militia and fled into Spanish territory where they were captured and returned. Ogé was broken on the wheel. A score of others were hanged. Others were imprisoned. Large numbers of Mulattoes had taken arms in the west to join with Ogé. His quick collapse dissuaded them. Most ominous - this revolt was a direct result of incitement from France and England. The Ogé Revolt was instigated by renegades.

In France, news of Ogé's death was made into a media extravaganza. Ogé was hailed as a martyr to liberty, and such black pictures of colonials were painted that San Domingo planters could scarcely venture out on the streets.

The argument over San Domingo raged. The delegation sent from the island took their case before the National Assembly. Able island speakers mounted the podium to inform and attempt to persuade the Assembly that if they took the side of the Mulattoes against their own flesh and blood that the Blacks would also rise and bathe the island in blood. For a time it appeared that reason would prevail.

Undaunted, the anti-White agitation group "Amis des Noirs" continued to work. The king, now powerless and with his life in danger, awaited his chance to flee. Over a century earlier, the British king presented the same sort of problem to Cromwell. The king's land could not be disposed of as long as the king lived. The deadlock was broken when the king was frightened into fleeing for his life. He was caught and his attempted flight to another country was used as the excuse to execute him. The exact same thing happened to the French king. He was frightened into fleeing, was caught and executed. The establishment seldom changes methods that work. Any government that holds land or wealth is fair game.

The only voice now heard in France was that of the media monopoly. It could not be answered and no one knew how to quiet it. Its shrill hammering of the same radical viewpoint led people to believe that "everyone" held the same view. Every event that took place in the colonies was twisted to disinform and mislead. Every blow, every whipping, every execution was stripped out of context, placed under a magnifying glass, and made to appear as a further example of colonial inhumanity. The insult that led to the blow, the fighting, drunkenness and stealing that led to the whipping, the rape, murder, and poisoning that led to execution, were omitted, or when presented, were downplayed so as to appear insignificant. The population of France underwent a non-stop drumfire recitation of atrocity stories said to be the daily fare of the slaves.

The French public, based on what they were told, were clearly justified in their sympathy with the Blacks and Mulattoes. But what they had been told were lies. The press mounted the ladder of success by painting a picture of San Domingo that did not exist. The press was being paid to create revolution.



### Liberals Push Tokenism

Unable to directly ram their measures through the National Assembly, the liberals resorted to tokenism. It was skillfully done. Delegate Rewbell presented an amendment to the effect that if coloureds were born of a free father and mother they should be admitted to all future Colonial Assemblies. Since this applied to only 400 voters it was passed as a compromise measure. The cat was out of the bag since this measure recognized the right of strangers to rule over man.<sup>1</sup>

Once on the books, the new law could be interpreted any way one chose. This became the infamous National Decree of May 15, 1791. It was the opening wedge that was to destroy the Whites of San Domingo. Since 400 Mulattoes could vote and rule, there was now no reason that all could not vote and rule if circumstances presented. The precedent was set. All that was now needed was to free the Mulattoes so that they could vote and rule.

England carefully watched the scenario. She dispatched 45 sail to the West Indian waters.

Governor Blanchelande wrote:

"I pray to Heaven the ... remonstrances of commerce may bring about the withdrawal of this fatal decree ... I have every reason to fear that it will prove the death-warrant of many thousands of men, including those very persons who are the objects of its solicitude."<sup>2</sup>

The advice was wasted. The French revolutionaries intended to destroy San Domingo and her White population. No agreement or submission on their part could avert their design.

In the face of the approaching maelstrom, the colony held elections and the elected representatives began to present the world with a long-delayed united face. But, before they could meet, the Mulattoes of the west and the Negroes in the north were in general revolt. The affair had started.

### Insurrection

Before morning on August 23 a stream of White refugees began to trickle into Le Cap bringing horror stories of massacres and

<sup>1</sup> Deu 17:15, Jer 30:21

<sup>2</sup> Letter to Minister of Marine, July 3, 1791, Arch. Col., C-9, 165.

burnings. Behind them, the sky lighted to a false sunrise as plantation homes and cane fields were set ablaze.

The uprising on the night of August 22 was well planned and carefully executed. The scattered White plantation population could offer little resistance. The men were killed and the women were repeatedly raped before being murdered by gangs of Blacks. A scouting party of National Guards sent out a little way into the plain was overwhelmed by a horde of Blacks whose flag was the body of an impaled White child.<sup>3</sup> Two or three soldiers escaped. Within days the whole North Plain was a wasteland.

A strong column of regulars and National Guardsmen pushed into the Plain, but was compelled to immediately retire into town before the swarming Negro masses. For the next three weeks the towns became White oases in a Black sea as smoke belched skyward from the countryside. Night became difficult to tell from day. If it would burn, the Blacks set it afire.

Within the town of Le Cap resided 10,000 Whites including many sailors. Also there were 1,400 Mulattoes, and 10,000 Blacks. The Mulattoes and Blacks were ripe for revolt. The Whites had enemies in the countryside and enemies in their midst.

Just before the outbreak, the governor sensed something wrong. He interrogated a number of people including a number of Whites. Of the result of this interrogation he states that he "could not quite make out whether the suspected plot was among the Whites, Mulattoes, free Negroes, or slaves." He continued: "Le Cap contained within itself a number of dangerous elements, of all colors. I discovered ... numerous plots which prove that the town Negroes are in league with those in arms on the Plain."<sup>4</sup> The Whites were to learn that at all times both friendly and hostile Blacks were in contact with each other. This contact continued even while they were killing each other. This is an illogical facet of Negro make-up difficult for Whites to understand.

Though the plains were gone, the Whites on the rest of the island immediately flew to arms. They marshaled their remaining slaves, dug entrenchments, and built blockhouses on mountain crests to cordon off exits from the plain. This plan was so well devised that they remained until the final collapse in 1793. Within the protected

<sup>3</sup> Stoddard, p. 131

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. p. 133.



areas, White women and children were gathered into armed camps to be safe from raiding parties.

### Guerrilla War

The war that followed was a combination of never ending patrols, chance encounters, ambushes, sudden clashes, all culminating in massacres. This was repeated the next day, and the next, and the next month. It was a typical race war, a war of extermination. Within two months 2,000 Whites had been massacred, 180 sugar plantations and perhaps 900 other commercial settlements had been destroyed. Over 10,000 rebels had died. The devastated plains were in the hands of roving bands of Blacks. The contested hill country was dotted with blockhouses of Whites containing gallows for rebel Blacks, and palisaded camps of Blacks whose log walls were festooned with heads of their White foes.

Mulatto militia companies were formed and led by Whites. They did well against Blacks. When compelled to hunt and kill rebel Mulattoes, they in turn revolted, killed their White officers and, taking their arms, deserted to the insurgents. Companies of Black slaves acted in a similar fashion. They did well against Mulattoes, but less well against other Blacks.<sup>5</sup>

### Sickness

Sickness was the enemy of the White more than the Black. Of the native born Whites, only about three out of ten could take to the field at any one time. Deaths from sickness came far more frequently than battle deaths. As the disputed hill country gradually lost its defenders from sickness, it too was lost. It was a gradual thing. On November 16, with numbers insufficient to man the outposts, the lines were withdrawn to the coast. Only the priests remained behind. They got on well with the revolutionists and were looked on as colleagues by the witch doctors.

<sup>5</sup> In San Domingo, the Mulattoes and Blacks hated each other. It was a natural assumption that this hatred would continue. It came as a shock when they set aside their enmity to ally against their common White foe and wait until later to continue their own war of extermination.

### Observations

The Black faction was led by Jean-Francis and Biassu, the Mulatto bands by Candy. The Blacks never faced the Whites but always used guerrilla tactics. An eyewitness writes:

"A thousand Blacks will never await in line of battle the charge of a hundred Whites. They first advance with a frightful clamor, preceded by a great number of women and children singing and yelling in chorus. When they have arrived just out of gunshot from the Whites, the most profound silence suddenly falls, and the Negroes now dispose themselves in such a manner that they appear six times as numerous as they are in reality. ... the only sounds coming from the magicians ... These men are working their incantations ... and they often advance within musket-shot, ... desirous of proving ... the power of their magic charms. The attack now takes place."<sup>6</sup>

### Blame for the 1791 Uprising

No one wished to accept the blame<sup>7</sup> for the deaths of thousands of White men, women and children in San Domingo. The consensus was that it was the result of inflammatory revolutionary rhetoric on inflammable material. The "Amis des Noirs" received much blame, but no concrete proof was found. Revolutionary pamphlets were found in the hands of slaves. The organization furnishing the material went undetected. The very inflammatory letter of the Abbé Grégoire was a contributing factor. No punitive action was taken against any of these.

Conduct of new arrivals was a factor. Revolutionary soldiers from France landed in 1791 with heads full of media propaganda, "White against Black" atrocity stories, and proceeded to give the fraternal embrace (kissing on each cheek) to all the Negroes and Mulattoes with whom they came in contact. The Blacks were told that the National Assembly had declared them free and equal of the Whites. By the time these revolutionary soldiers were taught differently by those they kissed, most were dead.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. p. 138.

<sup>7</sup> Establishment investigators most often find that they and their colleagues have done no wrong.



The Spaniards on their half of the island contributed by winking at an extensive contraband traffic with the Negro rebels from which they profited. This was blamed on their long-time rivalry with France.

The colonists were also to blame. Instead of flying in the face of both church and state and holding up The Word as their sole defense, they resorted to endless discussions over the media-sponsored "rights of man." This was done within the hearing of house servants who immediately took the stories back to their own people to be endlessly debated as is their custom.

The Church was also to blame. Church land in France and Haiti had been seized by the French revolutionary government. To get this land back, the Church tended to make common cause with whomever promised to give them the land. Their best chance seemed to lay in the promises of the Blacks whom the Church believed could be manipulated to their own ends.

"The clergy whom the rebels held in superstitious reverence, did generally remain unmolested among the rebels, and it is certain that some of them actively aided the Negroes."<sup>8</sup>

When the full effect of the extent of the revolt reached Paris, the National Assembly reversed themselves and left everything to the discretion of the colony. This was the Decree of September 24. The effect was tremendous. The Mulattoes lost all faith in France, as the faith of the Whites had been shattered by the Decree of May 15. This loosed race vengeance on both sides which resulted in an explosion.

"The atrocities perpetrated upon the White women and children are past belief. 'The Mulattoes,' writes the Colonial Assembly to its Paris Commissioners, 'rip open pregnant women, and then before death force the husbands to eat of this horrible fruit. Other infants are thrown to the hogs.'"<sup>9</sup>

The *French Revolution in San Domingo* by Stoddard lists numerous letters recounting atrocities far more horrible than these.

Over the rest of San Domingo the Mulattoes rose en masse and killed or drove out the remnants of the Whites, while on a peninsular known as the "Grande Anse" the Whites killed or expelled the Mulattoes. In that particular place the Negroes hated the Mulattoes

<sup>8</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 140.

<sup>9</sup> *Ibid.*, Footnote p. 151

who had been their former overseers with a venomous hatred. The Whites used this hatred to their advantage and, with their armed Blacks, began the reconquest of the south.

The National Assembly sent a delegation empowered to act to bring peace to the island. Upon their arrival, they announced that soon a great French army would arrive. This produced a profound effect on the revolting Blacks in the interior who were by now on very short rations. The result was astonishing. Two Black leaders appeared under a flag of truce and promised to return their followers to slavery in return for their own freedom and the freedom of a number of sub-chiefs under their command.<sup>10</sup>

This sounded good to the Commissioners, but not to the islanders who saw beyond the present. How is one to resume being master to the very Blacks who murdered your wife and children and who remain unpunished?

The dialogue sparked a resumption of the war. This time the Mulattoes and Blacks combined, broke through the lines, and massacred a camp containing hundreds of White refugees.

The media made the Whites of San Domingo look like a stiff-necked generation in great part responsible for the woes which overwhelmed them. The Mulattoes were opposed to Black emancipation. If the Whites would accept the Mulattoes as equals, then united, they could subdue the Blacks. Such was the logic of the radicals in France. The result was the Full Equality Act which nullified all else. This decreed:

- 1- immediate elections
- 2- Mulattoes and free Negroes admitted to vote
- 3- civil Commissioners named to see the decree enforced

To show the attitude of the Paris radicals, Raymond, the leader of the Paris Mulattoes, was nominated and almost elected to head the Commissioners. As it turned out, he could have been no worse than the renegades that were sent instead.

The Whites of San Domingo regarded this as a sentence of death. It was clear now that one of the three Commissioners would eliminate the other two. A typical letter comments;

<sup>10</sup> This is an interesting by-play. In dealing with people who are naturally lawless all questions of right or wrong are tentative and can be negotiated. If one must, it is far better to negotiate with such people with a box of candy with another box forthcoming upon completion of a deal, than all the laws, rights, or contracts in the world.



"What! after having been slaughtered, burned, ruined by these monsters, we must now take them to our hearts like beloved brothers? We are, then, to be forced by bayonets to sign our death-warrant? This is the climax of horror, tyranny, and despair!"<sup>11</sup>

### Sonthonax - Renegade

The Commissioners arrived with 6,000 troops and issued The Emancipation Proclamation of 1793. Their avowed purpose was to see that the Blacks and Mulattoes were both voters and candidates. The surviving Whites were to be ruled by the whims of strangers.

They dissolved the Colonial Assembly and appointed an advisory committee composed of six Whites, five Mulattoes, and one Negro. The Royalists were discredited. Rochambeau and his revolutionary troops landed. The Commissioners began their "reconstruction."

One of the first acts was to discipline Sieur Théron because a letter he had written to Candy was impolite. Candy was the Mulatto who had earlier removed White prisoners' eyes with cork screws and committed countless atrocities against White women. He had made his peace with the Committee, after which he made some insulting remarks about Théron. Théron wrote him a letter. This letter stated that while under orders he may have to obey him, he would never look on Candy as an equal. Candy showed the letter to the Committee and the Committee undertook to punish Théron. Theron was convicted of the crime of "incivism," stripped of his office, and sent a prisoner back to France.

The French troops could not be used in operations against the Negroes in the field because they had to be held back to hold down a White population made desperate and rebellious by the acts of the Committee.

One committee member, Sonthonax, became sole dictator of the north. Every ship to France carried suspects accused by him. He lived a lavish life-style paid for by forced loans wrung from the remaining planters. All about him were Mulatto counselors, intimates, mistresses. The officers of the old regiment Le Cap were replaced with Mulattoes - the regiment refused to receive them. The next day the regiment was ordered to parade without cartridges for their muskets. Facing them were Mulatto battalions. It was a ruse to

<sup>11</sup> Ibid. p. 175.

massacre the White soldiers. A *mêlée* ensued in which the Mulattoes retreated to the fortifications and threatened to let the rebels in. They returned in triumph as the White regiment Le Cap and others agreed to be sent prisoner to France. Sonthonax himself led the Mulatto battalions back in triumph.

The following is contained in one of his letters.

"I shall continue to punish with the same severity whosoever shall trouble the public peace, whosoever shall dare deny the national will, - especially the holy law of equality!"<sup>12</sup>

It was now clear - all French efforts were directed toward the destruction of the Whites of San Domingo.<sup>13</sup>

Hyacinthe, the Black leader with the maroons, carried an assault to the very limits of Port-au-Prince. The inhabitants, in terror, began to mistreat the Mulattoes who were part of the garrison. This put the city in defiance of the renegade Sonthonax.

Sonthonax published a manifesto against the Whites of the city which reads in part:

"Crush and annihilate that insolent faction which centers at Port-au-Prince. Swear never to return till the last of them are exterminated. No more peace, friends, no more pardon; crush this foul vermin ... purify with death this land still reeking with crimes."<sup>14</sup>

Gathering a Mulatto army which contained almost no Whites, he blockaded the city from the land while the French fleet under his command blockaded it from the sea. Overwhelmed, the city surrendered and was subjected to plunder and murder at will by the Mulattoes. Several hundred Whites cut their way out and escaped to the south.

The north and west were now crushed. This left the south. The Grande Anse was more formidable. One Mulatto army sent to reduce them and led by the Mulatto Rigaud was cut to pieces.

March 1793 brought the news of the execution of Louis XVI. This event brought England and Spain into the war with France

<sup>12</sup> Sonthonax to the Minister of Marine, December 8, Arch. Col., C-9, 166.

<sup>13</sup> These are alien deeds; those of an infection that wishes to destroy the body. They compare with the acts of Cromwell, Berkeley, and a number of the revolutionary leaders of France. One cannot escape the suspicion that Sonthonax was himself an alien. The rule remains; "If the alien loses control of the body's defenses, the body will instantly destroy him." "By their acts ye shall know them."

<sup>14</sup> Stoddard, p. 212



since the great land holdings of Louis were now up for grabs. There was also the vast confiscated Church lands to be considered. The Commissioners sent a seasoned soldier to Le Cap to take charge of the defenses.

The soldier's name was Galbaud. To his surprise, he was received by the White population as a deliverer. He found the town looted with nothing left in the way of supplies or money.

Making the best of what he had, he restored order. Soon good reports made their way to the Directory who immediately sensed a rival. Rapidly returning to Le Cap at the head of their Mulatto battalions, the Commissioners examined Galbaud's papers and pronounced them out of order. He was ordered on ship to be sent to France.

The Mulattoes were allowed to engage in a campaign of insult and mistreatment of the civilians in Le Cap and their acts were protected by the Commissioners. In the city were some 3,000 sailors of the French Fleet anchored in harbor. The sailors took exception to the treatment they were receiving and a fight started. The citizens implored Galbaud to return and restore order. He armed 2,000 sailors and along with two White regiments who had deserted the Committee went ashore to protect the White population. The battle with the Mulattoes went from house to house as the Mulattoes were forced out of town. Then, the cry was heard, "The Brigands are in the town!"

It was true. The Commissioners, knowing that their Mulattoes were being beaten had offered plunder and liberty to the Blacks of the Plain. Masses of savages were pouring into the town. By night only the harbor forts and waterfront remained in White hands. The next morning 15,000 more Blacks poured in. Those Whites not huddled on the waterfront underwent the horrors that falling into the hands of Blacks entails.

The Committee was true to its promise. They allowed no one to stop the rape of Le Cap. For four days smoke billowed skyward. A Committee patrol entering the city reported only corpses and chaos.

The matter was hopeless. The refugees, sailors, and soldiers embarked and the fleet with its 10,000 wretched refugees set sail for the Chesapeake Bay where it anchored. There they found succor.

Their stories of renegades,<sup>15</sup> betrayal, slave risings, tortures and unmitigated horror found an undying home in the breasts of Virginians. Aid poured in from all quarters - even from as far north as Massachusetts.

Galbaud, the leader, entered the priesthood and is numbered among the élite.

### The End Of White San Domingo

*"Phineas ... hath turned my wrath away from the children of Israel, ... that I consumed not the children of Israel ... Behold I give unto him my covenant of peace: ... and his seed after him, even the covenant of an everlasting priesthood: because he was zealous for his God, and made an atonement for the children of Israel." Num. 25:6-13*

The words of Sonthonax were no longer believed by the Whites. They knew him for what he was.<sup>16</sup> He had been sent to destroy them. The whole Cordon de l'Est deserted to the Spanish just over the border. The fleet had already gone to America. A thousand regulars and National Guardsmen saw what was in store for them also and they too deserted. A number of Whites even threw themselves on the mercy of the terrible Mulatto Candy rather than the renegade Sonthonax.

Candy himself began to have suspicions. Sonthonax issued another proclamation which freed all Blacks and offered to enlist them in his army. This violated his agreement with Candy.<sup>17</sup> Sonthonax's battalions of Mulattoes were now sprinkled with Blacks and grew more and more Black each day.

15 A renegade, once he violates the Law, is capable of anything. His acts progress from the casual to the full blown Sonthonax. The question of degree to the threatened becomes the yardstick of how his acts can safely be allowed to progress.

16 The death penalty, strictly enforced, makes matters so uncomfortable for the unlawful that those who are the secret lawless or have inherited lawless genes will move rather than chance its punishment. The enforcement of The Law continuously cleanses the people. Strictly enforced, a few generations will remove the worst offenders. Many generations will be required for a complete cleansing. This is why capital punishment is so opposed by the stranger. It falls mostly on him.

17 It was not in the interests of the French bankers to replace the Whites with a wealthy Mulatto caste, which would keep the Blacks enslaved to work the plantations, and once again start the flow of money back to France.



### The English Come Ashore

On September 3, 1793, the Confederates of the Grande Anse transferred their allegiance to the British Crown. An English squadron anchored at Jérémie, the stronghold of the Grande Anse, and 900 British soldiers landed.

The great fortress of the Môle manned by 1,000 soldiers and protected by 200 cannon, submitted to 100 English soldiers. The Mulattoes, deprived of their slaves by the last proclamation of Sonthonax, also deserted and swore allegiance to the English.

Back in France the media had done its job well. A colonist who returned as a refugee was insulted by a customs officer before he even got off the ship. The officer stated that the Colonials had gotten just what they deserved. At every stop someone would comment that "now the Blacks can enjoy freedom." A story of their trials only elicited the comment "you people got just what you deserved." This was the legacy of the media.

When the renegade Sonthonax returned, he was welcomed by his own. The media made him a national hero. He was the darling of the revolution!

### Toussaint L'Ouverture

Resistance to England in San Domingo collapsed everywhere except in the north. There, a Black champion for revolutionary France arose - Toussaint L'Ouverture.

Toussaint L'Ouverture was 50 years old when the revolt started. He did not participate at first but watched. Later he joined one of the largest of the Black groups and quickly became a trusted advisor. With the rest, he deserted to the Spanish and formed his own group. He prevailed on French refugee officers<sup>18</sup> to become renegades and officer his force of about 4000 and train them in the European fashion. The Spanish considered him one of their mainstays - incorruptible. Both should have known that the Western knowledge and skills taught the Blacks in violation of The Word would in time be used against them.

He opened negotiations with the revolutionary French while in Spanish San Domingo. The fortunes of the French were at their lowest point. He was given the position of chief of all the Blacks in

18 (1) Judges 2:2. (2) I Ki 4:21-24. (3) Pr 6:1 (4) Amos 3:3

French San Domingo if he would support the revolutionary Commissioners. Murdering the Spanish soldiers in his reach, he crossed the border and deserted to France.

Throughout the year 1795, Toussaint waged a guerrilla war against the English. The British were not acclimated and Howe's force of 7,000 gradually wasted away. With the British out of the way, the year 1796 saw the conflict again reverting to the old conflict between the Mulattoes and the Blacks.

The Commissioners wrote to the revolutionary government in France explaining the continuous treachery and changing of allegiance of the Blacks and Mulattoes:

"To speak of laws to the negroes is to burden them with things too metaphysical for their understanding. To these people, the man is everything: at his voice they are quite carried away, and his name is to them what the fatherland is to genuine freeman."<sup>19</sup>

Gen. Heédeouvill was sent from France to set everything straight. After winning the agreement of most of the Blacks to support France, he found everything undone overnight by Toussaint who spread the rumor that the Whites had come to restore slavery. His protests were ignored by the Blacks who looked on the words of their chiefs as oracles.

Toussaint L'Ouverture never ceased to fill the Black workers with suspicion against all White men. In this way, they stood no chance of ever destroying his despotism.

Given a virtual free rein, during the years 1799-1800 Toussaint exterminated the Mulattoes. It was one of those sharp wars with no quarter given. It was characteristic of him at the close of his massacres to give a sermon to the surviving Mulattoes of Le Cap on the Christian duty of pardoning one's enemies.

On August 1, 1800, a solemn *Te Deum* was given for his victory. Toussaint again mounted the pulpit and announced a general pardon. This was a ruse so that his enemies in hiding would reveal themselves.

In 1801, a number of White officers were added to his staff. These were noted by their constant flattery and lauding of his military talents. Their pay increased more in relation to their efforts at flattery than their military skill. Having White servants added great

19 Ibid. 260



prestige to Toussaint L'Ouverture's court. The White women that he kept imprisoned for his pleasure did the same.

His district commandants were little copies of himself. Civil administration was anarchy. Requisition was made of anything they liked whenever they chose. The courts of law were a farce, and justice was bought and sold as a commodity. By 1798, Whites were reduced by two-thirds, Mulattoes by half, and negroes by a full one-third.

In 1800, Toussaint L'Ouverture expected trouble from France's new ruler, Napoleon, and bought vast amounts of arms from England and America, paying for them with the proceeds of plantations worked by Blacks who were virtual slaves. From the port of New York alone came 25,000 muskets and 16 pieces of artillery.<sup>20</sup>

He showed great favor to Whites if they would return to work the plantations. His nephew Moyse ruled in the north, and the evil Dessalines in the west.

His nephew Moyse revolted in the plain region and massacred several hundred Whites. Moyse's revolt was immediately put down, and he was shot as a result.

### Napoleon's Effort

On Oct. 1, 1801, Napoleon was free to deal with San Domingo. Twenty thousand veteran troops were readied. General Leclerc, Napoleon's brother-in-law, was in charge.

His instructions divided the invasion into three periods. In the first 15-20 days, the troops were to be landed and coastal towns secured. The second period was to be spent in smashing organized resistance. Hunting down scattered negro bands in the woods and mountains would occupy the third period.

Napoleon's notes state:

"Your conduct will vary with the three periods above-mentioned.

"In the first period you will disarm only the rebel Blacks. In the third you will disarm all.

<sup>20</sup> Long ravished by Red strangers on her frontier, New York sent arms to Black strangers to fight the same French who had made possible American independence a few years earlier. Such a thing is scarcely credible. It points to New York's political power by the year 1800 being completely in the hands of strangers, or that her inhabitants were completely devoid of morals, a conclusion hard to believe.

"In the first period you will not be exacting: you will treat with Toussaint, you will promise him everything he asks, in order that you may get possession of the principal points and establish yourself in the country.<sup>21</sup>

"As soon as you have done this, you will become more exacting. You will order him to reply categorically to your proclamation and to my letter. You will charge him to come to Le Cap.

"In your interviews with Moyse, Dessalines, and Toussaint's other generals, you will treat them well.

"Gain over Christophe, Clervaux, Maurepas, and all the other Black leaders favorable to the Whites. In the first period, confirm them in their rank and office. In the last period, send them all to France, with their rank if they have behaved well.

"All Toussaint's principal agents, White or colored, should in the first period be indiscriminately loaded with attentions and confirmed in their posts: in the last period, all sent to France - with their rank if they have behaved well during the second; prisoners if they have acted ill.

"All Blacks in office should during the first period be flattered, well treated, but undermined in authority and power. Toussaint, Moyse, and Dessalines should be well treated during the first period; sent to France at the last, in arrest or with their rank according to their conduct.

"Raymond has lost the Government's confidence; at the beginning of the second period you will seize him and send him to France as a criminal. If the first period lasts 15 days, all is well; if longer, you will have been fooled.

"Toussaint shall not be held to have submitted until he shall have come to Le Cap or Port-au-Prince in the midst of the French army, to swear fidelity to the Republic. On that very day, without scandal or injury, but with honor and consideration, he must be put on board a frigate and sent to France. At the same time, if possible, arrest Moyse and Dessalines: if impossible, hunt them down; and then send to France all the

<sup>21</sup> Napoleon instinctively dealt with the stranger with the stranger's law. It is the only law strangers respect.



White partisans of Toussaint, all the Blacks in office suspected of disaffection. Declare Moyse and Dessalines traitors and enemies of the French people. Start the troops and give them no rest till you have their heads and have scattered and disarmed their partisans.

"If after the fifteen or twenty days it has been impossible to get Toussaint, proclaim that within a specified time he shall be declared a traitor, and after that period begin a war to the death.

"A few thousand negroes wandering in the mountains should not prevent the Captain-General from regarding the second period as ended and from promptly beginning the third. Then has come the moment to assure the colony to France forever. And, on that same day, at every point of the colony, you will arrest all suspects in office whatever their color, and at the same moment embark all the Black generals no matter what their conduct, patriotism, or past services; - giving them, however, their rank, and assuring them of good treatment in France.

"All the Whites who have served under Toussaint, and covered themselves with crimes in the tragic scenes of San Domingo, shall be sent directly to Guinea.<sup>22</sup>

"All the Blacks who have behaved well, but whose rank forbids them to remain longer in the island, shall be sent to Brest.

"All the Blacks or Mulattoes who have acted badly, whatever their rank, shall be sent to the Mediterranean and landed at Corsica.

"If Toussaint, Dessalines, or Moyse is taken in arms, they shall be passed before a court-martial and shot as rebels within twenty-four hours.

"No matter what happens, we think that during the third period you should disarm all the negroes, whatever their party, and set them to work.

<sup>22</sup> Europeans sent to Guinea were almost certain to die quickly from the climate.

"All those who have signed the Constitution should in the third period be sent to France; some as prisoners, others at liberty as having been constrained.

"White women who have prostituted themselves to negroes, whatever their rank, shall be sent to Europe.

"You will take the regimental flags from the National Guard, give out new ones, and reorganize it. You will reorganize the gendarmerie. Suffer no Black above the rank of captain to remain in the island ...

"The Captain-General shall allow no temporizing with the principles of these instructions; and any person talking about the rights of those Blacks who have shed so much White blood shall under some pretext or other be sent to France, whatever his rank or services."<sup>23</sup>

With these instructions Leclerc sailed on Dec. 14, 1801 for San Domingo.

### Yellow Fever

In 1794, yellow fever decimated the English invaders. In 1802, it did the same to the French. By the first week in June 3,000 men were dead. Every night long rows of corpses were laid out for the death-carts to be taken to the lime pits outside of town. The fleet was also hard hit. Leclerc reported that he was losing 160 men a day.

Toussaint watched with glee as the fevers ravaged the French, and began to foment rebellion. A ruse brought him within the French lines and he was arrested and sent to France. Leclerc cautioned his superiors in France not to allow him to escape and return to San Domingo where he had the power of a religious leader.

No general outbreak followed Toussaint's deportation. The few partial risings were at once stamped out. Toussaint was sent to a fortress near the Swiss border where a fever carried him off on April 7, 1803.

<sup>23</sup> This is the real Napoleon speaking from this letter. Naive in most political matters at first, he quickly uncovered the forces at work and adapted his policies accordingly. He was hated by the establishment because he could not be controlled, and this is why they sent the nations they ruled to destroy him. Another banner other than "Vive le Emperor" may have overcome the world that was sent to destroy him.



Leclerc resolved on a general disarming of the negroes. This was to be done by the Black generals and their troops and done by provinces.

### The Colonial System Revived

The one thing that would cause a massive Black revolt would be the reintroduction of slavery. This is what happened. The backers of the old colonial system<sup>24</sup> convinced Napoleon to re-institute the system and he did. In early June the slave trade was formally restored for all the French colonies. A few weeks later further legislation deprived the Mulattoes of their equal rights, restored the color line, and prohibited mixed marriages. In July, Leclerc received authorization to restore slavery as he saw fit.

In Guadeloupe the same instructions had been given 4,000 French troops. They had conquered the much smaller island in a few weeks and 3,000 Blacks were deported. The loss of the natural leaders broke the spirit of rebellion and slavery was reintroduced.

The Guadeloupe news caused a revolt in San Domingo. Leclerc wrote, "At the very moment of success, those political circumstances above mentioned have almost destroyed my work."

Four fifths of his army was dead. To give an idea of losses, the 7th Regiment landed, 1395 strong. It had 83 half-sick men with the colors and 107 in the hospital. The rest were dead. The 11th landed, 1900 strong. There were 163 fit for duty, 200 were in hospital. The 71st, 1000 strong on landing, had 17 men with the colors and 133 in hospital. It was the same with the rest of the army.

### Extermination Of The Whites

The situation appeared impossible for Leclerc. The Mulatto General Clervaux deserted, allied himself with 10,000 Blacks, and attempted to storm Le Cap by surprise. The White National Guard numbering 1,000 with 200 cavalry plus a few hundred French troops defended themselves with desperate courage and broke the attack, inflicting heavy casualties. The next day the other Mulatto generals joined Clervaux. The monster Dessalines also joined in the revolt against White rule.

<sup>24</sup> This sounds suspiciously like an undiscovered alien left in a key defense position. It must be remembered that after Napoleon's defeat and banishment he was poisoned by one he considered his friend and confidant.

On top of all this, Leclerc succumbed to yellow fever. His death seemed to be the death knell of French hopes. By November, however, the season of sickness had changed. Many of those sick started to rejoin the colors. This time, they were acclimated and were immune to yellow fever and not likely to fall sick again. Deaths were now concentrated among the young reinforcements.

The chief trouble was in the south where the Mulattoes had been reinforced by the return of the Paris Mulattoes exiled from France along with Rigaud. In January 1803, they joined forces with the Blacks.

By March, Rochambeau had over 11,000 French troops with the colors and only 4,000 in the hospitals. The attitude of all the belligerents had hardened after twelve years of temporizing and compromise. The lesson finally filtered through that there was no way that two races can inhabit the same land without friction. The war was now a ferocious race war of extermination.

The French looked on their Black and Mulatto allies as temporary allies of convenience to be done away with when opportunity presented. The negroes of the gendarmerie deserted bag and baggage. The same was true of other Black troops. Those that remained were naturally distrusted. Even though they were horribly mistreated by their own Black chiefs, they still preferred them to being ruled by Whites. No kindness, consideration, or compromise could change this attitude for more than a few months or a few years. When the final choice was made, it was always against the Whites.

Rochambeau, the commander of the French, fully shared these sentiments. He used the army to clear the plains. Man-hunting dogs were imported to hunt down the rebels in the mountains. Napoleon readied 15,000 additional troops for the Island. The suppression of the Blacks and Mulattoes was in sight - then disaster fell.

War with England! The English fleet swept the French from the seas and White San Domingo was done. The English poured aid into the island to supply the Blacks. Neither food, arms or money reached the French. The plains were lost once more. Scattered coastal garrisons were crushed by Dessalines overwhelming forces. On November 10, 1803, Rochambeau surrendered to an English fleet.

When the French troops left in November 1803 Dessalines promised protection to all Whites remaining. Many returned on the promise of good treatment and the word went out that Dessalines was as good as his word. This caused others to return. This state of



affairs continued until April 5, 1805 when Dessalines coldbloodedly issued orders to massacre the White population. Dessalines understood that the island would never be safe for Blacks as long as there were Whites who could enforce White law. To remove this Law he must remove Whites, and this he did.

From that day, the cardinal policy of San Domingo, now called Haiti, is the exclusion of Whites.

A French officer on the way to English prison witnessed the end. He wrote:

"The murder of the Whites in detail, began at Port-au-Prince in the first days of January, but on the 17th and 18th March they were finished off *en masse*. All, without exception, have been massacred, down to the very women and children. Madame de Boynes was killed in a peculiarly horrible manner. A young Mulatto named Fifi Pariset ranged the town like a madman searching the houses to kill the little children. Many of the men and women were hewn down by sappers, who hacked off their arms and smashed in their chests. Some were poniarded, others mutilated, others 'passed on the bayonet,' others disemboweled with knives or sabers, still others stuck like pigs. At the beginning, a great number were drowned. The same general massacre has taken place all over the colony, and as I write you these lines I believe that there are not twenty Whites still alive - and these not for long."<sup>25</sup>

### Business Successfully Completed

San Domingo had been separated from France and destroyed. Its destruction was assured by an alliance of French, English, and Black forces.

The campaign was choreographed by the media. Carefully chosen radical French leaders were made prominent by media exposure and rose to power. San Domingo was no problem until the media made it a problem, and media-selected politicians provided a solution. The San Domingo revolt was a media event.

The San Domingan production of sugar and coffee stopped. This stopped the income needed by the French king, nobles, and Church to pay their debts. The debts went into default. The French Revolution foreclosed these properties and banished the owners. The

reactionary Napoleon was defeated in turn and the lands seized away from him. The great prize of two-thirds of France was now firmly in the hands of the international bankers and was protected by the allied armies of the world.

The French Revolution was a successful business operation. The key was San Domingo. The regicide, guillotine, the empire, the battles, the mountains of bodies, the massacres - were incidental. They were only the footsteps of strangers to The Law, who, concealed behind media, money, politicians, and armies, passed unrecognized and did not suffer a sleepless night.

The Law of God is absolute.<sup>26</sup>

25 Letter from Kingston, June 1, 1805, Arch. Nat., AF-iv, 1213, from Stoddard, p. 350.

26 "And neither sojourner nor alien shall sojourn with them any more." Psalms of Solomon, 17



### Twenty Slaves To Virginia

Twenty black slaves were off-loaded from a Dutch ship at Jamestown in 1619. The Establishment called it the Red Letter Year. The possibilities of this new market for "black gold" were enormous.

To thinking colonists, bringing in black strangers through the back door while fighting red strangers at the frontier's front door defied logic. The colonists were quick to realize their danger.<sup>1</sup>

Their representatives in the colonial legislature passed numerous acts designed to close the door and stop further importations. Of these efforts historians write:

"Again and again they passed laws restraining the importation of negroes from Africa, but their laws were disallowed. How to prevent them from protecting themselves against the increase of the overwhelming evil was debated by the King in council; and on the 10th of December 1770, he issued an instruction under his own hand commanding the Governor 'upon pain of the highest displeasure, to assent to no law by which the importation of slaves should be in any respect prohibited or obstructed.'"<sup>2</sup>

Appeals were made directly to the throne. But, those who had lent to the king were more influential than the petitions of his imperiled people. For each slave sold into Virginia the King received part, and consequently his creditors received part. "*The borrower is slave.*" What good was a ruler who was servant to another and that other was a stranger who detested The Law.

Thomas Jefferson wrote:

"George the Third has waged cruel war against humanity itself, violating its most sacred rights of life and liberty, in the persons of a distant people who never offended him; captivating and carrying them into slavery in another hemisphere, or to incur a miserable death in their transportation thither. This piratical warfare, the opprobrium of infidel powers, is the warfare of the Christian King of Great Britain. Determined to

1 (1) "And the seed of Israel separated themselves from all strangers (Heb: *nēkar* - strange, alien). Neh. 9:2. (2) "Now it came to pass, when they had heard the law, that they separated from Israel all the mixed (mongrel) multitude. Neh. 13:3 (3) "So shall we be separated, I and all of Thy people, from all the people that are upon the face of the earth." Ex 33:16. (4) "I am the Lord your God, which have separated you from other people." Lev. 20:24.

2 History of United States, Bancroft, Vol. III, p. 410.

keep open a market where men should be bought and sold, he has prostituted his negative (veto) for suppressing every legislative attempt to prohibit, or restrain, this execrable commerce. ... he is now exciting these very people to rise in arms among us, and to purchase that liberty of which he has deprived them, by murdering the people on whom he obtruded them; thus paying off former crimes committed against the liberties of one people with crimes which he urges them to commit against the lives of another."<sup>3</sup>

Mass meetings were held to register protests. In August 1774, the Virginia Colonial Convention revolted and resolved:

"We will neither ourselves import, nor purchase any slave or slaves imported by any other person, after the first day of November, next, either from Africa, the West Indies or any other place."<sup>4</sup>

Virginia's Bill of Rights stated that among reasons the colony cast off her allegiance to the British king was his "perverting his kingly powers ... into a detestable and insupportable tyranny by putting his negative (veto) on laws most wholesome" and for "prompting our negroes to rise in arms among us"<sup>5</sup> - those very negroes whom, by an inhuman use of his negative, he hath refused us permission to exclude by law."<sup>6</sup>

In 1649, there were 300 black slaves. In 1670 - 2,000. By 1714 there were 23,000 and in 1756 - 120,000. The other 172,000 were scattered from New England to Georgia. By 1830, they numbered in the millions all over the country.

### Birth of the Abolition Movement

The spirit of the abolition movement started from almost the very first introduction of Blacks. The abolition was directed against the Blacks and not against slavery per se since little can be found

3 History of United States, Bancroft, Vol. IV, p. 445.

4 Suppression of the Slave Trade, Dubois, p. 43.

5 Those who ruled the king in the 18th century rule the king in the 20th. The Law of God is absolute.

6 Hening's Statutes, Vol. IX, pp. 112-113



condemning the "indentured" slavery system that Whites practiced on other Whites.

The abolition of Blacks in this land along with Black slavery found its first practical advocate in the colonization plans of Thomas Jefferson<sup>7</sup> in 1777 in his plan submitted to the Virginia General Assembly.

By 1816, the Virginia Governor was requested to acquire land in Africa. In December 1816 the nucleus of the *American Colonization Society* was formed. Henry Clay presided. Present were Daniel Webster, Bushrod Washington and John Randolph of Roanoke. The Rev. Robert Finley of New Jersey and E. B. Caldwell, Clerk of the Supreme Court at Washington, were the most active. Charles Mercer of Virginia and Francis Scott Key of Maryland were among the many other dignitaries.

In January 1817, the permanent organization was effected and Justice Bushrod Washington of Virginia was elected President. Immediately funds were solicited to purchase Blacks to repatriate to Africa.

The great work had begun, chapters were formed literally everywhere in Virginia and also in Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland and Kentucky.<sup>8</sup> Chief Justice John Marshall of the Supreme Court was president of the Richmond branch. John Marshall, James Madison, James Monroe, John Tyler were either presidents or vice-presidents of the Virginia organization. In 1826 Virginia made the first large appropriation to assist the work. The work of the organization was endorsed by America's churches and assumed the character of a Christian enterprise. Samuel J. Mills of Williams College, Massachusetts, was a martyr in the cause, dying from sickness contracted in helping to set up the African colony of Liberia.

Thousands of slaves were being emancipated and repatriated. The work went forward. But while it went forward, it went forward atop a volcano.

<sup>7</sup> Jefferson owned over 200 slaves. He could not legally free them because they were part of the collateral for debts he had inherited from his father-in-law. It was his intention, as circumstances permitted, to repatriate them to Africa.

<sup>8</sup> *Virginia's Attitude toward Slavery & Secession*, Beverley B. Munford, Richmond, Virginia, 1909, p. 64.

### Insurrections in North America

**Philadelphia** - In 1741, Blacks burned a church along with a number of other buildings and robbed a private dwelling. An investigation uncovered a conspiracy to burn the town, massacre the Whites, and establish a country of their own. Thirty were hanged for participation in the plot and others sold elsewhere.<sup>9</sup>

**Haiti** - The insurrection in Haiti was such a momentous thing that the entire preceding chapter was dedicated to it. It determined the basic White attitude toward Blacks in Virginia and other states where the refugees from San Domingo landed. Their pitiful stories were such that could not be easily forgotten. It was felt that if such a thing could happen there it could happen here. That event shocked the Whites as nothing else had ever done. The outlook of America was colored by that bloody event.

**Gabriel's Revolt** - In 1800, an insurrection took place in Virginia led by a slave named Gabriel. As in the cases of the Indian attacks, there was no advance warning, no suspicion that such an event was in the offing.

Gabriel set out toward Richmond with a large group of Blacks armed with scythes and other farm implements. Some had firearms stolen from their masters. A violent storm caused creeks to rise which stopped the advance. A chance rider stumbled onto the army, and escaped with his life. He and his horse swam the swollen streams and rode to Richmond with the alarm. Local militias quickly formed and went to the scene. The Blacks scattered into the woods and were gradually rounded up. The ringleaders were executed and the rest returned to their plantations.

An investigation became serious when it was discovered that the plot was widespread. Those actually with Gabriel were only a small part. Other groups were scheduled to join forces later after Richmond had been taken.

This Gabriel, a slave belonging to a farmer near Richmond, was big and powerful, with a face much scarred by fighting. His plan was simple. It was to go to Richmond and arm his followers with arms taken from the arsenal on the Capitol Green. With these arms, he

<sup>9</sup> *School History Of The US*, George F. Holmes, LL.D., University Publishing Co., NY, 1870, p. 68.



planned to kill all Whites and make himself king. That was it. A frenzied desire to kill Whites. There was no other aim or objective. Gabriel and his followers were baptized Black Christians.<sup>10</sup> Their god called Christ was not our God called Christ.

Gabriel had used the privileges extended by his master to travel extensively over the state. He had been given a key to the arsenal of the State of Virginia by trusted Blacks and had been conducted through the arsenal many times to inspect the arms and powder. The old arsenal is now used as a bell tower. As a boy I toured this old building and was told the story. At that time I marveled at the inability of Virginians to learn from their own history.

Nat Turner's Revolt - Nat Turner was different from Gabriel.

Turner was weak and feeble while Gabriel was large and strong. Turner was cunning, however. He, too, conceived the plan to exterminate Whites. His motives remain unknown. At his trial, he stated that he had always been treated kindly.

Lacking physical prowess, he became a witch doctor, a thing forbidden on the plantations, but which existed without White knowledge. He had a sheet of paper on which a sun and a crucifix had been drawn in blood. There was much more to it than this, but only Blacks know. When this paper was shown to other Blacks accompanied by certain words it produced a hypnotic obedience and thrill of excitement.

Nat Turner also is said to have traveled throughout the whole of Southside Virginia with his bloody signs and magic words. He was welcomed everywhere.

On August 21, 1831, he and his followers took axes and killed his master, his wife and children as they slept. They plundered the farm and then went on to another farm where the servants there helped his group kill a lady and her ten children. Their itinerary and timing

10 (1) "Go not unto the way of the Gentiles." Matt 10:5. (2) "I was sent to the lost sheep of the house of Israel, and to them alone." Matt 15:24 N.E.B. (3) "It is not meet to take the children's bread, and to cast it to dogs." Matt 15:24-26. (4) "Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you." Matt 7:6. (5) "When the tabernacle is to be pitched ... the stranger (Heb: zôwr: racial alien) that cometh nigh shall be put to death." Num 1:51. Bible verses commanding that the Word be taken into all the world and to every creature is the charge limited and bounded by the above commands. Much of the multi-billion foreign missions effort, zealously promoted by participating priests, is considered by many to be in the same league with the multi-billion dollar Savings and Loan bailout boondoggle, and the 60 year old multi-billion dollar cancer research that would end the day a cure is found.

were exact - they knew just where to go and when to arrive. Next, on to a school attended by a large number of White children. These were quickly dispatched, mostly by swinging their heads against the building to bash their brains out. Then another lady and her children were shot down<sup>11</sup> as they tried to escape.

The alarm went out and local militias tracked down the insurgents, killed some, and captured 21. Fifty-five Whites had been killed, mostly women and children. Of the 21 insurgents captured, only thirteen were hanged including Nat Turner. He went to his death never explaining the reason for his actions.<sup>12</sup>

The rest of the insurrectionists were pardoned to save the planters' additional losses.

### Never-Ending Danger

The separation of Blacks into relatively small units on plantations, each closely supervised by Whites, was not enough to prevent insurrections.

The existence of large numbers of house servants regarded almost as family members by the Whites did not serve to warn the Whites.

Neither was the imposition of "Christianity" on strangers enough to cause them to protect the Whites by warning them.

### My Own Experiences With Blacks

In basic training in the armed services, the author in disbelief watched Blacks disrobe. Almost all had one or more scars. These scars were prominent against their Black skin. Some of them had half a dozen or even a dozen scars. Some even more.

In Black society such scars are displayed as badges of honor, much as dueling scars among Whites of yesteryear. These scars meant nothing to onlooking Whites. They weren't supposed to since Whites occupy a separate position, and if mentioned at all, it was only in casual conversation.

To other Blacks present there was nothing casual about the situation. The showing of scars was to them a red flag. The battle scars were both a badge that the individual Black was tough and was

11 Nat Turner was found hiding in a woodpile. This gave birth to the well-known saying.

12 The establishment media presents Nat Turner as a hero.



also a challenge that he was tougher than any Black there. The scars were proof. They gave status.

A "shirt off" was not a casual act. The ritual was interesting. That individual had thrown out a challenge that the other Blacks had to deal with sooner or later, like it or not.

Certain foolish Whites involved themselves. They were overly friendly, noticed the scars, and asked how they were gotten with "oohs" and "aahs." This is the sort of behavior the Blacks expect from those who recognize the superior status of the one displaying his "badges of honor."

They would be told. Unknowingly they had been placed on the ladder, a notch below the displaying Black. In time they would be asked for money or told to perform a task as a test. The White would then do what he was told or he would have to fight. A rung in the Black "pecking order" had to be won, otherwise it is at the very bottom. Every Black knows his place. He ought to, he's had to fight for it in some way.

If the scarred Black was not challenged by the others, he assumed authority over them. Those not liking it must accept his authority or fight. This resulted in the barracks "knockdown drag-outs" so prevalent among Blacks. They ended with cuts and blood, bluster, threats, and time served in the stockade - a thing that added additional luster to the laurels of the punished one. It can't be over-estimated how much prestige a "bad" Black has among his associates. Some of the small wiry types never smile, they carry a gun, and go about confiding to anyone who will listen that they are going to kill someone. They will, too. Thanks to Uncle Sam I have received a thoroughly liberal education.

What to naive Whites seems a tragedy of misunderstanding resulting from an unfortunate environment is in fact the accumulation of "dueling scars" by the participating parties. Stitches and cuts are welcome additions to the "picture gallery" even when the individual involved lost the battle. Once status was determined, the contesting parties often became friends.

### **The White Feather Scar**

One kind of scar is not welcomed. That is a scar on the side of the nose. Blacks get this scar one way. Another Black intimidates him and makes an example of him by putting a knife in his nostril

and slitting the nostril sideways. The marked Black stands tamely and allows this to happen. The alternative may be death.

This brands that Black from that time on as being at the bottom of the pecking order. He has no status among Blacks. He may go to the extreme to redeem himself by fighting all comers, but that is a sure way to get killed. Usually he quietly accepts his position. Having nothing more to lose among his own people he may become an "uncle Tom" type and patiently endure the jibes of his own kind.

The Black whose reputation is not only "tough" but who has killed other Blacks is difficult to humiliate or intimidate. He is difficult for everyone, Whites included. To take his position he must usually be killed. A thing that may be hard to do. Many Black killings result from Blacks killing established murderers to secure their status.

### **Black Establishment Leaders**

Black society establishes its own pecking order. Most often it is "tough." The toughest rules. He is the one that in the old army the White officers selected for Top Sergeant. If he was truly tough and still smart enough to do the job, he ran a sharp company. Of course, Whites have no idea what was really going on in that company. The lawless enforce lawless law within the army rules. What to Blacks is natural may be to the Whites assigned to that company a hell on earth.

If a Black is chosen solely because of his education and training, the dominant tough Blacks may soon reduce him to putty in their hands. They may "frag" a White officer who displeases them. Blacks who are made overnight leaders by the establishment often become bundles of nerves because of having to deal with other blacks seeking their status. The life of a Black male is difficult by White standards. It becomes more difficult once he has killed someone. He tends to make things difficult for all in his society who do not grovel when he passes.

### **Witch Doctors**

Indians had their medicine men; Blacks their witch doctors. These positions do not require "tough." They require ruthless behavior and dominance over the minds of others. This dominance is gained by association with a god who will punish those displeasing the witch doctor. Practitioners often use the cowed "tough" to



accomplish the practitioners' objectives. They treat the tough with careful equality and friendliness to keep his good will, but never let him lose the fear of the priest's magic. The witch doctor/priest has been known to use poison on his enemies. He instructs White society to call him "reverend," a concept that Whites can deal with. Both kinds, the tough and the reverend, are prominent in public life today. You can easily identify them.

### White Witch Doctors

A White man has always been a witch doctor to many Indians and Blacks because of his (to them) strange and largely incomprehensible civilization. Many things considered quite usual and ordinary to Westerners border on the magic of their own medicine man or witch doctor. The White's status is separate and different. He is not part of the Black society. He unknowingly may be trading on his status when he walks unscathed among tough Blacks and witch doctors, not suspecting that they could dispatch him in a moment if they dared. His witch doctor status protects him. Once the status is suspended, such as in time of a riot, or a mugging, he is no longer protected by his status and can be treated just as anyone else.

In recent years, White neighborhoods have been largely untouched in race riots because they are protected by the magic of those living there. This magic may hurt those who attack them by retaliating in unpredictable ways.

This magic is a fragile thing. It is partly the aftermath of the severe punishment meted out in earlier days when sanctity of White homes was violated. When this magic is lost, the result is Haiti, the Indian wars, Nat Turner, and Gabriel.

### The White B'wana

To Blacks, the leader is the country, the flag, savior, everything. Whites cannot imagine the exalted status of the Black leader. Whatever he says is more important than facts, events, or anything else. The leader is all in all. He is a living god.

You have four joking laughing Black friends walking down the street. Their order is 1, 2, 3, 4. You don't know it, but it's there. One of them is at the top.

In the absence of a Black leader, the Black often bestows on the White man who is present the status of "leader." Whatever the god leader says is tremendously wise, tremendously funny, tremendously important. Whites with inferiority complexes or other psychological hangups bask in this attention. A White whore can get this treatment forever in exchange for favors. To them these appreciative Blacks are wise, loveable, understanding, adoring, etc.. This is the leader treatment. All leaders get it. It has been used on me with great success. However, I have no illusions about how great I am, or who will get the leader treatment a half-hour later. This condition exists only while the Black leader is absent. The last leader who talks to a Black is right - and a White man will not be the last to talk to an individual Black.

Recognition by a leader - his nod, glance, or word - bestows status. Going beyond recognition to fawning downgrades the fawner to a lower rung. The trick is to bestow status to a certain small circle, shut the contact down before it can get out of hand, and depart before they become forward. They will. That is why knowledgeable Whites walk through a thousand Blacks and see none of them. If they do, the Blacks in time will be at their door asking favors, or trying to pick a fight, one or the other. That's why leaders, White or Black, don't see nine out of ten Blacks. They don't want to see them. They don't want to have to deal with them. A circle of Black friends with whom a set agreed upon routine has been established, yes. Not the others. They are trouble.

To hire a Black and not "give" him lunch is almost an insult (also bad manners). To work him as hard as a White is inhuman. Their strength may be prodigious but their endurance is not as great. They tire faster. A compliment on a job well-done is far more important than it is to a White. A five minute break and a chance for a snack in the midst of a heavy job keeps a loyal employee. A personal appearance at a wedding and absolutely at a funeral is expected. All this has meanings not understood by Whites, but they are there. There is another part. Expect no real thanks for the help, the gift or the favor. It goes with the relationship, is expected and taken for granted. Considerate Whites are differentiated from those who aren't. Another thing that could be most important; my Black friends aren't your Black friends and yours aren't mine. Ask the planters in Haiti.



White children, victims of forced integration, rapidly learn two things. They learn to hate Blacks for their bullying ways, and they learn to make friends with one of the big tough Black leaders for protection. This Black child-leader, often the same age but 40 pounds heavier and ten years older in the ways of the world, will protect that White child against other Blacks in return for the White looking to him for protection. It's status for the Black and makes an impossible situation endurable for the White child. Lots of Black/White student couples seen in high school are just this sort of arrangement.

There is one kind of Black leader who, in time, will end all the personal relationships that have made endurable the proximity of Whites with Blacks. The Toussaint L'Overture type. There are a number of carbon copies around these days. They hate Whites, all Whites. They hate his god, his manners, his science, his culture, and everything about him. They are hard to tell because they all look like acceptable types - suits, clean linen, good English, acceptable manners - the works. They use the lickspittle Kennedy-types to open doors for them, but hate them while using them.

The Toussaint L'Overtures will dictate tomorrow's race relations, and, if history has any meaning, the future will be like the past. *"There's nothing new under the sun."*

---

## Chapter 5

---

# TEXAS AND MEXICO

## Texas

Texas was first claimed by the Frenchman La Salle in 1685, reclaimed by the Spanish in 1692, bought by the Americans who then renounced its ownership in the treaty which ceded Florida to the United States in 1819. Confronted with this confusing situation, Stephen Austin obtained a grant from Mexico three years later in 1821 to colonize there.

Americans moved into Texas under the grant which guaranteed them the right to govern themselves under the then existing federal form of Mexican government. The White population grew from 4,000 in 1820 to 20,000 in 1830. In 1835, Santa Anna's government abolished this self-governing form of local government in preference to a centralized government from Mexico City.<sup>1</sup> This was done to better control the massive and far-flung assets of the Catholic church appropriated by the Mexican government in 1807.

With this new found wealth, large portions of the former Church land were granted to favorites in Texas. These favorites came to take possession and, in the process, made demands that the immigrants considered unreasonable.

The situation immediately became intolerable. The ways of the Mexicans were not the ways of the Americans, or as the *Encyclopedia Britannica*, 14th edition, Mexico, puts it, "Because of the incompatibility of Mexican and American settlers in Texas and their mutual distrust, Texas gradually drifted toward inevitable rebellion."

Armed conflicts took place over attempts by Mexicans to disarm the American settlers. A Mexican army was sent to Texas to disarm the Texans but was driven off. Santa Anna returned at the head of a larger army and began using severe measures to reduce Texas. For two weeks, he lay siege to the Alamo. He killed its defenders in the

1 (1) Deut 17:15. (2) Jer 30:21



final attack on March 6, 1836, and the few survivors after their surrender. Four days before on March 2, 1836, with her back to the wall, Texas, in a spirit of defiance and with nothing to lose, declared her independence.

The news of the massacre jarred the rest of Texas. It clothed Santa Anna with a halo of invincibility. On March 20th, a bloody battle was fought at Goliad. Col. Fanning surrendered with 520 of his men. One week later, they were all shot or clubbed to death except six who escaped with the news of the massacre. With a total population of only 20,000, these were severe losses.

Fight and die, or, surrender and die! This was the choice! Texas farmers rode immense distances to join with other Texans already under arms. With these men, General Sam Houston met Santa Anna at San Jacinto on April 21 and defeated him. Texas won independence.

Sam Houston did not avenge his fallen comrades. Santa Anna was a cold-blooded murderer having, on more than one occasion, killed PWs after their surrender.<sup>2</sup> This failure in his dealing with Santa Anna later required on the part of the United States a full-fledged war which resulted in 20,000 casualties. A stranger who has tasted man's blood is like a bear, a lion, or tiger which has done the same.

In 1837, the United States, Great Britain, France, and Belgium, well aware that the vast Church lands formerly owned by the Mexican government were now in the hands of the Texas government, rushed to recognize the new and newly wealthy sovereign state.

Offers of loans poured in from all quarters. Flattered by all this attention, frontiersmen and Indian fighters, turned overnight into statesmen, borrowed, and soon the Texas public debt mounted. "*The borrower is servant.*"

The international banker had arrived.

Unreported by today's media is the fact that there was almost no integration by Texans with Mexicans and Indians. Today's Hollywood scenes showing Mexicans and Blacks socializing with Whites in bars and restaurants would be amusing, except that some people believe them. Had such things actually happened, it would have

2 (1) "Whoso sheddeth man's blood by man shall his blood be shed." Gen 9:6 (2) "The murderer shall be put to death." Num. 35:29-30 (3) "Ye shall take no satisfaction (substitute) for the life of a murderer, which is guilty of death: but he shall surely be put to death." Num 35:31

resulted in instant bloodshed. Very few renegades traded with sojourners in Texas, and this at great risk to themselves. Strangers were not made comfortable, so most left.

This policy did not change until the occupation of Texas by federal forces after the War Between The States, when usury banking was widely introduced to help the looting of the state.<sup>3</sup>

### Mexico - The Colonial Period 1519 - 1821

Hernando Cortez, at the head of a small army, invaded and overthrew the Aztec empire and murdered its last emperor. With no leadership, the Indian empire collapsed. Something else happened even before this.

Contact with New World strangers gave the syphilis plague<sup>4</sup> to Europe where millions died from it. It has never been calculated how much gold was received in exchange for each of the millions of lives lost. In spite of the seemingly great amount, it couldn't have been much when divided by the millions of lives lost by disobedience to the Law.<sup>5</sup> What gold payment there was went mainly to pay the king's bankers.

Still, the quest for gold went forward and the shortage of workers caused the conquerors to utilize Indians instead of separating them onto their own lands.

The Spanish of the period were of two types. The first to which Cortez and most of the leaders and men belonged, was the *hidalgo*<sup>6</sup> class. These were adamic, i.e., "blush red" types found the world over and with whom one is instantly familiar. Their descendants remained until their final extinction in 1910.

### Spain - Morescoes and Maranos

A large minority of the men in ranks were Morescoes. These were descendants of early Arab invaders of Spain who had been

3 As a serviceman in San Antonio in the early '50s, I noted that Blacks, Mexicans, Orientals, and Indians were never permitted in public accommodations. Proscribed social contacts were instantly called into question by all Texans on the spot. Forced integration has since displaced much of the White nation living in Texas cities and in the border areas.

4 Num 16:45-47, I Chron 21:22, Ps 106:30

5 (1) "So he came to Zimri's tent, and slew him with his javelin, and with it he slew Cozbi also ... and the rest all perished by a plague." Antiquities 4:6:12 (2) "And the anger of the Lord was kindled against Israel ... and he sent a pestilence amongst them." Jasher 85:61-63

6 "Son of the Goth"



conquered and who professed Christianity in exchange for their lives. Few could "blush red." In spite of not being "man" they were baptized<sup>7</sup> and welcomed into the Church.

Periodically, groups of Morescoes were found worshipping Allah. When caught, they were severely punished. They were not often caught, the punishment was too severe. It was the Inquisition's job to keep watch over just this sort of activity. After the Spanish king protested to the Pope that there was not a Moresco left in Spain, two Moresco revolts devastated Spain's southern provinces. Because of this history, the Spaniards sat tight on anyone who could not blush red in spite of their being Christian. Still, they made good soldiers, good workers, contributed liberally to the Church, and so allowances were made for their shortcomings.

There was also the problem of the Maranos.<sup>8</sup> When the Arabs invaded Spain, they brought numerous Jews with them. When the Arabs retreated from Spain, the Jews remained. In accordance with the wishes of their White adamic conquerors, they also renounced their god, accepted Christ,<sup>9</sup> and were baptized. They learned the catechism, attended Mass faithfully, and became "good" Catholics.

The commercial activity of these new Christians was awesome. Their contacts were from one Jew to the next wherever they might be. To them, national borders did not exist. Their next Jewish contact and source of information shared commercial and political information with Jews only. They had contacts everywhere that they told no one about. They had had unfortunate experiences with rulers before.

The Jewish religion which they had renounced outwardly protested separation and prohibited interracial marriage, but it actually encouraged advantageous local unions. Consequently, they had married extensively with the Arabs through the centuries. Outwardly they were indistinguishable from them. To the Church their redeeming trait was that they were good Christians and faithful contributors.

In the guise of Christianity they became priests. That presented a problem.

### Spain - Brass Altar Worship Excludes Strangers

The scriptures are stringent about strangers entering places of worship. If they do so, it has been only in controlled conditions, and this goes far back in history.

Josephus records Titus complaining about the temple worship in Jerusalem about 70 AD in these words:

"Titus ... said ... 'Have not you put up this partition-wall (separating Jews and Gentiles) Have you not been allowed to engrave in Greek, and in your own letters, this prohibition, that no foreigner should go beyond that wall? Have we not given you leave to kill such as go beyond it, though he were a Roman?'" Wars 6:2:4.

Many churches in early Virginia had brass altars as a symbol of brass altar worship. These were sheets of brass on wooden altars. Strangers could attend worship services only by using outside entrances that led to the balconies.

In this way, they could be instructed in The Word, but there was no way that the stranger could reach the main congregation below and approach the altar except by going outside and entering through the front entrance, and he would be prevented from doing this by the White congregation. There were no inside entrances from the main floor to the balconies, just outside ones.

This is the background for the custom:

*"Now Korah ... took men ... And they rose up before Moses, with certain of the children of Israel, two hundred and fifty princes of the assembly, ... and said unto ... ye take too much upon you, seeing all the congregation are holy, every one of them, ... And when Moses heard it ... he spake unto Korah and unto all his company saying ... the Lord will show who are his ...*

*"This do; Take you censers ... and put fire therein, and put incense in them ... the man whom the Lord doth choose, he shall be holy: ... And Korah gathered all the congregation against them unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation ... And the earth opened her mouth, and swallowed them up ... and they perished from among the congregation. ...*

<sup>7</sup> (1) Matt 15:24, (2) Deut 7:6.

<sup>8</sup> Marano means "pig" in Spanish. They were accused of unclean acts.

<sup>9</sup> Matt 10:5



*"And the Lord spake unto Moses, saying, Speak unto Eleazar ... that he take up the censers out of the burning ... for they are hallowed ... let them make broad plates for a covering of the altar: for they offered them before the Lord, therefore they are hallowed: and they shall be a sign unto the children of Israel ... and they were made broad plates for a covering of the altar:*

*"To be a memorial unto the children of Israel, that no stranger (Heb: zûwr - racial alien) ... come near to offer incense before the Lord." Num 16:1-40*

Thomas Road Baptist Church in Lynchburg, along with every White church in town, practiced brass altar worship,<sup>10</sup> although they did not call it that. A group of NAACP agitators tried to force an entrance into the sanctuary, and were thrown down the steps by an irate congregation. The Blacks' actions violated the scriptures and were considered to be inciting to riot and blasphemy.<sup>11</sup>

The minister who earlier felt strongly about brass altar worship later changed his mind and now extends invitations to any and all strangers to approach the altar and has even had them preach from the pulpit. He is not alone. There is probably no established church in town that now continues traditional brass altar worship. Each denomination has adjusted its beliefs to conform with the political breeze of the day, and doubtless will have little trouble swaying back again when the political winds change once more.

The Scriptures are quite stong on this point:

**"Thou shalt make ... an oil of holy ointment ... And ... whosoever putteth any of it upon a stranger (Heb: zûwr) - racial alien), shall even be cut off from his people." Ex 30:25-33**

**"And the Lord said unto Aaron, thou and thy sons ... shall bear the iniquity of the sanctuary ... and ... the iniquity of your priesthood ... and the stranger (Heb: zûwr) that cometh nigh shall be put to death." No 18:1-7**

<sup>10</sup> When I was a youngster every church I attended in New York and Washington practiced brass altar worship, also, although few actually had a brass plate on the altar.

<sup>11</sup> (1) "When the tabernacle is to be pitched ... the stranger (Heb: zûwr - racial alien) that cometh nigh shall be put to death." Num 1:51. (2) "There shall no stranger (Heb: zûwr - racial alien) eat of the holy thing." Lev. 22:10

References to the brass altar arise again in instructions to the Phineas priesthood in the following manner:

**"Cause them that have charge ... to draw near, even every man with his destroying weapon ... six men came ... and one man ... with a writer's inkhorn at his side: and they went in and stood beside the brazen altar ... and the Lord said ... Go ye ... and smite .... and begin at my sanctuary. Then they began at the ancient men (elders) which were before the house." Ezek 9:1- 6**

The Phineas unit at full strength was six - one a writer.

### Maranos Uncovered In The Church

These Maranos rose to great heights in the Spanish government, society, and in the Catholic Church. In the Church they rose to become bishops and even archbishops. The king's ministers were often these new Christians. Their practice of usury gave them great wealth. This great wealth allowed them to marry into grandee families. They were in every commercial class and every profession. They wielded great power in Spain and controlled much of her wealth.

Their great wealth began to rival that of the Church as well as the king. The opportunity to pull them down occurred when some of their more powerful members grew boastful. The things they boasted of were startling. They boasted that they were not Christians, had never been Christians, and that there was nothing that anyone could do about it. It was soon discovered that Maranos were meeting all over Spain to worship their own god.

Notice of this was brought to the king. He investigated and found that the reports were true. The conversion of these Maranos was fraudulent, and a shocking number had risen high in the Catholic Church doing mischief that can only be guessed at. The *Jewish Encyclopedia*, p. 588 - 593, 1905 edition states:

**"Maranos," preserved their love for Judaism, and secretly observed the Jewish law and Jewish customs ... The inquisitors addressed (an order to Spanish leaders) ordering them to seize and give up all Maranos hidden among them and to confiscate their property. ... one of the first to be condemned was Pedro Fernandez de Aicaudete, treasurer of a church ... Jesuit Juan**



Martinez de Reuden, in whose possession an anti-Christian book in Hebrew were found, was burned ... the pastor of Tainvera and a cleric ... a canon ... six Judaizing clericals ... the royal official Santa Fé, a descendant of a well-known Jew-hater, Jerome de Santa Fé ... Juan Arias Davila, Bishop of Segovia, and Pedro de Aranda, Bishop of Calahorra ... Diego Deza of Jewish descent on his mother's side, despite his cruelty to the Jews ... young Archdeacon de Castro, whose mother was of an old Christian family, while his father was a Marano ... Hernundo de Talavera, Archbishop of Granada ... who had once been the confessor of Queen Isabella."

Suspicion for a time was focused on Rome because of the earlier series of Jewish popes. Then, too, people began to guess why the Vatican had been a sanctuary for persecuted Jews during times when the rest of Christian Europe had banished them. Suspicions were voiced that the Catholic Church's desire to wage war to regain Church lands from Protestant rulers may have been directed more from the desire to see Christian blood flow than for religious reasons. Any suspicion seemed reasonable when so many in high Church office were found who had reason to hate both Catholic and Protestant Christians.

In 1492, Spain began to expel the Maranos. Most went to the lands of Islam where they are known as Sephardic Jews. Others went to Amsterdam where they set up usury banking and in time brought the rulers of Britain and other European countries under their power. Still others went to the New World where, working as agents of their kinsmen in Amsterdam and elsewhere, they gradually took over the New World's finance and commerce.

Jewish-Marano land was confiscated by the crown. This added great wealth to formerly needy Spanish and Portuguese monarchs.

In addition to the Marano wealth, the Spanish kings also gained control over Church lands in Spain by agreeing to furnish Spanish armies to reclaim Church lands lost to Protestant heretics in Flanders, Germany, England, and elsewhere.

This explains the protective stance of Spanish kings for the true Church. Much of the known world was Spanish, and much of that was either the personal property of the crown seized from the Maranos, or Church land controlled by the crown by agreements made with the Vatican in return for services rendered.

### Mexico's Policy Of Church and State

The Franciscans entered "New Spain" with papal sanctions in 1522. They immediately started missionary work among the Indians.<sup>12</sup> They were soon followed by the Augustinians, Dominicans and the Jesuits.

As in the case of all other nations where the Church was ensconced, the Church became immensely wealthy and attained the pre-eminent power. The *Encyclopedia Britannica* 14th Ed., Vol. 15., Mexico, p. 387, states, "Its wealth in 1821 included not less than one-half of the real property and capital of the country."

This wealth was gained, as in Europe, by parishioners leaving their lands and possessions to the Church at their death in return for prayers to obtain release of their souls from purgatory.<sup>13</sup>

The Spanish king in 1805 forced the Pope to appoint him its "administrative head." In this position he appointed his own men to key positions and he supervised the spending of the Church's gargantuan revenues. A fat plum, indeed.

Black slaves brought in to work the plantations were numerous at first. They had mixed with the Indians by 1800. By that date, there were 3 million Indians and 2 million mixed-breeds. The latter consisted of Mestizo (Indian and European), Sambos (Negro and Indians), and Mulattoes (Negro and White). Those of European ancestry numbered about 850,000 of whom 15,000 were born in Spain.

A formidable Negro rebellion in Veracruz took place in 1735.

In 1767 the Jesuits were arrested *en masse* and their property, estimated to be worth as much as 10 million gold pesos, was confiscated.

The dual control of Church properties created a quandary within the Catholic Church. There were two masters - the Spanish king and the pope. The Jesuits had been organized to be the exclusive agents of the Pope vs. others who were loyal to the crown.

<sup>12</sup> Matt 10:5-6.

<sup>13</sup> The Catholic hierarchy has always been adamant about the existence of purgatory. Without a purgatory, there would be no theological basis for their possession of the people's land. Denial invites excommunication.



### Revolution

The French Revolution reached Mexico in the early 1800s with its cry of "liberty, equality and fraternity." The cause was the seizure of Church prerogatives by the state. The seizure of Church income forced the Church to back anyone who promised to return it. The Church was in this way thrust into the forefront of revolution.

Father Miguel Hidalgo y Costilla, deeply influenced by the doctrines of the French Revolution, led the mass of Indians and Mestizos against the Whites under the patronage of the *Virgin of Guadalupe* - the Black virgin. The revolt was defeated in 1811 and its leaders executed.

The revolt continued under Father Morelos who was able to carry on the war until 1815, when he too was captured and executed. While he lived, he established a common front of non-Whites vs. Whites. Its cry was always for equality of rights between Whites and mixed-breeds. From this time guerrilla war started which never was quite stamped out.

In 1821, Mexico proclaimed its independence from Spain. From 1823 until 1860 there was bitter rivalry between those wanting independent provinces and those wanting central rule from Mexico City.

Since 1867, there have been perhaps 100 revolutions. In each, the Whites were divided, and lost more and more. The Church was the center around which each revolt swirled. It tended to side with whichever side promised it the most. The Spanish king's assumption of control of Church lands and revenues caused it to side with the king's enemies. This resulted in a return of power and wealth to the Church, which in 1807 had been barred from inheriting real estate.

"The Church owned in 1854 a great part of all urban property, controlled or owned much of the rural property, had an annual income greater than that of the national government, and acted as unofficial banker for the people."<sup>14</sup>

The revolts starting in 1854 again disendowed and disestablished the Church and worked in favor of the White land-owners who assumed much of the Church lands. In July 1859 Juarez (a Mestizo) suppressed the religious order and nationalized ecclesiastical real property estimated at more than \$125 million gold pesos, exclusive

of hospitals, libraries, art collections, and buildings used for Church activities.

The Mexican government then had wealth and the European powers made demands on that wealth and enforced their demands with troops. The Church once again turned against the White land owners who had taken much Church land for their own. By 1910, the Indians and Mestizos numbered more than 85% of the population, and in the revolts starting in 1910, the Church sided with the Mestizos and Sambos who exterminated the remaining Whites of Mexico. Most Whites residing there now are immigrants or descendants of those arriving since 1910. The 1910 revolts were the end result of the policy of law violations that had started in Mexico's earliest days. The Church was in on the kill,<sup>15</sup> and now supports mixed-breed revolutionaries against mixed-breed rulers in exchange for promises of further aid in property recovery.

The results of the 1910 revolt have been concealed by the media, but these revolts terminated the White race in Mexico. The descendants of the Morescoes and Maranos won their revenge at last. I have talked to Texans who traveled to deserted Mexican cities and towns ravaged by the revolutionaries, and who saw heaps of fair and blond haired men, women and children lying dead in the streets - lying as they were when they had been shot down in family groups.

The Mestizo, Pancho Villa, took the war into the United States in his blood lust for Whites. He raided and murdered 18 American miners at Santa Isabel on Jan 10, 1916, and at Columbus, New Mexico, on March 9, he killed 17 more.

At present, the treatment of an American tourist who runs afoul of Mexican law is notorious. Special treatment is often meted out to them. If the prisoner is a White female, rape may be expected.

As late as the 1940s, there were handfuls of fair adamic peoples who had survived the 1910 massacres and were hiding in the hills of Mexico and living the lives of outlaws to survive. This is all that was left of the descendants, those stalwarts who conquered with Cortez and his men. They may have all been hunted down and killed by now.

<sup>15</sup> It has been predicted that the Judeo-Christian sect, regardless of denomination, will receive the full force of Christian fury when it is learned what they, in their quest for money, have done to the teaching of Jesus. Christians still identify with the Word given by Jesus in the beginning and taught by Him, while a great many Judeo-Christians misquote Paul and say that the Law given by Jesus in the beginning is done away. In effect, the Judeo-Christians have made Paul a god, while the Word; the Laws, statutes and judgments of Jesus are followed by Christians. Christians with the Law and Judeo-Christians without the Law worship different gods.

<sup>14</sup> E/B, p. 391



---

## Chapter 6

---

# WAR BETWEEN THE STATES

### Usury - The Stranger's Poison

Usury is a contract.

If one lends \$10, and it is the only \$10 in existence, on the condition that he be repaid \$11; and if the borrower agrees to repay \$11 when only \$10 exists, he has agreed to an impossible contract. It is the traditional fraudulent usury contract.<sup>1</sup>

Multiply this by \$900 billion dollars and you understand today's monetary situation.<sup>2</sup>

The Law states "*The borrower is servant to the lender*," Prov 22:7. The new government of the United States at a very early date became a borrower and consequently a servant of those from whom it borrowed.

It wasn't until the *Second Bank Of The United States* failed in 1841 that its list of stockholders was made public. It came as a shock to many that most of the stock was owned in England. It had been from the beginning, but only at its bankruptcy did people find out about it. The directors, managers, employees, supporters, and of course those who borrowed from it had been servants almost since the founding of the country.

Today, American banks have become powerful enough to boast of their antecedents without fear of retribution. Many publish the names of their early stockholders. We learn from these reports that

---

1 The only legality a usury contract has has been given it by government statutes. The faithful believe that governments can no more legalize what God has outlawed by passing a statute than they can legalize murder or rape. Such statutes only lend "color" of legality to the unlawful. *The Law judges.*

2 (1) "He that hath ... given forth upon usury ... he shall surely die." Ezek 18:8. (2) "He that hath not given forth upon usury ... shall surely live." Ezek 18:9.

many of our "founding fathers" had unwittingly compromised themselves from the first.

The method was simple and effective. As an act of goodwill, the new banks gave important politicians free stock, or stock at a very low price. Men will seldom raise a hand against something that benefits their pocketbooks. Most will actively encourage friends and associates to deal with the business in which they hold stock so that it will make them a profit.

This is what happened. Those who received the gift of cheap stock in the private *Bank of Pennsylvania*, one of the first usury branches in America founded in 1781, were none other than Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Jefferson, Alexander Hamilton, James Monroe, John Jay, John Paul Jones, and Commodore John Bary. Robert Morris, superintendent of finance for the Continental Congress on whom modern historians dote, was, as we might expect, a leading light.<sup>3</sup> This is why the setting up of usury banking in America received so little opposition.

America's leading lights, paragons of virtue and self-sacrifice in the fight for independence, after freeing their country from the clutches of the king, put it back into slavery to the international bankers. It must be noted that no studies have come to light showing that any of these people knowingly betrayed their nation. They were ill taught in Biblical Law and did not understand the destructiveness that their tolerance of usury allowed, or seemingly did not recognize a usury trap when they saw one. If they had, rather than allow their country to endure the suffering it has had to go through since the introduction of usury banking, they would have undoubtedly enforced the penalty against it; "*He that hath ... given forth upon usury ... shall surely die.*" Ezek 18:8. These men would not have knowingly engaged in such a forbidden act, for to do so is blasphemy.

Jefferson, for one, inherited heavy debts from his wife's father before the Revolution and had to pay the debt twice. He struggled against bankruptcy for his whole life after the war. His pledged plantations were foreclosed by the lenders at his death. Monticello, his home, was sold.

It is against human nature to fight the thing that pays well, but the Law is absolute. Violate one Law, and another stands behind to be triggered. "*Can two walk together, except they be agreed.*" Amos 3:3

---

3 See *War Cycles / Peace Cycles*, p. 172.



One cannot oppose usury banks and at the same time own stock in those banks.

Association with usury banking made them junior partners and put them in the position of advancing the banking interests if they were to advance their own. They were removed from being an enemy if they expected their stock to prosper.

Usury banking was the nation's biggest single foe. It was a far greater danger than was the king or the Church. The once sovereign countries of England, France, Spain, and Holland had been reduced to tentacles of the octopus whose name was usury. The same master, the international usury banks, ruled them all.

### Radicals Before The Civil War

Wars between our people are forbidden.

**"Ye shall not ... fight against your brethren the children of Israel." I Kings 12:24**

The only time it is ever required is when a kinsman is in violation of God's law. Then:

**"When any persons would compel us to break our laws, then it is that we choose to go to war."**

**Josephus, Against Apion 2:38**

If there has been a dispute, or misunderstanding, and it is found that no law has been violated by kinsmen, an "ED" monument is to be erected to honor the settlement and the law against fighting kinsmen is again held up as the ideal.

If a war is forced by man on man without reason, it is a lawless war, one to be opposed by the lawful, and especially those of the Phineas priesthood.

### The Media Protects Usury

Usury is illegal. It is also extremely profitable. To exist in the face of the sentence of death *"He that hath ... given forth upon usury ... shall surely die"*, requires that a favorable climate be created and maintained. Good business demands good health. Good health dictates that only good things be said about the forbidden practice and those who engage in it. To allow bad things to be said is to court

disaster since it involves religion, and people are traditionally "unreasonable" when it comes to the commandments of their God.

It is a business expense. To spend to protect the usury monopoly<sup>4</sup> maintains good public relations.

### The Press - Usury's Shield

Unlimited funds in the hands of the money interests allowed them to acquire existing media in the major population centers, and to establish competing media where existing media could not be bought. A favorable climate results when the only voice heard is the voice of the usury monopoly.

By 1785, much of the media of Britain were in the hands of owners who were nominees only - who owned them for someone else. That someone else was the one who had the money. The ones who had the money by this late date were the international bankers. Thus, the king, a debtor and slave to the banks, made press releases to a media which were creatures of the banks, and the words that reached the people in the name of the king were the selected, censored, rewritten, and approved words of the bank. The king spoke the words of his master.

### The Media Conquer America

The control of the media in America had been completed in the urban North by 1830, but it could not be done in the South where there were few large cities and only a few medium-sized ones. The people ruled in the agricultural South. Its population was scattered widely over enormous distances. Its news needs were satisfied by many local weeklies that reported local events - usually events of no interest to those not living in that region.

The media monopoly operating in the population centers of the North was successful beyond belief. It brought instant results. Diversity of opinion vanished overnight, replaced with slogans. Opposing opinions were neither reported nor allowed.

<sup>4</sup> Small independent banks are permitted to exist only when they adhere to strict guidelines established by the giant international banks. The basic rule is simple. They may act as procurers and lend to new borrowers. They may keep part of the income, but must quickly sell these loans to big city banks who reap the lion's share of the profits. A violation of any rule set down by the big ruling banks can quickly be used as an excuse to close down the small bank. The monopoly may not be challenged.



Political debate was limited to subjects chosen by the media. Regardless of what speakers said, the media printed only what it wished its readers to know. Their distortions and falsehoods caused many of their editors to be challenged to duels. A large number of both editors and writers were killed in these affairs. To protect its personnel the media were forced to launch a campaign to outlaw dueling. When this was accomplished, they could vilify whom they liked with relative safety.<sup>5</sup>

The media in the urban north quickly reached operating speed. Public opinion was reduced to an acceptable standard. A single media opinion replaced diversity, just as today. Few dared to differ. The majority who opposed the standard were ignored.

The Northern politician quickly learned to do as he was told if he wished to hold office. Obedience gained favorable publicity from the newspapers and inevitable election. Disobedience caused one's name to be dropped from the printed page, and by election day his name had vanished from the voters' memory.

The press, the un-regulated all-powerful monopoly, made honest gentlemen appear to be dirty blackguards, and dirty blackguards were made to appear as honest gentlemen. The latter was the more usual practice.

### The New Political Machine

Usury banks used their unlimited finances to create America's mass media. The mass media created America's politics. America's political system is their creation. It works precisely as it was designed to work.

Biddle, the high profile leader of the American bank forces, and president of the *Second Bank of The United States*, was the single most powerful visible individual in America. He or his compatriots brought selected good fortune to individuals by making bountiful loans to those they favored. One falling under his displeasure was brought to disaster by calling in his loan for immediate payment. Biddle and his apparatus were the uncrowned economic kings of America.

<sup>5</sup> "Relative safety" is a tenuous term at best. There has always been the real possibility that those being maligned will right matters themselves. Allen Berg, the virulent anti-White Denver radio broadcaster, shot down in his driveway, was the latest. Many of the abusive media writers, who publicly oppose the public's owning firearms, have permits to carry concealed firearms for this very reason.

Andrew Jackson was president. He hated "The Bank." His campaign for re-election was an exceptionally hard one. In the middle of his re-election campaign, he discovered that the *Second Bank* had almost doubled its loans from the then enormous \$42 million to the almost unimaginable total of \$70 million from January 1831 to May 1832 in the effort to bring influential borrowers under its control.

Many long-time allies on whom Jackson was counting for help suddenly became silent. An investigation showed that they had borrowed money and had been warned that support for Jackson would cause their loans to be called. "*The borrower is slave.*" Jackson, the most popular man in the entire United States, was finding it hard to find influential men to campaign for him. He was also becoming invisible. His speeches and campaign oratory were un-reported.

Jackson also discovered that some of the largest sums lent by the bank were lent to buy newspapers which became part of the establishment's media. Under agent-ownership they took the side of Jackson's opponent. There was almost no voice raised in Jackson's behalf. This made Jackson furious. He vowed vengeance. This was a different enemy from the savage Indian or the devious British, French, or American renegade who could be openly fought on the field of battle. But, he fought it the best he knew how. Activity and established reputation made up for the media blackout and he was re-elected. After election, he fought to drive the *Second Bank* into bankruptcy.

In this he was successful. He did not realize that the *Second Bank* was only a part of the gigantic usury apparatus which by then had spread across most of the country. He crushed and humiliated Biddle, but Biddle was only a single enemy who had foolishly put himself in direct opposition to the most popular and powerful man of his age.

The important thing to note is that by the 1830s, the media of the major population centers was in the hands of the usury banks. Jackson and his successor were the last U.S. presidents to be freely elected by the people. From this time, the only ones receiving media publicity were bank approved candidates, and whoever received publicity was elected. Whoever was denied media publicity was defeated. It was that simple. Democratic election on the national level in the urban North became a sham. In spite of multiple political parties America was being reduced to one political opinion while giving the appearance of having a republican democracy.



A new generation of politicians followed Andrew Jackson. They were as different from him and from the people they represented as anything this world has ever seen. They had been carefully chosen by the media. Their speeches were written for them, and often the picture the media painted of them bore little resemblance to reality. Almost to a man, they were the new lawless type.

Their acts in office show that they were restrained by few of the moral considerations that restrained the rest of Western man.

Usury banking in the North resulted in wildly fluctuating stock markets and interest rates climbed at times to 25%. Bankruptcies and unemployment became a way of life. Riots in the larger cities were not uncommon. The new "media chosen" politicians were mostly unfit to govern and completely unable to bring order out of the growing economic chaos. Everything was blamed on the South.

The South, pictured as being rich, immoral, and greedy, did nothing right.

In 1854, the Republican Party was formed. It was an entirely new and separate political party with its own propaganda apparatus led by its own radical political leaders. It contained those people made radical by the media, people who were unwelcome elsewhere. This new party represented that element which was not restrained by history or precedent.

### The Prize - The South's Wealth

The assessed valuation of all United States property in 1860 was \$12 billion. One-half of that was in 11 Southern States with only 8 million Whites.<sup>6</sup> These 8 million Whites exported 57% of the total exports of the nation. The plan was to bind the South and take her wealth.<sup>7</sup>

War would be necessary since the South could not be expected to willingly give away wealth that had taken over 250 years to accumulate. Then, too, war is good for business. In fact, it is the best of the several ways to force money to be borrowed into existence in a usury society.<sup>8</sup>

The usual way the media goes about creating a war climate is:

<sup>6</sup> *Weep No More My Lady*, W. E. Debnam, Graphic Press, Raleigh, NC 1950 p. 41

<sup>7</sup> A bonus was the elimination of a nation of kings, the natural competitors of the ultimate ruler of the world's usury.

<sup>8</sup> See "Keynes." *War Cycles / Peace Cycles*, p. 201.

- 1) "The enemy" must be made to appear unlawful. He must be made to appear criminal, one that must be restrained and punished for the good and safety of all.
- 2) The public must be made to believe that the enemy is going to attack them. If the enemy can be made to strike the first blow, opinions harden and unite on war, and "happy days are here again" as war contracts go out.

### The Chosen Issue - Radical Abolition

The issue chosen was abolition.

As discussed earlier, the public issue of the day was the colonization program ... the purchasing, freeing, and sending the slaves back to Africa. It was a subject freely discussed in almost every social setting. It was on the tip of everyone's tongue; a subject ready for the media's propagandist twist.

The media took Thomas Jefferson's abolition plan, adopted it, revised it by leaving out "compensation" and "repatriation," and started their own propaganda campaign.

The Abolition Colonization Plan minus payment for the slaves who were originally bought in good faith and paid for in hard money - was theft!

Jefferson's abolition plan minus colonization nullified all that the colonization plan was created to correct - the protection of White workers from cheap alien labor and the protection of the White race from destruction through contact with strangers and learning their ways. And, of course, to prevent the inevitable interbreeding that always results when two peoples live in the same land.

This selection of the abolition issue was a work of genius. It could not fail to succeed where a media monopoly existed. The way it was developed was even more inspired.

The media stopped virtually all reference to colonization. They stopped almost all reference to payment for freed slaves. Abolition took on meaning that was harsh and sinister. It was the San Domingo campaign all over again, done by the same international bankers in the same manner. All that was new was the victim.

The only topic the media discussed from 1830 on was the evil of slavery, a topic on which the entire nation agreed. The evil was embellished with reports of the brutality of slave owners. Not only were the slave owners brutes, but they were pictured as fiends who



delighted in devising vile punishments to inflict on helpless Black wretches.

The story as it appeared in the northern media was the atrocity story, of which we have become so familiar: slave owners were treating slaves in a shameful manner, they were the servants of the devil and any punishment meted out to such evil creatures was too good.

Northern city dwellers traveled very little in those days. They were dependent on others to furnish news of outside events. They only knew what they read in the newspapers and had no way of telling if the stories were true or false.

If what the media said was actually going on in the South, if slaves were being beaten, starved, and maltreated wholesale for pleasure, and if good Black "Christian" slave families were being broken up and sold away from each other just so the plantation master could enjoy the female without the irate slave husband around, the hard opinions were justified. But, it was propaganda.

It was implied at first, and later outright demanded, that instant freedom, minus payment and colonization, be granted these poor downtrodden wretches from these slaveholding fiends, even if force had to be used to do it. The word "force" began to enter the papers with increasing frequency.

Money was lavished on this new radical abolition campaign on a scale not seen since the French Revolution. Revolutionary tracts were printed and sent to slaves in the South by the case.

As far back as 1835, John Quincy Adams noted in his diary:

"Anti-slavery associations are formed in this country and in England and they are already co-operating in concerted agency together. They have raised funds to support and circulate inflammatory newspapers and pamphlets gratuitously, and they send multitudes of them into the Southern country into the midst of swarms of slaves."<sup>9</sup>

This was Haiti all over again. The same sort of tracts had appeared among the slaves in Haiti to foment a revolt that exterminated the Whites. The main difference was that these were printed in English while those used in Haiti were in French. The content was the same, the style was the same, and the demands were

<sup>9</sup> Adams's Diary, August 11, 1835. Quoted in *Virginia's Attitude Toward Slavery*, p. 178. Note the international scope of the campaign.

the same. There were White refugees from Haiti living in Virginia who could identify the tracts and testify as to the results they produced.

Margaret Mercer of Maryland, who had freed her slaves, was incensed by the writings of William Lloyd Garrison. In a letter to a friend she says:

"This is my apology for feeling and expressing the deepest indignation against the man who dares to throw the firebrand into the powder magazine while all are asleep and stands himself at a distance to see the mangled victims of his barbarous fury."<sup>10</sup>

The amazing thing is that through it all, the northern people hadn't the faintest idea that the media were trying to foment a slave revolt in the South, and were using them as pawns in the great game of war. They had no way of knowing. The tracts sent to the southern slaves weren't the same as the editorials appearing in northern newspapers. Each was slanted to its audience.

Money continued to pour into the campaign. The mails were full of insurrection propaganda. Southern reaction against this incendiary printed matter is given in the following letter by The Rev. Nehemiah Adams, of Boston, who visited Virginia in 1854. He writes:

"When these amalgamation pictures were discovered (pictures showing interracial couples in all sorts of poses) ... Who can wonder that they broke into the post-office and seized and burned abolition papers; indeed no excesses are surprising in view of the perils to which they saw themselves exposed."<sup>11</sup>

In his message to Congress in December 1860, President Buchanan wrote:

"The incessant and violent agitation of the slavery question through the North for the last quarter of a century has at last produced its malign influence on the slaves ... Hence a sense of security no longer exists around the family altar. A feeling of peace at home has given place to apprehension of servile insurrection."

George Lunt of Boston, wrote:

<sup>10</sup> *Memoir of Margaret Mercer*, Morris, p. 126.

<sup>11</sup> *A South Side View Of Slavery*, Adams, p. 108.



"It thus appears that an active and alarming system of aggression against the South was in operation at the North thirty years ago, threatening to excite servile insurrection, to imperil union, to stir up civil war."<sup>12</sup>

Professor John Burgess of Columbia University wrote:

"If the whole thing, both as to time, methods, and results, had been planned by his Satanic Majesty himself, it could not have succeeded better in setting the sound conservative movements of the age at naught ... No man who is acquainted with the change of feeling which occurred in the South ... can regard the Harper's Ferry villainy as any other than one of the chiefest crimes of our history ...

Brown and his band had murdered five men and wounded some eight or ten more in their criminal movement at Harper's Ferry.

In Kansas, Brown's gang mutilated prisoners by cutting off arms, etc.<sup>13</sup> His activities were well publicized in the South. When the Northern media wrote approvingly of these acts the South's wrath knew no bounds. The South acted as people are supposed to act when being conditioned for war.

"Add to this the consideration that Brown certainly intended the wholesale massacre of the Whites by the Blacks ... it was certainly natural that the tolling of the church bells, the holding of prayer-meetings for the soul of John Brown, the draping of houses, the half-masting of flags, etc., in many parts of the North should appear to the people of the South to be evidences of a wickedness which knew no bounds ..."<sup>14</sup>

Slave owners in Kansas reacted to John Brown's attacks by organizing vigilante committees for their own protection as it was meant that they should. This played into the hands of the media. This defensive organization and its protective measures were interpreted by the press to their Northern readers as aggressive acts directed against all abolitionists. This was the justification they needed to assert that the North must now arm to protect itself against hostile and aggressive Southern slaveowners who threatened to spread their evil society over all the country.

<sup>12</sup> *The Origin of the Late War*, Lunt, p. 104.

<sup>13</sup> See Otto Scott's, *The Secret Six*, Times Books, 3 Park Avenue, NY 10016

<sup>14</sup> *The Civil War and the Constitution*, Burgess, Vol. I, pp. 42-44

The whole affair only cost a few hundred thousand dollars.

### John Brown - Media Creation

John Brown was executed. The church bells tolled in the North. Prayer meetings were held, houses were draped, and flags were half-masted. All this is true, but it was not the whole story.

Today we recognize staged events when we see them.<sup>15</sup> We have all heard of cases where mobs patiently wait to riot until the media arrives, unpacks, sets up, and gives the signal, then the riot takes place. We have read reports of mobs of South African Blacks who wait patiently, joking with their victim until the media arrives, then they burn him. Stories abound of protest marches having to be re-staged at 12:00 o'clock rush hour because no crowds turned up to lend credence to an earlier filming. Staged events are now old stuff. In the middle of the last century the American population had yet to learn what a more sophisticated audience can spot instantly.

The mid-1800s media spoke with one voice on matters of policy, as they do today. Their suggestion to half-mast flags was an iron-bound order to the politically ambitious to half-mast flags, just as these same types half-masted flags to honor Martin Luther King. The newspapers reporting the flag event would not say that a handful of political hacks did what they were told to do. The newspaper reports instead dwelt on the "public outpouring of grief" - just like today.

Establishment preachers, obeying the media's suggestion to hold a prayer meeting, even if the church were vacant. It would be reported that "Christian churches hold prayer meetings to commemorate ...," and it would be true, but only media truth.

Careful reading of private papers of the period reveal John Brown's execution to be a non-event in the North. It was no more noticed than if any other mass murderer had been apprehended and executed. But, it most definitely was a media-event.

Frankly, it takes some doing to make a kinky, arm hacking, cold-blooded murderer into a plaster saint, but the media can do it. After all, the media had seen to it that there WERE flags at half-mast, home prayer meetings WERE held, and there WERE houses draped in black. The public read lengthy stories about these token

<sup>15</sup> Otto Scott lists the names of some of those who financed Brown's murderous activities.



incidents and took them to be a general outpouring of grief - as the media meant them to do.

There was little of this in the South. The bankers' media did not hold sway in the rural countryside. The people could only believe what they saw. The local editors of their weekly newspapers reported that Robert E. Lee had gone to Harper's Ferry and had hanged the terrorist, John Brown. They also repeated the Northern newspaper reports which said that the Christians in the North had joined together and that "there was a public outpouring, etc." The media had created a paper Yankee for the South to hate, and a paper Southern Rebel for the North to hate. Neither knew that the John Brown affair was staged.

### First Shots

The race for the presidency in 1860 was managed so that it was a three-way race. The Republican Party won with a minority of the vote.<sup>16</sup> This was the anti-South radical abolitionist party formed in 1854 to hold those in the northern population centers radicalized by the media. The party was also a media creation. It was a minority party, one chosen only from the North. Most of its support came from the great cities. It contained no Southerners. This was the party that was going to take over the reins of the national government. The media had threatened the South again and again by saying that it was going to be ruled by a national government hostile to its interest. South Carolina didn't wait to be jerked around. She seceded. One by one other southern states joined her lead.

South Carolina sent emissaries to Washington to treat with the now foreign government.<sup>17</sup> Details of the sordid story are told in *War Cycles / Peace Cycles*. The peace congress then meeting in Virginia got nowhere talking to the federal government. South Carolina's emissaries were ignored. Fair-minded Christians in the North were also ignored.

At that critical time the media took great care to break the news that a federal invasion fleet was at that moment on the high seas sent to invade and occupy South Carolina's harbor. News editors

<sup>16</sup> Lincoln was himself a slaveowner, his wife having inherited slaves. This is one more subject censored by the establishment media.

<sup>17</sup> "When you are about to go to war, send embassages and heralds to those who are your voluntary enemies, for it is a right thing to make use of words to them before you come to your weapons of war." *Antiquities*, 4,8,41.

were careful to point out that (1) Fort Sumter was of no value to the U.S. if the South was to go in peace; (2) was of no value to the U.S. if there was war, since S.C. could easily reduce it. So why the expedition? South Carolina's delegation in Washington read the media report with alarm and forwarded the reports of the invasion fleet on the way to South Carolina as they were meant to.

South Carolina, receiving these reports, naturally believed that invasion was imminent. That is what the newspapers had said. They fired at Fort Sumter before the fleet and fort could join forces in the middle of Charleston Harbor. It was South Carolina's contention that sending the invasion fleet in the first place constituted the first shot. But, the headlines in the Northern newspapers read "South Carolina fires on the Stars And Stripes!!" The newspapers were triumphant. They had accomplished what they had worked 30 years to do. The war that neither the North nor the South wanted was on. Both sections had been skillfully manipulated. The Southern leaders only vaguely realized that there was an evil force directing events to bring on war.

The War Between the States was a staged media event. It cost hundreds of thousands of lives and it violated God's Laws. Laws that demand heavy punishment.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>18</sup> (1) "Let us not ... put a stumbling block or an occasion to fall in his brother's way." Romans 14:13. (2) "If a false witness rise up ... Then shall ye to unto him, as he had thought to have done unto his brother." Deut 19:16-17



### War Between The States

The establishment has a vested interest in convincing people that the 1861-1865 war in America was a civil war between peoples of the same kind within the country. The 1861-1865 war in America, the war that was so carefully promoted, nurtured, and developed, was not a civil war. It was a war between a banking establishment which had conquered and gained monetary, media, and political dominance over the northeastern states and used the resources of those states (including the people) to expand their power over others. Thus, it was a war between states, or "War Between The States." Not a "civil" war between peoples of the same kind. The unreconstructed South has known the difference for years. The difference in a speaker's use of the term "civil war" and "War Between The States" reveals his level of political education, his sympathies, and the probable content of his speech. An even better name would be "Second War of Independence."

### Mr. Lincoln Pursues The War

After the excitement brought on by the outbreak of war diminished, Lincoln found it extremely difficult to get soldiers to pursue his war. Regardless how wicked and evil the newspapers said the Southerners were, and how deserving of punishment, it was not a popular war. Lincoln's first call for troops caused Virginia, North Carolina and Tennessee to secede, and the governors of Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri all refused troops. After the first patriotic outpouring from those states remaining, volunteers virtually stopped. Lavish incentives were used. A farmer in Ohio, hounded by bank usurers, could get a bonus for enlisting equal to a year's wage - enough to save the family farm. This enticed some. Still there weren't enough soldiers.

Lincoln enlisted Blacks to fill vast gaps in his army. Close to 300,000 of them were enlisted. It was a vastly unpopular move. This was the same thing as the British or the French enlisting Indians to fight for them against their kindred opponents.

"On August 21, 1862 he (Jefferson Davis, President of the Confederate States) authorized a Confederate War Department order specifying that US General David Hunter and all other officers who drilled, organized, or instructed slaves with

a view to using them as soldiers to kill whites were to be considered outlaws. If captured, they were not to be treated like prisoners-of-war but held for execution as felons."<sup>1</sup>

Whites who knew the Law deserted the Union Army in droves. Many joined the Southern Army. As a boy raised in Culpeper County in Northern Virginia, I often heard of the exploits of "Big Yankee Ames," a former sergeant in the 5th New York cavalry who joined Mosby's Rangers in protest over Lincoln's Negro policy. Ames was one of many.

Lincoln's agents went to Germany and enlisted 200,000 Germans who had no idea what the war was all about. Colonel Blackwell of Lynchburg writes of fighting waves of newly arrived German soldiers who could not speak a word of English.

Lincoln resorted to the draft. Draft riots broke out in New York and other cities.

More serious, the "copperhead" movement broke out and flourished all throughout the North. It was called "copperhead" not for the snake, but for cutting out the head of Liberty from the large penny of that day and wearing it in one's buttonhole. It was everywhere. There was little formal organization. Most were not pro-Southern, just pro-Law, anti-war, anti-Lincoln, and anti-Republican. They created no end of mischief for Lincoln's war effort.

Copperheads would throw kerosene into army wheat being shipped to mills, spoiling the whole lot. They hollowed firewood, packed it with gun powder, sealed it with wooden plugs to make the tampering unnoticeable, and dropped the firewood from bridges into railroad cars full of firewood on the way to fuel ships at naval bases. Union ships had a never-ending series of unexplained accidents on the high seas. Railroad trestles were cut down. Track rails were sabotaged and trains wrecked. It never stopped.

Northern soldiers on the way to the front were fired on by local citizenry. A pitched battle was fought in Baltimore between civilians and soldiers moving to the front.

Lincoln started the war without the approval of Congress. The people turned on him and resisted the best they could. Lincoln's reaction was harsh. He broke almost every rule in the book in the process. He jailed 38,000 political prisoners to silence their opposi-

<sup>1</sup> *The Lincoln Murder Conspiracies*, William Hanchett, University of Illinois Press, Chicago, 1983, p. 32



tion. He suspended the *Writ of Habeas-Corpus* and he suspended the few newspapers that dared oppose him.

Lincoln, selected by the money powers and elected by the media, surrounded himself with men like himself. Sumner in his cabinet - the brutal cold-hearted extremist; Grant, the hard-drinking general who issued orders to burn houses within a ten mile radius of any train derailment; Sherman,<sup>2</sup> befriended by Southerners before the war and who repaid them with rape, looting, and burning. Sheridan, violently anti-Southern, who burned the Shenandoah Valley, and was particularly held in revulsion by the English people,<sup>3</sup> and "Beast" Butler, who ordered his men to treat the women of New Orleans as prostitutes. Gen. Hunter, son of a minister, burned houses in Lexington and Bedford on his way to burn Lynchburg. Lynchburg was a hospital center. He hanged prisoners and positively glowed when he ordered his artillery to shell the town and its hospitals. If there are men who deserved to be remembered two of them are Beast Butler and Hunter.

The president took his cue from the establishment which had elected him. His generals took their cue from him. The soldiers took their cue from their generals. Everyone took their cue from the drumfire hate propaganda directed against the South by the media.

On the other side, the South selected men like Robert E. Lee to command, Stonewall Jackson his right hand, J.E.B. Stuart as his left, and Nathan Bedford Forrest of Tennessee.

### General Lee's Order

The law is specific in dealing with private property, even in the land of your enemy.

*"Take care that you do nothing that is cruel; and when you are engaged in a siege, ... do not you render the land naked by cutting down trees that bear fruit ... but spare them considering that they were made for the benefit of men." Josephus, Antiquities 4:8:42.*

2 A West Pointer, from 1853 to 1857 Sherman was trained as a banker in San Francisco. From 1859 to 1861, he was superintendent of Louisiana's military college. His brother, John, was a leader in the radical Republican Party. When war broke out his rapid advancement was assured. He was an Oliver Cromwell type whose antecedents traced back to puritan New England.

3 *The Glittering Illusion*, Sheldon Vanauken, Regnery Gateway Press, Lynchburg, 1989

*"There are things ... we ought to do in common to all men ... not to let any one lie unburied. ... treat those that are esteemed our enemies with moderation; for he doth not allow us to set their country on fire, nor permit us to cut down those trees that bear fruit: nay, farther, he forbids us to spoil those that have been slain in war. He hath also provided for such as are taken captive that they may not be injured, and especially that the women may not be abused." Josephus, Against Apion 2:30*

General Gordon relates an incident<sup>4</sup> illustrating the strict obedience to the Law observed by General Lee.

"When the Confederate Army crossed into Maryland in 1862 General Lee witnessed a Southern soldier with a stolen pig under his arm, a violation of the stringent orders he had issued. It was directed that the soldier be arrested and turned over to General Jackson to be shot.

"General Jackson, not having time to convene a court-martial because of preparations for the coming battle of Sharpsburg, put the culprit in the front of his army so that he might be killed by an opponent's bullet thus saving red tape. The soldier evaded death in the battle and his conspicuous courage purchased his redemption. But, the lesson was learnt by the army. The following order by General Lee enforced the example:

"Headquarters Army Of Northern Virginia

"Chambersburg, Pa, June 7, 1863

"General Order No. 73.

"The duties exacted of us by civilization and Christianity are not less obligatory in the country of the enemy than in our own. The commanding general considers that no greater disgrace could befall the army, and through it our whole people, than the perpetration of the barbarous outrages upon the innocent and defenseless and the wanton destruction of private proper-

4 *Reminiscences Of The Civil War*, Gen. John B. Gordon, NY, Charles Scribner's Sons, 1905. p. 305.



ty that have marked the course of the enemy in our own country. ... It must be remembered that we make war only on armed men, and that we cannot take vengeance for the wrongs our people have suffered without lowering ourselves in the eyes of all whose abhorrence has been excited by the atrocities of our enemy, and offending against Him to whom vengeance belongeth, without whose favor and support our efforts must all prove in vain.

"The commanding general, therefore earnestly exhorts the troops to abstain with most scrupulous care from unnecessary or wanton injury to private property, and he enjoins upon all officers to arrest and bring to summary punishment all who shall in any way offend against the orders on this subject.

R. E. Lee, General<sup>5</sup>

This general policy of the Army of Northern Virginia under command of Christians was in direct opposition to that of the Union Army directed by the international bankers whose scorched earth policy was notorious. The Union Armies did not supervise the conduct of their soldiers in their dealings with Southern civilians. Their crimes were many.

The Law in dealing with prisoners had long been observed among Christian nations:

*"Obed ... complained that they ...make captives out of their kinsmen ... to let them go home without doing them any harm... So the ... men took the captives and let them go, and took care of them, and gave them provisions, and sent them away to their own country, without doing them any harm." Antiq. 9:7:2.*

Prisoner exchange was the accepted method of disposing of war prisoners. The exchange was instituted from the very beginning of the war by field commanders on both sides who paroled and released on the spot the prisoners they took. Lincoln stopped prisoner exchange, thereby condemning tens of thousands of soldiers to slow lingering deaths from disease and indifferently prepared food that comes with prison life.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid., p. 308.

A delegation of Federal officers volunteered to try to persuade President Lincoln to relent. They traveled from Libby Prison in Richmond to Washington on parole. There they met with a stern refusal by Lincoln. They then, true to their parole, returned to their prison.

In addition to his refusal to exchange Southern prisoners for Northern ones, Lincoln saw to it that the Southern prisoners were placed in the Great Lakes and the Chesapeake Bay areas where unimpeded winds have full play on those exposed. Many were denied blankets, clothing, medical aid, and decent food. There are records of Northern doctors assigned to the camps who boasted of the Southern prisoners they had killed with their treatments. Most Southern prisoners were placed under Black guards.<sup>6</sup>

The Black stranger was enlisted in the Northern armies wholesale. The Haitian experience was ignored. Forgotten were the French and British renegades of yesteryear who were shot for leading red strangers against the American people.

Blacks were uniformed, armed, and led against Christian people. White renegades were placed in charge and were supposedly responsible for their conduct. However, the general policy of the Federal Army was not to punish offenders for offenses committed against the captive peoples.<sup>7</sup>

### Custer and Mosby

Successfully operating against the supply lines of the Union Army were Mosby's Rangers. This band was a regularly enlisted and constituted part of the Confederate Army. One of his opponents was General George Custer of Little Big Horn fame. General Custer was made to appear the fool time after time by Mosby's raids.

Determining to use forceful measures against Mosby, he ordered the hanging of all of Mosby's men taken prisoner. General Grant backed the orders of his subordinate officer, by writing "Hang them without trial."

"Two horsemen rode ... dragging ... a 17 year old school boy of Front Royal, Henry C. Rhodes. This boy ... was almost unconscious when his fellow townspeople saw him. ... he scar-

<sup>6</sup> "Thou mayest not set a stranger over thee." Deut 17:15

<sup>7</sup> Had the establishment been ruled by Christians the arming of Black strangers would not have been permitted.



cely recognized his widowed mother when she rushed in ... and tried to free him. ...

"This execution, too, was recorded by an eyewitness: 'Rhodes was ... dragged in plain sight of his agonized relatives to the open field north of our town, where one man volunteered to do the killing ...'

"The first four ... victims had been shot, not hanged. Now the method of slaughter was changed. 'Well do I remember the picture: Overby, with head erect, defiant ... And as they moved off the band played a dirge ...' Another resident reported 'They bore themselves like heroes ... One of them a splendid specimen of manhood - tall, well-knit frame, and a head of black, wavy hair floating in the wind. He looked like a knight. While I was looking at them, General Custer, at the head of his division, rode by. He was dressed in a splendid suit of silk velvet, his saddle bow bound in silver or gold. ... He was distinguished looking with his yellow locks resting upon his shoulders.'"

"Repeatedly they were asked the location of Mosby's headquarters and each time Overby, spokesman ... shook his raven locks. 'We cannot tell that,' ... Promise of freedom brought no change in his answer. ... ropes were adjusted around their necks, Carter asked to pray. ... Overby remained erect beside him. Just before they were hoisted on horse back and the horses whipped from beneath them, the Georgian spoke in a defiant tone - one sentence, uttered through gritted teeth: 'Mosby'll hang ten of you for every one of us.' Whips cracked on the words."<sup>8</sup>

Mosby hanged Custer's men in retaliation. This brought a stop to Custer's murderous acts against soldiers.

Captain Frank Myers of Colonel White's Battalion relates the story of finding on the banks of the Potomac a large area covered with skulls and bones said to be Southern PWs dispatched by their guards on the way to Northern PW camps.<sup>9</sup>

8 *Ranger Mosby*, Virgil Carrington Jones, 1944, Chapel Hill, NC, University of NC Press. p. 208-210.

9 *The Comanchees*, Capt. Frank M. Myers, Kelly, Piet & Co, Baltimore, 1871.

Burying the dead has been a traditional Christian ritual.<sup>10</sup> The bodies of the Confederate dead at Sharpsburg and Gettysburg lay unburied within the Union lines until the stench became a public health matter. Only then were they buried. The Union Army treated its own men no better. At Cold Harbor, where nine thousand Union soldiers died in twenty minutes, Union burial parties didn't search for most of the bodies until the war was over. "Non-burial" of Christians is another mark of the stranger.

### Burning of Chambersburg

A Confederate general determined that burning the Union town of Chambersburg, Maryland might stop the continuous and senseless burnings in the South, and especially, the Shenandoah Valley a few miles to the south of the town. Appeals to Law, honor, and mercy had had no effect on the high command of the Federal armies.

When ordered to apply the torch, one of his own officers, Col. William E. Peters of the 21st Virginia Cavalry, flatly disobeyed. He refused, even as a retaliatory measure, to wage war upon defenseless citizens - women and children. Colonel Peters was promptly placed under arrest for direct disobedience of orders, but prudently, was never brought to trial since he had not broken The Law, and would not have been found guilty by Christians. The burning of Chambersburg took place anyway, but brought no relief from the systematic destruction wrought by the Union armies. A moment's thought reveals the reason.

Custer stopped hanging Mosby's men because his own command was hurt as a direct consequence of Mosby's retaliation. The burning of the Southland was not stopped by the burning of Chambersburg because the ruling powers directing the destruction by the Union armies cared no more for Chambersburg and its people than they did for the South. They cared nothing about the victims resulting from the burning of Atlanta, Charleston, the Valley, or Chambersburg. They cared nothing for the prisoners dying in Libby prison or Andersonville, or in any of the Northern prisons.

After having gone to the trouble and expense of establishing a media to unleash the holocaust, and paying thousands to a John Brown to incite the people to war, they cared nothing for the

10 "There are things ... we ought to do in common to all men ... not to let any one lie unburied. ... treat those that are esteemed our enemies with moderation; ... nay, farther, he forbids us to spoil those that have been slain in war." Against Aphon 2:30



mountains of bodies heaped upon each other, Union or Confederate.

There are as many Christians in the North as in the South. The Law is ingrained in the very fabric of their being. Christians of their own free will never countenance such conduct unless made to feel that such a course is right; that they are dealing with someone outside the Law. The fact that such things did take place, not as isolated incidents, but as a general pattern, furnishes proof that non-Christians directed the acts and shaped the opinions that made these things possible.

Money rules through agents, propaganda, and governments. It does not recognize Christian Law. The lawless international money powers could not recognize the supremacy of the Christian Law. This refusal to acknowledge Christian Law is itself manifest proof of the strangers' rule.

### Auction Houses And The Dragon

Looting was accepted policy. It was a perk that went with the job and was tolerated at the very top.

Ships would bring supplies up the Rappahannock River to the Union Army at Fredericksburg. Returning empty, they would tie up at the private docks of any of the plantations on the Rappahannock River and throw out a protective screen of armed sailors while the rest of the ship's company would search tobacco barns for hogsheads of tobacco, the money crop, or other valuable produce.

Finishing this, they would then focus attention on the houses. These they would strip, loading wagons with portraits, silver, furniture, and window hangings, and would return to the wharf and load up. The ship would then sail to Washington where it would off-load the loot to be sold at auction.

In Washington two great auction houses were open around the clock. Goods were off-loaded from ships arriving from all parts of the South, while wagons arrived overland in a steady stream. The sound of auctioneer's voices droned on and on as uninspected wagon lots containing items made cheap by their glut, were bought sight unseen for resale elsewhere.

They entered the home of my ancestor, Maj. William Hoskins of "The Dragon" on the Dragon Run. The Dragon was almost ten miles from the Rappahannock, far back in King and Queen County.

Hoskins' mother was very old, sick, and bedridden. The sailors pulled her out of bed onto the floor and ripped open the mattress looking for loot that might be hidden there. Wagons were brought to the door and everything of value was taken to a distant wharf to be loaded. When fully loaded, the ships cast off, leaving piles of household goods unable to be transported for lack of space.

### The Knapsack And The Red Flag

At the plantation of my mother's family at Kelly's Ford in northern Virginia, on the line between Culpeper County and Fauquier, everything that could possibly be transported was loaded onto confiscated wagons and the lot taken along with the regiments. This was not an isolated occurrence. Scores of regiments came through. Each regiment did the same and each time they garnered less and less. Toward the end even the chairs, beds, kitchen utensils, and children's toys were gone.

At that time, the wives and children of the scattered family had refugeeed to Kelly's Ford and there were over 40 of them present. There were over 50 slaves there called "contraband" that had not been taken prisoner and carried off to provide slave labor for the invading armies.

My great-grandfather was away on a business trip to Fredericksburg where he owned a woolen mill, Kelly, Tackert, and Ford, which made gray cloth for Confederate uniforms.

A Union regiment came through going South. There was only enough food remaining to take care of the family and the slaves for a week. The rest had been taken earlier. The soldiers took this food and that which was not needed was poured from containers into a pile on the floor, and salt and molasses poured over it to make it unusable. Off the regiment marched, laughing, with chickens and geese impaled on bayonets. There was one Union soldier who stayed behind.

He came up to my great-grandmother and said "Mrs. Kelly, I'm ashamed of what my comrades did. Here is my knapsack which I filled with all the food I could. I hope it will help until Mr. Kelly gets home." The contents of that knapsack, carefully rationed, helped feed 90 people for three days.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>11</sup> My Uncle Thompson told me that soldier's name before he died. I've forgotten it. Perhaps some family member or neighbor of the family will remember so that I can include it in the next edition of this book.



The story doesn't end here.

President Davis invited certain citizens of the Confederacy to Richmond to show them the workings of the government and the war effort. The tour included the Richmond forts, the naval yard, Tredegar Arsenal and Iron Works, and one of the trips was to Belle Island, which was in the middle of the James River under the present Lee Bridge. This was where enlisted Union prisoners were kept.

Granville Kelly was in the group being taken around by President Davis when a Union prisoner rushed past the guard and stopped in front of him and said; "Mr. Kelly, you don't know me, but I'm the one who left the knapsack full of food for your family. If there is anything you can do to get me out of here I certainly would appreciate it."

My great-grandfather said to him "I know exactly who you are and I want to tell you that I and my family are indebted to you."

He then walked over to President Davis and explained the matter to him. President Davis issued orders to have the man paroled immediately, an act which may have saved his life since Lincoln had discontinued the exchange of prisoners by then.

After the war, when times were so hard, the soldier would journey to Kelly's Ford at harvest time and help gather in the crops.

### The Red Flag

The citizen militias in Tidewater Virginia were in a continuous state of alert to try to drive off looting parties landing from ships. Another grandfather, Judge Muscoe Garnett of Ben Lomond below Hoskins Creek, near Dunnsville, had seven sons in the service of his country.<sup>12</sup> He was called out in the middle of the night to repel another landing party. Taking his shotgun he joined his local old-men and boys militia company. Locating the landing party, shots were exchanged. He volunteered to try to parley with the enemy and persuade them to leave the neighborhood. He put his handkerchief on a stick, stood away from a large oak, and waved his improvised flag to attract attention.

Immediately, every rifle of the Federal force opened fire on him and several of the bullets passed through his clothes, tore bark from the tree and rained leaves and branches on his head as he scampered

<sup>12</sup> Three died in the war and lie buried together in the family cemetery at Ben Lomond, near Dunnsville, Virginia. Frank, Sgt., age 17, 9th Va. Cavalry, "The bravest of them all"; David, Captain, surgeon; and William, Lt., 55th Va. Inf.

back behind cover. It was a close call. This was the first time a truce flag had been met with such a hostile reception. Later, while discussing "Yankee perfidy" he pulled out the handkerchief to wipe his forehead. Everyone broke out laughing. His handkerchief was red. Inadvertently, he had waved a red flag at the looters - the flag of "no surrender - no prisoners taken alive."

### Wartime Conditions Behind Union Lines

Southern cities on the Mississippi falling into the hands of the invaders suffered particularly when warehouses were broken open and expensive bales of cotton were carted to the nearest river to be loaded on ships. This was "big money" that went to commanding officers. The soldiers themselves had to be satisfied with what they could wring from the conquered populations. Cattle were gathered into herds and these were driven north to market.

Behind Union lines was the lawless zone. There was no police force, military or otherwise, that interfered with the soldiers' depredations. They could do and take anything they liked. A protest risked instant execution by the looter. Protests registered with occupation officials seldom achieved satisfaction.

At Kelly's Ford, Virginia, the crossroads of the invasion, everything that could happen, did. No one was ever known to have been held accountable. Weekly, another passing regiment would gather the family, questioning them as to where non-existent valuables were hidden. After a hundred rough interrogations, followed by hundreds of men stomping through the house, breaking furniture, searching, there was nothing left. Denials were not believed. They believed the newspaper stories about hidden Southern wealth. They dug in the yards and in the fields to discover supposedly hidden caches.<sup>13</sup> Flower gardens were dug up, the floors of the chicken houses pulled out, even empty pigsties were dug into. The rule of the day was theft, rape, and brutality accompanied by mean petty acts done solely to inflict suffering on women and children, or to gain a laugh. When nothing was left, shoes were taken from children's feet so that the treasure hunter could boast a prize.

Starvation descended on the land while well-fed invaders were whipped by the media into a frenzy to continue the search for non-existent gold in the empty pot at the end of the rainbow.

<sup>13</sup> In 1935, a colored worker brought in a corroded silver candlestick that had been buried in the field for safe keeping and lost.



Lynchburg filled to capacity with refugees who, after filling spare rooms, barns and stables, were then displaced by thousands of arriving wounded, and were forced across the James River into the wilderness of Amherst County adjoining Lynchburg. These wretched people lived in tents if they were lucky, rude shelters if they were skillful, and if they weren't, in the open, exposed to rain and snow - wet, cold and miserable. These poor people had abandoned their homes and everything they owned to come to live there, short of food and exposed to the elements. Anything was preferable to being exposed to the mercy of the lawless invading hordes who had been told all sorts of atrocity stories, and who were bent on revenge on those they were told were responsible, or on their hapless families.

### The War Ends

All wars end. This one did, too. The flush of enthusiasm, the bands, parades, and flags, Pickett's gallant charge across the killing fields at Gettysburg, the stout defense of Richmond by the young sons of the Richmond Light Infantry Blues, "The Little Boy Blues," the children's defense of Petersburg, the dashing Stuart, the quiet Jackson, almost all lay dead. Of the Army of Northern Virginia, only twenty thousand were left to surrender to 200,000 men of the Army of the Potomac. The South was one vast blackened and charred cemetery. The war was over. It ended in a whimper.

### A Copperhead Kills Lincoln

Lincoln left Washington, sailed down the Bay and up the James to Richmond. With his entourage, he walked the smoldering deserted streets up to the recently vacated White House of the Confederacy. A Richmond lady was found to guide his party through the building. In the garden in back of the house, one of Lincoln's party was observed to step on a flower and grind it into the ground with his heel when he thought he wasn't being seen. It sent a chill through the hostess. The war was not over for these victors she was guiding.

Back in Washington, plans were being laid by one of Mr. Lincoln's own creations, a copperhead, who was the well-known and publicly acclaimed actor, John Wilkes Booth. He and his small group of followers plotted to kill Lincoln on his return. There had been

attempts before. In August 1862, while riding near his home a rifle shot from a wood only 150 yards distant almost hit him. A bomb was left in a bag in his room. A train in which he was riding had to be stopped to repair rails sabotaged in the effort to kill him. It was symptomatic. Lincoln was probably the most hated president ever to reside in Washington. "By late 1863 the danger from frustrated Lincoln-haters became so intense that Lincoln was forced to accept a military escort."<sup>14</sup> He is said to have received over 10,000 letters threatening his life. The man had injured so many in his four year reign that it seemed only a matter of time before one of the injured found himself close to Lincoln and able to repay in kind.

As a Lincoln biographer said, "Why should not Lincoln himself become a victim of the war he had chosen to wage against the South, a total war, a war without rules or mercy?"<sup>15</sup>

John Wilkes Booth and his little band of six waited. Booth was to take care of the president while his party took care of the president's cabinet.

Booth was a talented actor. He earned \$20,000 a year, a royal sum in that day, playing before packed houses. He occupied the place in society that is today held by the top Hollywood movie stars. His name was on the lips of almost everyone in big city society. Heads turned when he walked down the street. He was really not what the establishment thought of when thinking about a potential Lincoln executioner.

The war was over. The crowds cheered and the bands played. Booth had nothing to gain and everything to lose by carrying out his plan to execute Lincoln. Reward or punishment played no part in his decision. Booth considered himself an agent of Providence. He believed that Lincoln and his group of conspirators were evil and should be punished for starting a war against their own kind, burning the South, killing hundreds of thousands of soldiers on both sides, jailing United States citizens without trial, mistreating prisoners of war, and many other crimes. A biographer says, "Booth, speaking as a loyal citizen ... referred to himself as 'of the North'."<sup>16</sup> Often, when the premonition of death comes to a person, he leaves a message so that the reasons for what he did that brought about his death are

<sup>14</sup> *The Lincoln Murder Conspiracies*, William Hanchett, University of Illinois Press, Chicago, 1983, p. 24

<sup>15</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 34

<sup>16</sup> *Ibid.*, 40



not misunderstood. Booth was no different. He left such a letter to be read later. It said:

"The very nomination of Abraham Lincoln four years ago spoke plain war ... In a foreign war, I too could say, 'Country, right or wrong.' But in a struggle such as ours (where the brother tries to pierce the brother's heart), for God's sake choose the right...

"I thought then, as now, that the Abolitionists were the only traitors in the land ... not because they wished to abolish slavery, but on account of the means they have ever endeavored to use to effect that abolition ... (for) the South it is either extermination or slavery for themselves ..."17

Lincoln visited a theater to see a play. The theater was Booth's stomping ground. Booth left his box and went to the one occupied by the president. Slipping into the rear of the president's box he fired at the seated figure. The shot went true. Booth jumped from the box to the stage, turned and shouted Virginia's motto; "*Sic Semper Tyrannis!*" Thus always to tyrants! He turned and fled.

It was Booth who fired the shot. But it might have been any one of hundreds who thirsted for the opportunity. Booth considered himself fortunate that Providence delivered Lincoln into his hand rather than into the hand of someone else. It is always frightening to one who has outlawed himself by causing the undeserved deaths of others, to find himself in the same room with one who upholds God's Law. He never knows whether or not that person will be his executioner. It might have been a guard, a ticket salesman, a battle-scarred veteran returned from the front, a member of his own government, anyone, male or female.

The one who had been hired to start the war had served his purpose and was dead. But, he was expendable. Those who hired him, the ones who planned the war and had footed the bill, safely counted their war profits behind their paper curtain, unscathed by the butchery and suffering going on.

The people who paid with their blood in the wars had not yet learned of the existence of those instigators, much less learned how to deal with them.

17 Ibid. p. 32

The establishment had paid for it, now was the time to collect its pound of flesh. There was a great deal of profit still to be wrung from the prostrate South.

### Identifying The Establishment

There are those who obey God's Law and those who don't. Those who obey are the Lawful. Those who disobey are outlawed by God. God has specified the outlaw's punishment. The Phineas priests administer the judgment, and God rewards them with a covenant of an everlasting priesthood. However, the Phineas priest must know what the game is if he is to play.

The atrocity committed against the South was a business affair. It was provoked by the bankers, the operators of the usury system who financed John Brown, and also by the radical abolitionists who wanted to confiscate and free the slaves without compensation, a blatant case of theft of private property. The war was incited by their media. By them the South was damned and its people earmarked for death. The whole time, it was the banker-directed media which smoothed the descent into the Reconstruction holocaust.

The weak defense the Southern people managed to scrape together for protection was scattered, like a man defending against a thousand stinging killer bees. They fought one bee at a time rather than setting fire to the bee hive. They did this because they didn't know that their tormentors came from a single source.



### Southern Reconstruction

During the war, no newspaper in the South was banned or censored. In the North, scores were banned and all were subject to censorship.

The policy of the victorious Union armies was to immediately censor every newspaper that fell into their hands. *The Daily Arus* of Memphis was taken over and put into the hands of correspondents of *The New York Tribune* and *The New York Herald*.<sup>1</sup> In Richmond, *The Enquirer*, *The Examiner*, and *The Sentinel* were closed. *The Evening Whig* was allowed to publish as the voice of the occupying forces.<sup>2</sup>

This media told their readers that though the South had been defeated, they remained defiant. They were still the same evil people and their defeat in the war had taught them nothing. These people and their region must be "reconstructed."

The Republican congress met in rump session and disfranchised all "rebels." Then, they voted to give the vote to the Blacks. Then, Blacks could vote - Whites couldn't.<sup>3</sup> In the rush to implement their policies the Republican Congress neglected to have the 14th Amendment to the Constitution giving Blacks the right to vote legally ratified. It has never been legally ratified to this day.

When the Blacks were franchised, the banking interests sent representatives south to organize the Blacks and direct their voting. These bank agents were called "carpetbaggers." Their function was to control and instruct the Blacks in voting.

The U.S. Army, under the direction of the Republican president and congress, was ordered to divide the South into military districts and see to it that the Black/carpetbagger rule was installed and remained installed. They were to be protected against any uprising by the conquered Southern Whites.

The conquered Black-ruled South then became part of the radical Republican Party. On the national level, this strategy gave the Republican Party the northeast states plus the captive southern

1 *Side Lights On Southern History*, Mary H. Flournoy, Dietz Press, Richmond, Virginia, 1932, p. 114.

2 *Ibid.*, p. 118

3 (1) "Thou mayest not set a stranger over thee, which is not thy brother." Deut 17:15. (2) "Their nobles shall be of themselves, and their governor shall precede from the midst of them." Jer 30:21.

block of states. Together, these out-voted the West and ruled the United States.

The economic plan installed is almost the exact plan used later against South Africa after the Boer War, and still later against Germany after World War II. Modified, it was used still later against Rhodesia, and will probably be used once again against South Africa in future years. It has been uniformly successful and should be studied to discover its weak links.

### Blacks In Power

The advent of Black rule over Southern Whites, protected by Federal bayonets, brought a reenactment of what had gone before in San Domingo. A host of problems surfaced that were unknown in the North because they were not reported, any more than the problems of San Domingo had been reported in France. They were very real problems.

Blacks had a voting monopoly. They voted at carpetbagger direction and voted the carpetbaggers and themselves into the offices of legislators, judges, law enforcement officers, and congressmen. The rule was: the Blacks could vote anything they wanted for themselves as long as they voted certain things for those who employed the carpetbaggers.

The Blacks enjoyed kicking the Whites around. This was permissible. The law and the courts were run by Blacks. Recourse to law was a farce. It was reported:

"Among the poor, the White women of the farms taking their produce to market traveled in large companies as protection against rape ... Negroes who had criminally attacked White women, tried and sent to the penitentiary, were turned loose after a few days ..."<sup>4</sup>

A reign of terror descended on the South. Backing the Federal troops were newly formed Black militia companies. Armed, arrogant, and dangerous, the Blacks swaggered down the streets, forcing their former masters off the sidewalks. An unending joke was for the Black soldiers to force an old master against a wall and spit tobacco juice in his face. If he raised his hand to protect his eyes from the sting of the tobacco juice it was considered assault. It then depended on what the jokesters wished to do about this "assault."

4 *Tragic Era*, Claude G. Bowers, Houghton Mifflin Co, Cambridge, Mass. 1929, p. 308



The former master could be beaten, arrested, thrown in prison and heavily fined, or shot down.

They made wholesale arrests on all sorts of fabricated excuses. Trials were mockeries. Juries were packed. Business was all but suspended. All was watched over by officials of the U.S. government who stepped in for their share.

### The Serious Looting Begins

A great deal of thought and study went into the disposition of what remained of Southern wealth. All this, of course, was done without consulting the owners.

Thad Stevens estimated that there were 455,000,000 conquered acres. If every estate worth \$10,000 and comprising 200 acres were confiscated, and 40 acres were given to every adult Black, this would take up 40,000,000 acres leaving 415,000,000 acres. This remainder could then be sold at \$10 an acre and the entire war debt could be paid and the South properly punished at the same time. This was the thinking at the higher level.

On the lower level, matters were more forthright. Petty graft and payoffs were the order of the day. Besides the standard free whiskey, cigars, women, and petty cash funds, there were countless petty contracts voted to benefit deserving parties. A case in point:

In Columbia, South Carolina the carpetbag legislature ordered 5,000 copies of a cheap little pamphlet from a deserving and friendly publisher and paid \$45,788 for the work.<sup>5</sup>

A Negro politician was employed to repair a \$100 bridge. He submitted a bill for \$900. He was then paid with state scrip worth 10¢ on the dollar, but redeemable for taxes at \$1.00 on the dollar. He received \$9,000 in scrip in payment for the repairs on a \$100 bridge. The White taxpayers of the State had to pay this additional \$9,000 of state indebtedness. Taxes were accordingly increased by the Black legislature.

Typical was an incident that happened in Arkansas. When first occupied, there was \$319,000 in the treasury. The state was eventually returned to its people \$15,700,000 in debt. Most counties were on the verge of bankruptcy. Taxes on the native Whites were so high as to be unpayable. The resulting tax sales brought out massive purchases by northern corporations. These corporations

<sup>5</sup> Ibid., p. 346

had been formed to do business in the South. They bought land at 2¢ to 50¢ an acre and their local carpetbagger agents paid the legislature to vote them tax exemption.

Little Rock was unpaved and dreary. The new dwellings were built by those who handled railroad bonds. For payment of only a few dollars the Black legislators of both state and counties could be prevailed upon to vote any sort of legislation desired.

The Arkansas Speaker of the House prevailed upon fellow legislators of one county to issue \$100,000 worth of bonds for a railroad of which he was president. He took these bonds to "a friendly banker" in New York willing to give him cash for 80% of the value of the bonds, provided he could find another bank to guarantee payment of bond interest for five years.

The Speaker then deposited \$30,000 with a bank to guarantee the 6% bond interest for five years - a no-risk deal to the second bank. The first bank then gave him the \$80,000 that he wanted, and the first bank was able to sell the \$80,000 worth of bonds for \$100,000, a profit of \$20,000. The Speaker received \$80,000, less the \$30,000 deposited, which left him \$50,000. \$50,000 was a great deal of money in those days. The carpetbagger decided that he had worked all that he wanted to work in the South and so he took the \$50,000, deserted his New York employers, and absconded to Colorado. There is no record of anyone bothering to trace him. Arkansas was saddled with another \$100,000 indebtedness with nothing to show for it.<sup>6</sup>

Monopoly tariffs were passed. All Southern commerce had to be done with the North at many times the costs of prior years. Differential railroad rates were instituted. These rates were still in force when I was a boy. It cost much more to ship goods from Lynchburg to New York than it did from New York to Lynchburg.

The classic of the age was the railroad deal. For a "fee" paid to each legislator in a state legislature, a bill could be passed for the state to issue and guarantee bonds to build a "needed" railroad. The bonds were issued, taken to a New York bank which paid perhaps \$200,000 for \$1,000,000 worth of bonds. The bank paid their carpetbagger agent his fee, whatever it was, and then sold the bonds for \$1,000,000. A profit of \$800,000 (less the carpetbagger fee).

<sup>6</sup> Ibid., p. 431



The \$200,000 was given to a railroad company to build track. \$100,000 slipped between the cracks somewhere and \$100,000 actually was used to build the railroad.

The railroad was then given track, which increased its worth by \$100,000 without doing anything to deserve it. On this new track they set their own rates without dictation from anyone. The taxpayers were saddled with another \$1,000,000 debt, several millions in interest, and had almost nothing to show for it.

The railroad scam was the standard ploy of the day. Versions of it are used even now. The classic example that involved Grant, president of the United States, was the *Crédit Mobilier*.

### **Crédit Mobilier Of America**

The *Crédit Mobilier* was a construction company connected with the Union Pacific Railroad. It had originally been chartered as the "Pennsylvania Fiscal Agency" in 1859.

In March 1864, control was secured by Thomas Durant of the Union Pacific. He planned to utilize it as a construction company, and also for other things he had in mind.

From the United States government, the state governments, and first mortgage bonds issued to the construction company, \$50,863,172.05 had been paid into the company. In addition, the company received in stock, income bonds, and land grant bonds another \$23,000,000. These were colossal sums in that day.

The *Crédit Mobilier* paid fantastic dividends to those who owned the stock. Oakes Ames, a congressman from Massachusetts and promoter of *Crédit Mobilier*, was accused of distributing *Mobilier* shares among congressmen and senators to influence their vote.<sup>7</sup>

The stockholders of the Union Pacific Railroad and *Crédit Mobilier* were identical. The idea was to pay all the assets of the Union Pacific Railroad, including land grants, bonds, and everything that could be transferred, to the *Crédit Mobilier* - and let the Union Pacific go broke, an empty shell drained of all its assets.

The stock had been distributed among deserving congressmen. To be legal, they had to pay for it, but, they only had to pay the declared value of the stock and the declared value wasn't much. The stock was worth many times more. A single dividend could pay for the entire cost of the stock. One could buy the stock, take the

dividend, pay for the stock, and there was no cost to the buyer. Everything was strictly legal.

The fact that there was an actual investigation does not prove that "the system" worked. It proved that the system had determined to dump the Grant administration for reasons which will soon become apparent.

The investigation expanded to involve the vice-president, vice-president elect, committee chairmen, and countless party leaders. Congressman Ames then did the unpardonable. He turned state's evidence. In the cases of James A. Garfield and "Pig Iron" Kelley, not one dime had been paid for their stock. With the proceeds from the dividends Oakes Ames marked the accounts "paid in full."

Ames listened to the last day's hearing sitting between the chaplains of the House and the Senate. The whole affair was a whitewash. As one would expect where the legislators, the presidency, and the courts had been media-selected, almost every one was guilty and almost every one was exonerated. The media used the hearing to throw mud at the Grant administration and pull it down. Ames, the informer, died a few days later.

### **Jesse James**

The Republican Party, in the many state houses it controlled, was uniformly corrupt. It was this way all over the country, not just in the South. The GOP had given 200,000,000 acres to the railroads - all free. It increased the net asset value of the railroads enormously, at taxpayers' expense. It was a time of land grabs, monopolies, tariffs, and taxes.

The Midwest was hit almost as hard as the South. Farms, mine-claims, water sources were condemned and taken over to be given to the railroads. These dispossessed people who lost or who were in danger of losing farms hated the railroads and the banks that owned them. Besides the railroad takeovers, the rest of the people were threatened by bank foreclosures brought about by the usury system. The war was now over and no new money, except loot from a defeated South, was reaching the economic blood stream of America. For the little man, the occupation Reconstruction time was harder than the war. Hard times were here. They saw their tormentors, and they saw those who fearlessly fought them.

<sup>7</sup> E/B 14th Ed., Vol #6, p. 656.



For many, the war never ended. Jesse James was one of the many men in grey who went in under a white flag to surrender in May or June 1865 and was shot and seriously wounded. He escaped. Many who surrendered didn't. His brother, Frank, had also been shot down and wounded in Kentucky by Union soldiers after the war was over.

Jesse's father was a Baptist preacher. He founded several congregations and was instrumental in founding a seminary. Jesse lived at home for four years after the war while his wound healed and was baptized at Kearney Baptist Church.

At the beginning of the war, there had been a large number of pro-Union men in Missouri. Cole Younger's father was one of them. The war changed that. The invading Union armies tended to treat all Missourians as rebels subject to being handled as such. Cole Younger's father was wiped out by looters.

When the war ended, most Missourians were of like minds. The pro-Union doubters of pre-war days had been hammered into being staunchly anti-establishment by war's end. Those who descended on the state to establish banks and railroads were establishment men, and many of them continued doing what they had done during the war, but now they did it under the protection of the United States Army.

A bank robbery took place in a nearby town. Felix Bradley, who was in jail for sundry offenses was removed by an establishment mob and hanged because it was thought that he might be a friend of the robbers.

Thomas Little was accused and arrested. Affidavits of prominent citizens swearing he was with them at the time of the crime were ignored. "Little was given a mock trial and executed," ... "After this legal lynching people began to protect those accused of crimes."<sup>8</sup>

A horse that had belonged to Jesse James was identified. Jesse had sold this animal to someone else prior to the robbery. A heavily armed group of carpetbaggers rode up to the James residence and demanded that Jesse be surrendered to them. Jesse was not going to take a chance with people who had shot him once before after he had surrendered, and who had been murdering prisoners in their power.

He shot through the door and wounded one, and stepped out on the porch firing at the rest. His attackers scattered. Jesse rode off

8 Jesse James Was His Name, Settle, Univ Missouri Press, 1966, p. 37.

followed by a single rider. Jesse saw him and turned and shot him out of the saddle, and Jesse was an outlaw from that time on.

Banks printed and issued their own paper money. They would only exchange gold for that paper money. They might discount money from another bank in the same town or the next town by as much as 50% or more if they could get away with it. It was robbery, but people had to have money to pay Reconstruction taxes to keep from losing their land. It was the law. Bankers were looked upon as being of the same breed as prostitutes. Most had served in the Union Army and usury banking protected by the occupation army was their reward. The local people were their legal prey. Railroads and railroad people fell in the same category as bankers.

The first peacetime bank and railroad robberies in history began to take place by men made desperate by conquerors who forced them to live any way they could.

The James boys were among many who raided banks and trains which they perceived to be the foe most vulnerable. It was a Robin Hood affair. "We kill only in self defense," and "We rob the rich and give to the poor."<sup>9</sup>

They robbed the enemy, kept part of the money, and divided the rest among the most needy of those being persecuted by the establishment. The people thought of them as their protectors and reciprocated wholeheartedly. They hid them, fed them, and watched over them. The media railed at these men calling them "outlaws," "depraved criminals" or worse, but it had no effect on the people. They knew what the establishment was doing to them, and they knew who was looking after them.

In robbing trains:

"The hands of each male passenger were examined to determine if he was a workingman ... they did not want to rob workingmen or ladies, but ... the plug hat gentlemen were what they sought."<sup>10</sup>

Railroad agents were sent after the James boys. They were detected and shot down one after another. Federal marshals were sent; troops were sent. Rewards amounting to thousands of dollars were posted everywhere where a desperate and needy people could

9 Kansas City Times, Oct 15, 1873

10 Jesse James Was His Name, p. 13



read them. All to no avail. Not a single one of the thousands turned them in for money. They knew the face of the enemy.

"Ever since the war closed, and left them outlawed, they have borne themselves like men who have only to die, and have determined to do it without flinching. For the last two or three years the whole country has rung with their daring and hardihood. These four or five men absolutely defied the whole power of Missouri. They have laughed at her Governor ... They have captured and pillaged whole railroad trains ... They have dashed into towns and cleaned out banking houses in broad daylight ... Detectives, who have undertaken to ferret them out have been slain. Sheriff's posses have been routed. The whole State authorities defied and spit upon by this half-dozen brilliant, bold, indefatigable roughriders.<sup>11</sup>

Then, after 14 long years, the establishment tried their oldest trick - assassination. Pretending friendship, the establishment's assassin crept up behind Jesse James and shot him in the back.

The people wrote a song that commemorated the event, one line of which was:

"The dirty little coward who shot Mr. Howard."

"Howard" was Jesse's assumed name.

It was years before the media was able to convince America that Jesse James and the many like him who were raiding establishment banks and railroads were outlaws and not heroes. A persecuted people looked on them as their own Phineas heroes. When Jesse died, they lost a champion and his passing was mourned by the thousands who had cheered him on.

### The Klan

"In the West, vigilante committees were formed ... in the South, the Klan ... for the protection of women, property, civilization itself."<sup>12</sup>

There is so much misinformation written about the Klan that a few words should be devoted to its short history.

The Klan was organized in Tennessee. For a brief time it succeeded in maintaining the peace and was rapidly copied in the rest

<sup>11</sup> *The weekly Caucasian*, quoted in *Jesse James Was His Name*, p. 71.

<sup>12</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 309

of the South. The leadership of this police organization was offered to General Lee. His health would not permit the effort, and so he recommended General Forrest.

The new leader was a strait-laced man. "Forrest neither drank nor swore."<sup>13</sup> He was known to have dismissed an officer for immorality. On Sundays, his tent would be converted into a church. Morally, he was superior.

The official story is this: On Christmas Eve, 1865, six penniless veterans met in a law office in Pulaski, Tennessee. They planned a costume party. Ghosts were to be the central theme. On the way to the party, as a lark, they went out and frightened some Blacks who had been causing trouble. They succeeded beyond anyone's hopes. The idea caught on. In 1867, the Ku Klux<sup>14</sup> Klan was officially organized. Villainies committed by Blacks and unsupervised soldiers were dealt with by men in Klan regalia. This resulted in a sudden cessation of depredations. Cowered Blacks and cautious soldiers on private looting expeditions suddenly started looking over their shoulders.

The Klan also attracted the notice of the media. It was just what they were looking for. This media attention began a new chapter in Klan activity within months of its inception.

### The Media Uses The Klan

The media had been in a quandary. Their instructions had been to keep the pressure on the South. This was hard to do. The villainous armies of the South were no more. They were unable to picture the kind, gentle General Lee as a ruthless Simon Legree, whip in hand; he was now a worn out old man, a college president in Lexington, Virginia. It was not believable to picture President Jefferson Davis plotting to poison entire Northern communities; he was a closely guarded sick scarecrow of his former self, imprisoned in a cold damp hole in the side of an earthen bank at Fortress Monroe. His guards had been told not to be gentle. They weren't. The less said the better.

Any of these stories that leaked from the South elicited sympathy, not the needed abuse. For these reasons, the emergence of the the Klan was a godsend. For the first time the media had a whipping boy, someone to blame for all the troubles, a group that

<sup>13</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 310

<sup>14</sup> Originally the Greek word "kuklos," meaning "the circle."



everyone could hate so that there would be a reason to continue to keep Federal troops in the South, troops who would keep the Republican Blacks in office.

"The North, reading its family paper, was told that there was no justice for loyalists in South Carolina."<sup>15</sup>

The Klan became front page material. The theme hammered home was "Southerners expound the law of hate." Within weeks of its emergence, it became a Southern phenomenon. Every Negro Saturday night razor fight, every crime, every domestic disturbance was blamed on the Klan.

When there was no crime, the Loyal League sent their own members out in Klan regalia to commit atrocities to be blamed on the Klan. These well publicized outrages were used as a pretext to organize Negro militias to protect the Blacks and carpetbaggers and push the Whites around. They were also used to produce national anti-Klan laws that were used against everyone in the nation who had something bad to say about Republicans.

General Forrest was presented with a dilemma. He was trying to use the Klan as a Southern police force. But, there was no way at all to respond to the vicious flood of false charges. The South possessed absolutely no friends who could or would take a stand in her defense.

The few dozen Klan successes did not compensate for bad press in the North from the resulting media-smear. Klan-bashing was an ideal way to further persecute the conquered people of the South.

Forrest had no choice. He was apparently beaten. He disbanded the Klan within months of its organization sometime in 1869, ordered all records destroyed, forbade meetings or activity in the name of the Klan, and forbade former members from disclosing any information of Klan activities.

A police force to protect the Southern Whites was still needed as never before. Since a public one was not provided, a private one had to function. It did, but not in the name of the Klan. The South organized, but in no-name organizations. There was no official organization, no records, no membership, and certainly no open membership. Everyone helped in some way. Men patrolled the streets and roads at night. Crime dropped. But, the peace did not

<sup>15</sup> Ibid., p. 345.

last. Violence erupted. Newspaper headlines screamed, "The Klan strikes again!"

The Klan was indeed active. But it was a new Klan, a Klan with an entirely new membership. Its members were radicals, impersonating Klansmen, who worked in close cooperation with the media to furnish atrocity stories. This was a giant step forward in news management.

This outbreak of Klan activity took place in several places throughout the South at once - all minutely covered by the media.

The no-name organizations were from that time at war with this fraudulent Klan, an establishment organization winked at by the occupation officials. Its membership consisted of carpetbaggers, military personnel, and the outlaw element who donned sheets to commit their midnight robbery. Many were the unreported nighttime gun battles between the no-names and the radical nightriders. There were no bodies found, and almost no arrests. Many were the marauders who were uncovered and quietly disappeared. Many were the honest housekeepers as well as the slimy turncoat who just vanished. All records of them just stop. Every Southern family has a family member during that period who just disappeared - usually quietly into a family cemetery at night. There were no newspaper reports of those incidents. The Southerners couldn't report them without retaliation, and the establishment certainly wouldn't. The no-name victories in these midnight affairs were not reported. There were no survivors to report them. Nothing. Just silence.

The hostage issue developed. It was a risky thing if those involved were identified, but it often had to be done. A prominent Southerner would be imprisoned to force his land from him. A hostage was taken in turn. The Southerner was released by a certain date or the hostage was hanged. If the prisoner remained in jail and the hostage was hanged, then, in turn, the prisoner was killed trying to escape. It was a brutal tit for tat, but the false arrests dropped off.

The bogus Klan was the media's best excuse for a whipping boy. It made many things possible. Anti-Klan laws were enacted in 1871-72, three years after the real Klan had been disbanded. Atrocities by the bogus Klan continued to be reported with gusto. They were reported even when there was nothing to report. Truth was no barrier to good reporting. There was a lot of money riding on continued occupation of the South.



### Thumbnail Sketches of Renegades

At the beginning of the Reconstruction, General Sherman wrote to his brother.

"My belief is that to force the enfranchised Negroes as loyal voters on the South will produce riot and ... prolong the war *ad infinitum* ... My army will not fight in that war."<sup>16</sup>

Later Sherman joined wholeheartedly in reconstructing the South. The pay was right and it was his nature.

One who later became governor of North Carolina, W. W. Holden, was president of the Loyal League of North Carolina. He had been a "Whig, Democrat, Secessionist and Unionist, sponsor of colonization and Negro suffrage, Johnsonian and radical, he had veered with the weather."<sup>17</sup> He was pro-White and pro-Black, radical and conservative. The Establishment protected him and he lived to an old age. Like Oliver Cromwell and Cromwell's right hand man, General Monk, he saw nothing wrong with being all things to all men. He said that he had done no wrong. Renegades always say that.

### South Carolina

Governor of South Carolina, Daniel H. Chamberlain, sensing a chance to make political capital, began to speak against abuses. Immediately, the younger generation of voting Whites supported him and the Republicans denounced him.

He then went as a delegate of the Republican Party to the national convention, and from there went on a speaking tour for the national Republican ticket. He spoke against the Whites. His conversion was in doubt.

In the town of Hamburg, a Negro militia company of 80 abused and insulted the community and shot a White man. Refusing to surrender their arms and be sent back to the capitol, they barricaded themselves in a brick building and began shooting at passers-by. A small cannon brought from Augusta routed them out and five were summarily shot.

Chamberlain, renegade-like, called a press conference and called the shooting of the Negro ringleaders a massacre, a report given front page coverage in the northern press. Grant replied in a

<sup>16</sup> Sherman, *Letters* p. 14

<sup>17</sup> *Tragic Era*, p. 313.

letter denouncing the people of South Carolina and referred to the Democrats in Mississippi as achieving by "force & fraud such as would scarcely be credited to savages, much less to Christian people."<sup>18</sup>

### Taxpayers' Committee

In Charleston, 2,000 pieces of real estate were forfeited for taxes. In 19 surrounding counties, 93,293 acres were sold and 343,891 acres went to the tax collector.<sup>19</sup>

A mass meeting petitioned Washington that the taxpayers were excluded from the government, and that there was a constant increase in taxes consuming more than one-half the income, and that those ruling had boasted that the great body of land would be taxed out of the possession of the owners. There was no relief from Washington. This was not news. Grant's government knew exactly what was going on. All of this was planned.

When the committee presented its grievance to President Grant, it is reported:

"Grant listened impatiently to the spokesman, interrupting occasionally with tart reproaches ... had not ... the taxpayers themselves to blame. Had they not refused to amalgamate with the carpetbaggers and the Negroes - refused to affiliate with the Administration Party in South Carolina? In sheer disgust the committee, of as high-minded men as South Carolina had produced, turned from the presidential presence."<sup>20</sup>

Ignored and rebuffed at every turn, the conviction grew that even against impossible odds, the South would have to fight again.

Things got so bad that the *Atlanta News* allowed Whites to publish an editorial demanding White Leagues to organize in every city and hamlet. "We have submitted long enough to indignities, and it is time to meet brute force with brute force." All Whites supporting the Negro party, or the Civil Rights Bill, were relentlessly ostracized. Taxpayers were ready to go against guns or bayonets to keep what little they had left.<sup>21</sup>

Meantime, Black tax collectors appointed by Black legislatures, accompanied by groups of heavily armed carpetbagger agents, went

<sup>18</sup> *The Tragic Era*, p. 507

<sup>19</sup> *Columbia State*, Williams, Aug. 8, 1927.

<sup>20</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 425

<sup>21</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 428



out to collect taxes. Finding no money, they confiscated anything they found of value. Cotton gins had to be built in the deep forest to defeat the cotton tax and treasury taxes. Matters were desperate.

### Taxpayers' Leagues - Mississippi

The Mississippi revolution only began to succeed when taxpayers planned Taxpayers' Leagues in every county. Compared with the tax levies in 1869, the levies in 1871 were four times as great. In 1872 - 8 times, for 1873 - 12 1/2 times, for 1874 - 14 times.<sup>22</sup>

Tax-foreclosure sales the month the taxpayers met were half a million acres. Four-fifths of the town of Greenville had been offered for sale for taxes. Matters progressed even better elsewhere. Most of the best land was being snapped up by northern tax-exempt syndicates to be resold to European immigrants for top dollar.

### Taxes - South Carolina

In 1860, the taxable value of South Carolina was \$490,000,000. The average state and county tax was \$400,000. Deducting the slaves valued at \$174,000,000 leaves \$316,000,000.

By 1870 all values had declined to \$184,000,000. On this deflated amount, taxes were \$2,000,000. State values had been reduced to one-third of that formerly as taxes increased five times.

### Taxes - Louisiana

The propertied class was impoverished. Only five in 100 were not on the verge of ruin. Houses declined 80% in value in four years.

"We are ruined here and to hold property is to be taxed to death by our African communists."<sup>23</sup>

Auctioneers and pawnbrokers of New Orleans were overworked. In the parish of St. Landry alone within two years 821 plantations had gone for taxes.<sup>24</sup> There had been 47,491 tax seizures by the sheriff in New Orleans.

In the North these monstrous conditions were concealed from the people by the press which fed them fabrications of "outrages" on "innocent Blacks" and "loyal men." Every murder was given a

<sup>22</sup> *Cincinnati Commercial*, quoted by McNeilly, p. 238-40.

<sup>23</sup> *NY Times*, January 8, 1873.

<sup>24</sup> *NY Herald*, Oct. 10, 1874

political motive and the victims were usually Negroes, slaughtered by the Whites with impunity. Overtaxed and underprotected, the Whites were imperiled by the incendiary talk of carpetbaggers and newspapers. They lived in terror and women were not safe.

The carpetbag regime determined to disarm the Whites.

"Negro policemen arrested without cause, beating the victim without provocation, and there was no redress ... In June, nearly every steamboat brought heavy shipments of arms for distribution among the Negroes."<sup>25</sup>

In New Orleans, the abused citizenry armed themselves, arose and deposed the carpetbag rule. President Grant sent three men of war and Federal troops to reinstate it. Grant crushed the rising of the people.

The younger Whites who could vote flocked to the Democratic party. The Democrats proclaimed their policy - to employ no Negroes who voted against them, to boycott merchants voting with the opposition, to refuse advances to planters renting land to the radicals, to publish the names of Whites voting the Negro ticket, and to challenge the radical speakers in their meetings.

Grant sent General Sheridan to Louisiana to assume command. General Phil Sheridan hated the South. After restoring the carpet-bagger government, he sent the suggestion to Grant that if he would proclaim the people "banditti" that he would tend to the rest.

Sheridan reported that 2,500 Negroes had been murdered and used that story as an excuse to send troops to Vicksburg to maintain the Black and carpetbag government there.

The radicals, fearing a White revolt, sent handbills to the Blacks in the country to organize, arm, and march on Vicksburg. At daylight, a massive Black army was seen marching on the town. The Whites armed and waited. A horseman rode out and advised them to wait. The blood lust was too great. They came on. A volley followed. A few fell dead. The rest fled.

Another Black army was marching from the south. The Whites routed them, inflicting some twenty-five fatalities. There was no recourse to the courts. There was no law.

Whites, seeing what appeared to be the handwriting on the wall, began to move from the South. The trickle became a flood. The South was being emptied of Whites and was being turned over to the Blacks.

<sup>25</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 439



### **The "New Era"**

The alliance between the Blacks and the carpetbagger-agents of the banking interests made possible the occupation and continued looting of the South by the Republican Party.

This alliance ended suddenly. The culprit - Black nationalism.

Just as had happened in Haiti, the Blacks discovered their power. The banking interests had placed them in powerful elected offices. Only Blacks could vote in the South and they voted for their own people. They were organized, united, and voted as a bloc. They had their own leaders. They had Black militia companies supported by federal troops, who combined to keep the conquered White population in subjection. They owned many of the plantations of their former masters, and taxes had been raised so high that it was only a question of time before the rest of the White landowners would lose theirs through tax foreclosures. Whites were leaving the South in droves to the unsettled west to escape Black tyranny.

The departure of the Whites was turning the South into a Black country. It was just a question of time. Soon, the entire South would be completely Black. Nothing on the horizon appeared able to prevent this from happening. The national Republican Party had to support the southern Blacks to keep themselves in power. They were forced to support the Blacks whether they liked it or not. The media for a half-century had portrayed them as being able to do no wrong. They believed it. The Blacks had it all.

The nature of the Black is to want to be ruled by Blacks. It's natural. Black rule, in White eyes, may be an unbelievable terror, but that's the way the Black wants it. Given the choice of good food, good clothes, and reasonable work under White rule, he will choose to follow one of his own wherever he may lead. Black leaders don't like to share power with Whites - conservative or liberal. When Southern Black leaders realized their tremendous power, they turned on their old allies, and voted the carpetbaggers out of office. They filled the vacancies with other Blacks. The carpetbaggers were just agents of the northeast banking establishment. Voting them out of office severed the Black link with the bankers who were responsible for putting them in power in the first place.

Now, with the bankers gone, the Republican Party was their only ally. Most of the other integration groups were just paper agitation

organizations funded by the bankers. When the funding stopped, the directors closed the doors and turned to other things.

The Republican Party and the Black voters were both creations of the northeast bankers. The creation had become greater than the creator. Both had turned into monsters that threatened the interests of those who had created them.

### **The Establishment Fights Black Revolt**

The bankers quickly woke to the changed conditions. Their situation was this: their carpetbagger-agents had grabbed millions of acres and countless industries for their masters. Billions of dollars were at stake. But the Whites, the creators of the wealth, were being driven from the land. The percentage of Blacks vs. Whites was increasing everywhere in favor of the Blacks. The South was well on the way to being Africanized.

If the Whites disappeared, the wealth that the money interests had garnered at the daily tax sales was defenseless against being expropriated by the Blacks. That very thing had happened before in Haiti, and now the Blacks were in open revolt again.

### **The Establishment Chooses Sides**

The Establishment gave the order to remove the Blacks from power.

The Lincoln/Grant political machine protested. They must have the Black vote in the South if they were to run the government. If the Black went - the Republican Party went. The Republican administration determined to fight for Black rule in the South so that they could remain in power.

Events had forced the choosing of sides: The Southern Black/Republican alliance was arrayed against the banks, and such allies as the banks could gather. This new war started with Southern Whites completely unaware that there was a dispute among their conquerors.

### **A New Kind Of War**

The banks opened hostilities by switching media and financial support to the Democratic Party. This new coalition quickly went into operation.



The new coalition needed a new reason for existence - a platform that the public would buy and put them in office to implement. Of course, the real reason was to keep the Southern loot, but that sort of story is hard to sell. The story told the general public was that there was corruption in government, especially in the Black Southern governments.

Overnight, the nation's media fell into line and started to hammer the new theme. The Black was no longer the lovable, oppressed object of sympathy to the media that he had been for the past half-century. The Black, and the Republican Party, had both suddenly been discovered to be the reasons for all the trouble. Like magic, letters such as the following appeared in the newspapers:

"I desire to call your attention to the horrible scenes of violence and bloodshed transpiring through the South and suggest that you give them as great prominence as possible in your paper from this time until after the election." Signed by Thomas J. Brady.<sup>1</sup>

Reversing fifty years of propaganda was incredibly simple - simple if one realizes the extent and power of the establishment's media. Two things had to be done in record time before the entire South was lost: remove the Blacks from power, and dismantle the Lincoln/Grant political apparatus that supported them.

The media were up to it, and revealed in the process an expertise and prowess that has lost none of its luster over the years.

The Establishment simply had a book written, and promoted the reading of this book. Just one book. That's all. That's all it took. Everything else was detail.

### The Book

James S. Pike was selected to be the author. He had impeccable credentials. An ardent anti-slavery man since the 1840s, he was a trusted Establishment employee having worked long for the then media mogul, Horace Greeley. Greeley was an Establishment-media spokesman. He was a true revolutionary, a close associate of Karl Marx. "Marx became English correspondent for Horace Greeley's *Tribune*" and the naturally harmonious relationship lasted for ten years.<sup>2</sup> During the war, Pike was rewarded for his efforts by

being appointed by Lincoln as Minister to the Netherlands. For the past three and a half centuries, the Netherlands had been the center of world usury-banking. The position of minister to that nation was important. Pike was an important man. His income came from investments supplemented by his writings.

Known nationwide as a rabid abolitionist, he was able to point to countless calumnies, hate articles, and "bloody shirt" stories he had written to whip up Northern hatred of the South which was needed to keep Federal occupation armies there. His success could be measured by the hate of his victims. Now he had to undo everything that he had spent a lifetime doing.

Pike's book was a forerunner of today's "documentary." The author journeyed to South Carolina for about eight weeks to pick up local color. It wasn't necessary, he could have written *The Prostrate State* without having ventured from his study, but the trip was made to establish "expert witness" credentials.

It was a quickie affair. Everything was marked "rush."<sup>3</sup> The author was carefully selected. The book, designed to be a "silver bullet", was written right, it was financed right, published right, and promoted right. It was an altogether professional job. Within six weeks of publication, the nationwide Establishment media were ballyhooing it from one part of the country to the other. "It's new!" "Exposé!" As with almost all professional Establishment ventures, this one was done right. There were no mistakes.

*The Prostrate State* was an exceptional propaganda instrument. It was so good that today its existence is blacked out. Some have never heard of it. But, because of the devastating effect it had on the nation and because it was distributed so widely, it is a document impossible to completely hide or ignore. Historians are forced to go to that book to discover the reason for the reversal of public opinion in the north.<sup>4</sup>

Pike was educated. He knew about the Negro. He knew what had happened in Haiti. He knew about John Brown's plan to bathe the South in White blood. But he still helped to make Brown a

3 At the same time Pike was gathering material for his book on events in South Carolina, *The Tribune*, during 1873 and 1874, began a series on Louisiana and Mississippi by Whitlaw Reid which paralleled Pike's work on South Carolina. See the issues of Apr. 9, 1873 and Jan. 2, 1874.

4 Since the book can't be hid, it has been reprinted with an introduction designed to prejudice the reader against Pike and the book's contents. Anti-Pike comments abound. He is called "racist and favoring White supremacy." The effort is wasted. Pike's book was too good. It left tracks the establishment can't cover.

1 *Ibid.*, p. 427

2 *Europe Looks at The Civil War*, Sidman & Friedman, Orion Press, NY, 1960, p. 14.



national hero. He was too important to have been just another soulless media hack, but he behaved as one. He had supported reconstruction completely with all its attendant horrors - the rape, the robbery, the back breaking taxes. All were necessary to securely bind the Southern owners with Black rule and federal bayonets while the carpetbagger agents soaked up hundreds of years of Southern wealth.

He thoroughly understood and was flip about matters that were questions of life or death to others. "Mayhem in politics hitherto, has been to keep the colored gentlemen out of the territories and to destroy the race of slaveholders."<sup>5</sup> They really didn't concern him. He only wrote about them. Reconstruction was a business matter.

Pike mentions a conversation that he had with Senator William Sprague, a millionaire senator from Rhode Island. Sprague was operating in the conquered Southern provinces in a big way. His agents picked up massive holdings for pennies at tax sales. He told Pike that for \$75,000 he could have his own South Carolina carpetbagger-agent named South Carolina senator.<sup>6</sup> He could do this by simply passing out the money among the South Carolina Black legislators.

The decision to reverse Southern Africanization was made perhaps sometime in 1872. When 1873 dawned, the White Christian North was treated to the usual diet of unbelievable anti-South venom. When 1874 closed, this feeling had been replaced by one of understanding and support for the Southern White. Feelings had been reversed. Pike's book made the difference.

Carefully hidden records revealing scandals of the worst sort were suddenly produced and made available to him. He copied it down just as it was, and he could prove his accusations. He told of corruption in the occupation army, in Black government, among government contractors, and the finger pointed right to the occupant of the White House. It was all there and there was a lot of it: the misrule, brutality, miscarriage of justice, and wholesale robbery. His audience had never read anything like it.

5 *Ibid.*, p. xiii, Introduction

6 *Tribune*, March 5, 1872.

The solution offered by the book was simple. Let the White people of the South govern themselves under law as defined by the courts. The latter was necessary to safeguard the gleanings of the new owners of Southern property.<sup>7</sup>

The New York firm of D. Appleton & Co. published his book *The Prostrate State*<sup>8</sup> early in Dec. 1873. It was priced at \$1 a copy. *The Tribune* office offered copies for sale. The advertisements proclaimed "THE BOOK FOR THE DAY."<sup>9</sup> A Dutch translation was published in Holland in 1875, since that is where much of the world's international finance was headquartered.

The distribution of the book took place like magic. Notoriously anti-South organs suddenly switched sides and endorsed the book - publications such as *The Literary World* and E. L. Godkin's influential *Nation*. In February 1874, *The Atlantic Monthly* endorsed *The Prostrate State*. On January 10, 1874, the *New York Express* echoed the favorable write-ups. The *St. Louis Republican* came out on Jan. 20, 1874, and the *New York Herald* on Jan. 11, 1874.<sup>10</sup>

Seldom has any book enjoyed such sponsorship. Book sales soared. Within six months the job was done. The opinion of the voting masses in the North had been changed. It was that quick. All that was needed was the truth.

### Black Republican Corruption

The stories Pike told were fascinating. In a day when \$100 was a lot of money, Pike reveals that in South Carolina nearly \$2 million was raised for state expenses where \$400 thousand formerly sufficed. He told the world that the governor spent \$30,000 or \$40,000 a year on a salary of \$3,500. With the establishment OK, he could say anything - and he did. Things like:

"Sambo"<sup>11</sup> takes naturally to stealing, for he is used to it. It was his notorious weakness in slavery ... The only way he had to possess himself of anything, was to steal it."<sup>12</sup>

7 The reason public opinion is made to switch is seldom revealed until later. Kennedy was shot. Solzhenitsyn was allowed to speak. The Sedition Trials failed. There was a reason for each. In time we shall learn why. The establishment makes few mistakes.

8 *The Prostrate State*, James S. Pike, South Carolina under Negro Government. Harper Torchbooks. Harper & Row, NY 1874 1968.

9 *Tribune*, December 6, 1873.

10 *Ibid.*, introduction xxi

11 Pike uses this word incorrectly. A Sambo is a cross between a Black and an Indian.

12 *Ibid.*, p. 29



Such a thing could not have been said eighteen months earlier. He wrote it all down as fast as it was fed to him. More things like:

"The amount appropriated for stationery in the twenty years preceding 1861 averaged \$400 per year. In 1873 it was \$16,000."<sup>13</sup>

Boy!!

### Pike's Complaints about Blacks

One complaint voiced by Pike concerned the handling of a railroad bill before the legislature. The bill was the usual sort where South Carolina's Black legislators were supposed to grant a charter and subsidize a railroad to benefit its management and stockholders.

Matters did not progress as expected. The Black legislature had learned from their teachers. They voted the matter down and waited to be paid to grant the charter. They realized that in Black South Carolina, one could charge for such favors. They had been put in power so that such bills could be easily passed. The alliance had fallen apart.

Pike went on to observe that the Blacks had discovered that they now held the power and were voting out White carpetbaggers and were replacing them with other Blacks.

### Blacks Fight White Emigration

The South was being stripped of Whites<sup>14</sup> who were moving beyond the reaches of Black tyranny. This hurt the establishment's chance to make really big money. The Blacks had obediently raised taxes to levels that would bankrupt White farmers. Millions of acres of these fine farms had been collected by Establishment syndicates at tax sales and were lying idle.

The syndicates planned to sell these fine farms to new White European immigrants who had the money and were looking for just this sort of bargain, but this had to be done before the land returned to nature. The farms, some developed and in operation for more than 200 years, equipped and in good condition, should have been

<sup>13</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 29

<sup>14</sup> My own maternal grandfather, Richard Thomas Kelly, a refugee from Culpeper County, met my grandmother, Georgie Hume, another refugee from Culpeper County, for the first time in Joplin, Missouri. They married and continued on to Texas, where they resided until conditions improved enough for them to return home many years later.

able to fetch top dollar and still be bargains to Europeans who valued by European land prices.

Every effort to get the Black legislatures to cooperate was stonewalled. The Blacks had the rule, and they had stopped sharing it with White carpetbaggers. They were not going to share rule with carpetbaggers, White immigrants, or anyone else who was White. They were in full revolt, and their revolt was becoming expensive.

### Pike's Private Opinion About Blacks

Newspapermen are a breed apart. They are people skilled with the pen, and the pen is sold to the one who writes their paychecks. They will take whatever side their employers wish. The much vaunted "freedom of the press" only applies to the opinions of the owner of the press,<sup>15</sup> not to the writers.

Pike was well-educated in history. He knew about events in Haiti, and did not bat an eye when he had earlier advocated and was responsible for creating conditions where Southern Whites were placed under Blacks as ordered by his establishment employers. It is conceivable that he would have taken any stand that his employer wanted. This, however, did not stop him from having his own personal opinions. He had earlier been forbidden to relate these personal opinions on what he considered to be the true state of the Negro character. Now that he had received the official OK, he did so, and these are some of his words:

"The question is often asked if education is not the remedy ... Is it the knowledge of reading and writing? This is all that compulsory education can give ... But here is a race to be educated in the very elements of manhood. ... The education they require is the formation of a race the opposite of the existing race. They have to be taught not to lie, not to steal, not to be unchaste. To educate them properly is to revolutionize their whole moral nature. ... It is the reading and writing Negroes of the South Carolina Legislature who lead in its most infamous venalities and corruptions. This sort of education merely lends a cutting edge to their moral obtuseness. .... Education, ... means to educate them out of themself-

<sup>15</sup> A famous newspaper writer was recently observed sitting at his desk puffing on a cigarette while pecking away at his award winning red-hot article on the evils of cancer-causing tobacco.



ves ... It means the moral enlightenment and regeneration of a whole people debauched and imbruted for ages ...."

He goes on:

"We only disposed of one phase of the Negro question in abolishing slavery ... Fancy the moral condition of a State in which a large majority of all its voting citizens are habitually guilty of thieving and of concubinage. ... Is this the self-government for which a war of seven years (The Revolutionary War) was waged, in which the best blood of a nation was shed, and to secure the results of which a written Constitution was painfully elaborated by its wisest and most conscientious men ..."<sup>16</sup>

He further states:

"The Federal Government ... might do a great deal for the State, if it would ... But the Whites must rely mainly upon themselves ... to redeem the State, if it is to be redeemed. This is the real serious work they should set about. The old historic and really important city of Charleston, with its fifty thousand inhabitants and thirty millions of taxable values, is not to be lightly surrendered however threatened. ... It would be a violent presumption against the manliness, the courage, and the energy of South Carolina White men, to allow the State to remain in the permanent keeping of her present rulers ... .

Then the punch line:

"The class there wanted is of immigrants who have a little money, and who buy land, and farm on their own account. ... It is their thrift and their energy and their money that are going to play an important part in overcoming the predominance of the Black population."<sup>17</sup>

Pike wanted an outlet for the billions of dollars of his masters' land that had been separated from its former White owners, and the Blacks would not allow it to be done.

<sup>16</sup> Pike, p. 63-70

<sup>17</sup> Ibid., p. 89-92

### The Foreign Immigration Scheme

Pike continued to outline his plan for foreign immigration needed to turn the establishment's land inventory into a profit.

"It was a severe blow to the people of South Carolina to have their slaves emancipated without compensation. ... They lost every thing they possessed ... from the desolation of war. The banks were ruined. The railroads were destroyed. Their few manufactories were desolated. Their vessels had been swept from the seas and the rivers. The live-stock was consumed. Notes, bonds, mortgages, all the money in circulation, debts, became alike worthless. The community were without clothes and without food. ... Never was there greater nakedness and desolation in a civilized community. Added to all this was the loss of 12,000 of the best blood of the State out of a voting population of 60,000 ...

"What can its substantial, land-holding, honest White citizens do, in the existing emergency, to put an end to the present infamous rule of the State? Our answer would be: Let them first fix their eyes upon the great continuous stream of foreign immigration which lands 300,000 people, seeking new homes, annually on our shores ... The second step is to disbase the South Carolina mind of some erroneous ideas entertained by it in regard to White immigrants. The State having suffered so much from carpet baggers, it is no wonder the native population look upon strangers with suspicion. But the White immigrant of the future is to recompense her for the carpet-baggers' frauds and spoliations. There is no fear that he will not be on the side of justice and economy, and good government ... Only let the White immigrants from all quarters be encouraged to come ... South Carolina must grow in the future, if she is to be redeemed and keep pace with her sister States ..."<sup>18</sup>

Pike then posted a warning to Southerners to keep their hands off the newspapers in words so clear that they could not be misunderstood.

<sup>18</sup> Ibid., p. 96



"It has long been the doctrine of the old slave States that a man should be held personally responsible for the expression of adverse opinions on certain social and political questions. ... It survives still ... Any assertion of this spirit in the present changed condition of things is absurd. Every man, in our day, in South Carolina and everywhere else, must be permitted the exercise of his right to the untrammelled expression of his opinion, in decorous terms, on any subject whatever, without rendering himself obnoxious to anybody,<sup>19</sup> or subjecting himself to the rebuke of anybody."<sup>20</sup>

Pike's mailed fist continues to peek through in his demand for a press unhampered by rules:

"This is the one new thing which South Carolina people ... must be prompt to learn. It is the very first condition of her regeneration and extrication. Nothing short of unreserved submission to this law ... will secure the end objects of her salvation. ... There is no alternative for her White population and property-holders but heartily to second these views, or continue to hold their present humiliating position, which means ... final ruin to them and their posterity."<sup>21</sup>

Pike's position on media control stated above became a reality in the South after 1873, and has remained so ever since. Maximum effort went to the protection of radical writers and editors. The newspaper slogan, "freedom of the press," came to mean license to say anything without responsibility. As independent newspapers disappeared into national chains only one editorial voice became heard. All newspapers read alike. It is only with the recent introduction of the "exposé" newsletter that a partial lifting of the blackout curtain has taken place. Even then, almost two-thirds of the slick "conservative," "anti-communist," and "Christian" newsletters are establishment organs. They have to be to keep control of the West's defenses and insert false destabilizing statements, dis-information, and dissension into the conservative camp. Desktop publishing is helping to overcome even the "poverty look" of the genuine alternate media, and experience is helping to overcome the phonies.

19 Newspaper editors who told lies were often called out and shot in duels in former days. It severely curtailed newspaper calumnies.

20 Ibid., p. 98

21 Ibid., p. 93-98

### Promoted Land Ventures

History shows that the undeclared war between international finance and the alliance of Southern Blacks and the Republican Party took longer than expected. It delayed Pike's efforts to get European immigrants into the South to purchase farms from the syndicates before the farms grew up in brush and trees. The immigration that had been planned for the South had to be directed instead to newly foreclosed farms in New England, Pennsylvania, and the Midwest seized by the usury banks in the great depression that lasted from 1872-1896.

The best that could be done at the time with what was now almost worthless Southern land that had largely reverted to wilderness was to survey part of it and build and promote cities, so that the newly surveyed building lots and buildings could be sold to northern investors. The South had been an agricultural region with few towns. Her cities were small by urban standards of the day. They were unable to contain the hundreds of thousands forced off their farms and they had to be rapidly expanded. Most southern cities date their growth from this period.

To the west of Lynchburg was a small crossroads called "Big Lick." Promoters who owned the land made concessions to obtain a railroad. They surveyed lots. Some of the lots were given to northern builders conditional on their constructing buildings by an agreed-upon date. These structures, plus structures for the railroad and its personnel, made it appear as if a real building boom were under way, and increased the value of the former cowpastures. Great fortunes were made.

The name of the new city was changed from "Big Lick" to "Roanoke" to give a better image.

Other towns were promoted. Waynesboro in the upper Valley went well.

Buena Vista was a bust. The mines which were supposed to give a reason for the city played out. As a boy, I remember seeing fine brick buildings standing alone, the only structure on an entire block, and a fine unfinished hotel standing in the middle of a corn patch on a hill with the main part and one wing almost finished. Rows of street lights stood in cow pastures and cows grazed peacefully among them.



There was some risk to these ventures, but of course the promoters had gotten the land for almost nothing, and the promotion was all done with other people's money.

Pike went on to describe South Carolina before the war and how it compared with the present. How the old Wade Hampton mansion, which had been built by the head of the family of Revolutionary memory, had passed out of the hands of that family and was now owned by "the new plebeian governor, Moses, an Israelite,"<sup>22</sup> who had known a good bargain when it came his way."

### Size of Plantations

The average South Carolina plantation was 1600 acres. As in Virginia, these plantations were the result of the merger of many small farms. The reason the plantations had to be large before the war was to profitably compete with other large plantations. Slave labor forcibly introduced by the crown made a large plantation more profitable than a small farm and more profitable than a plantation without slaves. Slave labor destroyed the small farm just as subsidized foreign farms are destroying the remaining American farms today.

When slavery ceased, the profit ceased. A 1600 acre farm became as outdated as a dinosaur. It had to be broken up if small farmers were to again profitably work the land. Unfortunately, most small farmers were already gone.

### Bond Frauds

Pike quotes Governor Scott in his special message of January 9, 1872, as saying:

"In the fall of 1868 I visited New York City for the purpose of borrowing money on the credit of the State on coupon bonds...

"I succeeded in borrowing money ... at the rate of four dollars in bonds for one dollar in currency, the bonds being rated at 75% below their par value, or at 25¢ on the dollar. This loan ... at the ... rate of 1 1/2% per month, or 18% a year ... for the money loaned.

<sup>22</sup> F. I. Moses, Jr., Brooklyn, New York - Speaker of the House. Pike meant to use the word "Jew" instead of Israelite, but didn't know the difference.

"... If then, \$3.2 million in money has cost the State \$9,514,000 in bonds, it does not therefore follow that the financial board have criminally conspired against the credit of the State."<sup>23</sup>

I hope the reader will carefully re-read the above. This was the occupation governor of South Carolina speaking.

### Freedmen Land Frauds

To further line their pockets, speculators bought 112,404 acres at low prices in areas not suited to farming, and then, in collusion with state officials, sold them to the state at a high price to sub-divide as farms for ex-slaves. About \$700,000 was spent in this manner. The profits were enormous.

A state department report said, "The land was bought at a most exorbitant price." It goes on: "A large portion of this land ... is utterly worthless."

Testimony revealed that no books had been kept, no evidence of the amount of land purchased, or any record kept of what had been done. The land was purchased as low as 50¢ an acre, and booked to the State at \$8 and \$10 an acre.

### Negro Militia

On March 16, 1869, an act was passed to organize and govern the militia of the State of South Carolina. It applied to all citizens both Black and White, but, as today, meant Black.

Unlike the militias before the war which were voluntary organizations, uniformed and armed at the expense of the individual over whom the state had little control, this act put the control of the militia squarely in the hands of the Governor. This was something new.

Section 14 of the act stated that "The organized militia of this State shall be known as the National Guard ..." It further stated that "there shall be no military organizations ... not authorized by this act." In other words, they banned what would today be called para-military militia companies.

<sup>23</sup> Pike., p. 142



Gov. Scott then sent through the state to organize the Negro population. Fourteen full regiments of Blacks were organized under this act in addition to the occupation government's Federal troops and the Whites were disarmed.<sup>24</sup>

### The New York Connection

Many millions of South Carolina bonds that were issued were placed in the hands of an H. H. Kimpton in New York.

To really get the message over to the people, it was necessary to have "hearings," so that events could be established and reported daily to the people to influence their opinion.

At such a hearing presided over by a Judge Carpenter, it was found that Kimpton was a mystery man. He had been appointed South Carolina's financial agent but no contract was ever made with him. Millions of dollars worth of bearer bonds<sup>25</sup> were put into his keeping and no accounting was required. State authorities needing money for various purposes drew on him and he disbursed the money. It is believed that Kimpton hypothecated the bonds and charged 15 1/2% interest for the money when he advanced it to the South Carolina government.

### Causes Of Violence And Disorder

A hearing before Judge Carpenter as to the cause of public disturbances was held. Following are the questions and answers.

"Q. What effect did pardoning of criminals have upon the lawlessness that existed, the taking of the law by men wrongfully in their own hands?<sup>26</sup>

"A. "... in all the appointments in every department of the government, the men were generally not only corrupt but utterly incompetent. Men were appointed school commissioners who could neither read nor write ... Salaries were

24 It is hoped that the reader will identify with the present day where many units of the US army are 80% non-White as are units of the National Guard in many areas. The implied threat of a Haiti type massacre was held over the heads of objecting White taxpayers by militant Blacks. Suggestions to reverse the dangerous percentages were voted down, or declared "illegal" by the courts.

25 A bearer bond has no owner's name on it and is almost impossible to trace. These bonds had attached coupons that could be clipped and presented for payment without revealing the owner's name.

26 Neighborhood watch, vigilantes, nightriders, no-name organizations.

increased everywhere. Public officers were multiplied, and the only business of the officers seemed to be to prey upon the people. The whole government ... seemed to be intent upon no other purpose than self-aggrandizement at the expense of the population, and I confess that I shared in the belief that there was no protection of person or property in the state.

"Q. And that even the conviction of criminals did not tend to produce punishment?

"A. In the first place, the juries, being composed of colored people, as well as White (parts of each)<sup>27</sup> it was difficult to indict anybody. ... there would be some difficulty of race about it. I think there was none with the White people; but, of course, the colored people had a strong predilection for their own race, and they were not very clear in their ideas between right and wrong. Then if the parties were indicted, it was very difficult to convict them; and if they were convicted they were very sure to be pardoned. I have known, in more than one instance where a man referred a charge against a party, the accused was discharged by the grand jury, and the accuser indicted for false imprisonment ...

"Some colored men had been stealing some cattle, and the owner had them arrested and taken before a justice of the peace, and they were bound over for trial, the proof being very clear. The jury were nearly all colored men ... The jury discharged the prisoners for stealing the cattle, and indicted the two young planters for false imprisonment. ... it was not a singular case. It has been repeatedly done ...

"Q. Would not a course of conduct of that sort deter men from seeking the law as a means of protection?

"A. It certainly would.

"Q. You say that was not confined to one locality?

"A. It occurred several times in my circuit, and I had information that it occurred in other circuits. I do not want to be understood as justifying the proceedings of these secret organizations, but in my opinion it was the condition of things which I have detailed that was the cause of it. ... It had nothing

27 Deut 17:15



more to do with the Federal Government than it had to do with the Government of China. ... they acted upon the idea that they were without a government to protect them; on the contrary, that the government was inimical to the White people of the State particularly, protecting their enemies - the men who committed crimes against them - and rewarded them rather than punished them."<sup>28</sup>

The above information from the book *The Prostrate State*, was the first intimation that the North had of the true conditions in the South. The only reason that they learned of them at all was the dispute between the Blacks and the international bankers. If that had not happened the book would never have been written and conceivably the country would have never known of the South's condition during Reconstruction.

With a media monopoly, the minds of a nation can be controlled indefinitely. If changes are needed, they can be made by simply choosing which information to release. This makes the identification of true information, its release and distribution, of prime importance if a people are to regain freedom and not remain slaves of those who own the media.

<sup>28</sup> Pike, p. 219-223

### Bankers Defeat Republican & Black Rebels

The first establishment target was public opinion. The media handled that with *The Prostrate State* and a newspaper blitz to inform the North.

The next target was the Republican Party.

In the anti-Republican kickoff was Chauncey M. Depew. In his statement in the *New York World* of Sept. 12, 1872, he denounced Grantism with the assertion that "the scum of society has been brought to the surface in the Government in the three years of Grant's Administration." The media played up news stories of Grant's acceptance of gifts.

Northerners who had invested heavily in the South began to donate generously to Democratic Party political funds. Where formerly criticism of the occupation powers was considered treason, literally tons of anti-Republican literature printed in the North began to deluge the South. Since postmasters could and did censor the mails; messengers, wagons and the express got the material to the voters.<sup>1</sup> They scrupulously obeyed the new non-violent resistance policy to try to deny incidents that could be used by the Republicans.

White-Southern politics, helped by their new allies the Democrats, came to life. This new political spark rippled everywhere. Embattled farmers nationwide were on the march, the unemployed of the cities were in an ugly mood, small businessmen struggled against bankruptcy. The media heaped Grant's latest scandals on piles of other scandals.

### The Lincoln/Grant Machine Fights Back

The Lincoln/Grant machine had a lot of vested interests. This party had grown powerful since its founding in 1854 and every ounce of that power was used to keep hold on what they had gained.

The machine had its own politicians, judges, soldiers, bankers, and its own media. It was all bought and paid for with political plums and pork-barrel payoffs. It was no pushover, there was a lot on the line. Politics became vicious.

<sup>1</sup> Note that the government still maintains control of the mails to enable it to exercise the censorship option anytime necessary. In Canada today, the posting of state-banned literature can land one in jail with heavy fines.



Propaganda on both sides went into high gear. To get Grant re-elected *Harper's Weekley*, a Republican organ, brought over the young German cartoonist Thomas Nast. He was brutal. *Leslie's Weekly* brought Matt Morgan over from England. He was also brutal. These two squared off against the South, waving the bloody shirt to drum up the support for the Republicans needed to keep soldiers stationed there. Without soldiers there would be no Black Republican government and no national Republican Party.

The old scoundrel Horace Greeley was establishment. He was attacked in terms he had used to attack others. He was accused of supporting "free love and free farms." Grant was accused of "shouting the battle cry of plunder."

Robert G. Ingersoll, the great Grant supporter and most popular Republican orator of the campaign, took to the stump.

In Bangor, Maine, he attacked Southern Whites:

"The White Democrats ... were as relentless as fiends. They killed simply to kill. They murdered these helpless people, thinking in some blind way that they were getting their revenge upon the people of the North."

"And the Democratic opponent? He never gave birth to an elevated noble sentiment in his life ... a compound of cunning and heartlessness ... who believes in the Democratic doctrine of States' right."

At Cooper Union, New York:

"Recollect that the men who starved our soldiers and shot them down ... All the hands dipped in Union blood were in the Democratic Party."

In Indianapolis:

"Every State that seceded from the Union was a Democratic State. Every ordinance of secession that was drawn was drawn by a Democrat. Every man that endeavored to tear the old flag from the heaven it enriches was a Democrat. Every man that tried to destroy the Nation was a Democrat ... Every man that shot down Union soldiers was a Democrat ... The man that assassinated Abraham Lincoln was a Democrat ... Every man that raised bloodhounds to pursue human beings was a Democrat. Every man that clutched from shrinking, shuddering crouching mothers babes from their breasts and sold them

into slavery was a Democrat ... Every man that tried to spread smallpox and yellow fever in the North ... was a Democrat. Soldiers, every scar you have on your heroic bodies was given you by a Democrat. Every scar, every arm that is missing, every limb that is gone is the souvenir of a Democrat ... Yes, the question is, shall the solid South, a unified South, unified by assassination and murder, a South solidified by the shotgun - shall the solid South with the aid of a divided North control this great and splendid country? ...

"Every Democrat that is a Democrat is a Democrat because he hates something; every man that is a Republican is a Republican because he loves something ... I am proud that I belong to the Republican Party ... It is the first decent party that ever lived."<sup>2</sup>

These methods were protested in Indianapolis by a new found Democrat ally of the South:

"I understand the tactics of the enemy in this fight perfectly," he said. "They will denounce the people of the South - this is cheap. They are helpless, then abuse them; they are powerless, then malign them. They are not here to answer, then manufacture lies about them, misleading the people."<sup>3</sup>

But things had just started.

### Manufacturing Propaganda

The "outrage factory" went to work once more. To keep the post-war media events clear for the reader, there was first the anti-Klan outrage propaganda. This caused the Klan to be disbanded. Then, a bogus Klan was fielded and manufactured. Klan "outrages" were reported. After the international financiers dumped the Blacks and Republicans, THEIR media reported Black Republican outrages, while the Lincoln/Grant media continued to report White Southern outrages. One really needs a program to keep matters straight when the media go after the media, a thing possible only when there is more than one.

The *Hartford Courant*, a Republican paper, sent reporters to get the dirt on Southern Whites. Soon the country shuddered over

<sup>2</sup> *Speeches*, 9, 191-223

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.* Sept., 7, 1876.



stories of brutal outrages discovered in Alabama. Everywhere were murders, riots, torturings - never so many as before. "Unimpeachable witnesses" came forward and were quoted *ad nauseam*.

This was countered by the *New York Tribune* which stated that there were no murders, no torturings, no riots, no rebels, and the stories of the *Hartford Courant* were lies.

This sort of thing had never happened before. Always before the media had been united in its condemnation of the South. A war of titans was now in progress. Establishment media battling rebel Republican media. The paper wall had been breached. It was the first and last time that such a thing was to happen and, understandably, it left voters confused.

Naturally, Grant the Republican said that he believed the stories of the Republican *Hartford Courant* and used the stories to justify ordering troops held in readiness to deal with the atrocities in Alabama and South Carolina. Grant's attorney general urged U.S. marshals to make arrests under the Enforcement Act. In October, Alabama was overrun with deputy marshals, agents of the Department of Justice, and secret service men, many of the lowest order. Federal occupation troops with warrants removed citizens in handcuffs to distant parts and threw them into jails.

In spite of the efforts of the Whites, in Alabama the carpetbag State Supreme Court found intermarriages legal. Republican radicals campaigned among Negro voters in favor of mixed schools. Union League Clubs promised a division of White property. Speakers boasted that White property would be taxed out of the possession of its owners and divided among the Blacks.

Black preachers informed their flocks that eternal salvation was dependent on their vote for the Republican Party. Dissenters were expelled from the churches. Black women pledged to desert their husbands if they dared vote with the native Whites.<sup>4</sup>

Whipped by the persecution into a frenzy of determination, young Southerners old enough to vote organized door to door. The Blacks threatened to protect their political interests with guns.

Plans were made for 100,000 unarmed Democrats from the North and South to march together on Washington. The Republicans laughed. Grant with his army stood guard there, backed by gunboats on the Potomac. Force was something he knew about, and he was looking for an excuse to use it. In Congress, talk of armed

resistance to tyranny came from northern Democrats. Defenseless Southerners listened in awe and quietly allowed these warlike Northerners to assume control. Questioned in the House as to their willingness for an armed conflict, the Republican answer was an unqualified "YES!". The Northern Democrats cringed and sat down, but they sat down in control of the Party. If there was any actual battlefield fighting to be done, their Southern brethren would have to do it.

Still, the Democrats had things going for them with the nation's White voters. It was at this time that infuriated farmers in the West were demanding regulation of railroad rates and reduction in tariffs. Organizations of revolutionary militancy sprang up in all agricultural sections North, East, South, and West. Most centered their fire on the railroads, the most visible tyrants. Those owning the railroads also owned governors, state legislatures, and courts. Built at public expense, the rails made matters worse for the Republicans by scoffing at regulation of rates. "Regulation was none of the public's business." If taken to court, the courts ruled in the railroad's favor.

Resistance by men made radical blossomed richest in the West where the people had not been taught the terror of the torch and summary execution. Banks were foreclosing mortgages and homesteads were falling under the hammer of the auctioneer, to be instantly resold to incoming European immigrants who had been diverted from the inhospitable Black-ruled South. While this was going on, the railroads exacted rates that made it impossible for the surviving farmers to profit. On top of everything, the tariff had increased the price of things the farmer needed to buy. There was less money available to do more.

Convinced that the legislators of the nation and states were pawns of the monopolies, people became politically aware. Tariff reform was part, but everyone went after the railroads. Almost every state legislature had its *Crédit Mobilier*.

By 1874, the Democratic pressure began to be felt. Illinois Democratic Legislators passed laws against unjust rate discrimination. The Republican Supreme Court overruled it. The *State Farmer's Association* launched a militant political program. The Chief Justice and seven or eight circuit court judges were defeated at the polls confirming the rule "Men tend to vote their paychecks."

4 *New York World*, Oct. 14, 1874.



The Republican press protested loudly against "packing the judiciary in the interest of a class." The farmers asked when the press had objected when the courts were packed by the other side.

The West was on fire. No more railroad steals, tariff steals, salary steals! They wanted railroad regulation, banking regulation, and end to public confiscation of land for the railroads. The media, which now allied itself to the Democrats, was careful not to allow an attack on usury, and except for a few such as Jesse James and those who sympathized with him, none was made.

James Pike, passing through Richmond on the way to South Carolina to write his book, noted that the Richmond newspapers carried articles to the effect that the people should "carry their burdens like men" and reject the evil temptation to repudiate the vast state debt.<sup>5</sup> The establishment media campaign was successful here. Virginia was one of the few states that did not default. For this noble effort, it has been awarded the highest bond rating in the usury system, and also the curses of generations of poor Virginians who slaved into the 1940s under the burden of impossibly high taxes to pay the debt. No sooner was it paid back than the media recommended that Virginia get back in debt - and Virginia did.

The farmers swept Illinois. Republicans toppled from power everywhere. Then the economic panic hit. Many American companies had been "milked" during the Republican administration and were unable to pay their debts. Their defaults sent the crisis snowballing.

The mud-raking caused the case of Henry Clews & Company to surface. The US kept its naval account with Baring in London. It was revealed that it had been given to Clews & Company, new to the banking business because of political favors. The transfer was managed by Orville Grant in consideration for the cancellation of a debt owed Clews.<sup>6</sup> Orville Grant was President Grant's brother.

The Republicans lost heavily in the North and West, but in the South, bayonets kept them firmly in the saddle.

### Dealing with Blacks - The Gary Plan

The plan hit upon in Mississippi to regain political power for the Whites was to split the Blacks from what remained of the White carpetbaggers and Republicans. The theory was that the native

<sup>5</sup> *The Prostrate State* p. xxiv. (circa 1873).

<sup>6</sup> *The Nation*, November 13, 1873.

Whites were held in contempt by the Blacks because they had been too agreeable, too quiet. The Gary plan required every Black political meeting to be invaded by Whites who rose to challenge the falsehoods of the radical Whites.

When the Negro militias organized, White volunteer militias organized. The reaction was soon felt. There was a definite rift between renegades and the Blacks. The renegades attempted to bring about a bloody conflict to invite intervention by Grant. Renegade governors sent companies of Negro militia on marches through the White countryside - a provocation. The Whites refused to respond. Nothing happened. This helped fuel a nationwide Democratic landslide.

The South Carolina Democratic Clubs wore red shirts. They were seen everywhere. Gradually they built their numbers. Finally, 2,000 at a time attended political rallies.<sup>7</sup>

The Gary faction of the Democratic Party met the Radicals on their own ground, answered them before their Negro audiences, and denounced their rascality to their faces for the psychological effect upon their Black followers. It worked.

"I spoke to him (his White opponent) in rude and rough language in order that the rude and rough Negro might understand it. This is what killed the spirit of the Negro, to see the Governor of the State and the chosen leader of their party abused in such unmeasured terms. They would not stay to hear the speaking over, and left in great disgust."<sup>8</sup>

Gary had denounced the rascality and thievery of the Radical regime to their face in the presence of their followers, and the spell was broken. There was no violence, no disturbance, only viper words in bitter debate.

The thing that impressed everyone, besides the meeting of the Radicals in debate, was the great processions of red-shirted mounted men with flying banners and prancing steeds, according to the *Abbeville Press and Banner*, Aug. 16, 1876.

<sup>7</sup> *Tragic Era*, p. 507

<sup>8</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 507



### Dealing with Blacks - The Hampton Plan

Wade Hampton was wealthy with an income of \$250,000 a year before the war. He lost it all and two sons.<sup>9</sup> Called into politics after the war, he helped establish Negro Democratic Clubs. Whites were appointed to a "committee of 7" to protect each of the Hampton Negro political meetings. When Republican Blacks went after Democrat Blacks, the Hampton Whites protected them.<sup>10</sup>

On one occasion, the Blacks went on a rampage. One White was killed and many Whites beaten. A town was wrecked. The White militia was not allowed to interfere because of fear of "outrage" or "bloody shirt" news articles in the media controlled by Grant Republicans. The Whites just had to stand and take it - at least for the time being. The White militia stood by under arms and let Blacks wreck whole sections of Charleston.<sup>11</sup> The thing that brought order was that the White Democrats put out the word that if a Black slaughter started among the Whites, the White Republican renegades would die to a man. These renegades, while anxious for Blacks to be killed to justify the summoning of Federal troops, were not ready to sacrifice their own lives. They began to counsel peace. This form of hostage taking worked countless times. Of course, it was taken seriously because it was enforced.

As soon as this crisis passed the Democrats went to work again and sent speakers to all Radical meetings and demanded a division of time. The Negro saw his leaders cower and finally retire from the contest. The Blacks did not vote with the Whites, they just did not vote.

Every White was ordered to enlist in a Democratic Club. Every club was ordered to be secretly armed and under experienced captains. They were ordered to attend all Republican meetings, going in numbers, and when force might be encountered, armed.

At these Radical meetings, they were at first to act with courtesy and assure the Blacks they were in no danger, but when Radical

<sup>9</sup> Lincoln kept all of his sons in safe jobs at home during the war.

<sup>10</sup> In Prince Edward County, Virginia, when the government forced the integration of schools in the 1950s, a large percentage of the Blacks preferred to keep their own principals, teachers, and social activities. Their school was more modern than the White one. Car loads of Blacks were imported from D.C. and New York to ambush and beat up the local Blacks on back roads. Whites had forgotten the need to protect their Black allies. My friend, J. Barry Wall, owner of the local newspaper, reported these vicious acts to the AP, but they were censored out of the national media.

<sup>11</sup> Williams, *Columbia State*, November 7, 1926.

speakers, Black or White, made false statements, there was to be an instant challenge to their faces as liars, thieves, and rascals trying to deceive the Negroes.

In appealing to the Blacks, no arguments were to be advanced under the theory that Blacks are only influenced by fears, superstitions, and cupidity. No flattery or persuasion, just plain speaking on the grievances of the Whites against the rascal leaders of the Radicals, White and Black. In all processions, the White clubs were to wear red shirts and parade with banners. No idle boasts or threats were to be made, and violence was to be prevented.

The Gary Plan was to keep the Blacks from the polls by intimidation. Hampton's was by reasoning with the Blacks in support of the Whites. Black leaders were ignored by both. Intensive work was done among rank and file. Hampton appealed to their better natures.

In Edgefield County, some Red Shirts riding to a Hampton meeting were ambushed to create an incident, and one killed. There was no retaliation.<sup>12</sup>

The effort to move in Federal troops was triggered by the Ellenton Riot. Two Blacks attacked a White's wife and child. There were shootings with casualties on both sides. White renegades ordered the dispersal of the White rifle clubs, but not the armed organizations of the Blacks. Naturally, this order for the Whites to disarm in the presence of armed Blacks was disobeyed.

Grant responded instantly with a proclamation branding Whites as being in lawless combinations conspiring to murder peaceful citizens. The secretary of war ordered all available military forces to Columbia to meet resistance to the authority of the U.S.

Next, there was the "Massacre at Caonhoy." Blacks opened fire and five Whites and one Black were killed. The Republican press reported it as a massacre of Blacks by Whites simply because of the Blacks' politics. Federal marshals and troops were rushed there and entered a Hampton meeting and arrested eleven Democrats. Martial law was declared.

But, it wasn't all one way. With the support of their temporary media allies, the truth was getting through and the people of the

<sup>12</sup> While there was no immediate overt retaliation, every murder, every rape, every case of interracial marriage was noted. Every Law violation requiring punishment was dealt with at a later date.



North began to react badly to Grant's moves. The old South-bashing was not working.

### Negotiated Political Peace

The national Republicans could see the handwriting on the wall and relented from their hardnosed stand. They sat in hotel rooms with Southern Democrats and negotiated. If Southerners would accept Republican rule for a while longer, and would protect the property of Northern investors seized at tax-sales, the Whites would be allowed to live under the Constitution like anyone else. One by one, deals of this sort were made with each Southern state. It was as if a treaty were being made with each Southern state - as in fact it was.

Thus, the immediate political crisis passed. Those in the know understood how close the country had come to another war - this time a true "civil war."

The banking interests needed peace to attract European buyers for their foreclosed midwestern and southern farms. They got their peace and sold their foreclosed Midwest farm inventory to immigrants for tremendous profits. The ejection of Blacks from power in the South took longer than planned. The Blacks tenaciously held on to their power long enough for the plantations and farms seized by carpetbagger-syndicates at tax sales to grow up into wilderness. The bankers retained their southern loot, but much of it had become temporarily worthless.

With the ejection of Blacks from southern government the migration of Whites from the section stopped and reversed. Both the South and West were relieved for a time of the worst of the excesses.

### The End Of The Political War

The Lincoln/Grant party had been neutralized. The Blacks had been dethroned in the South. Absolute power remained in the hands of the financier. States Rights was tantamount to "counter revolution" and was denounced for the next 40 years as the equivalent of treason.

The South was free again to rule herself, conditionally, under the watchful eye and whip of the establishment's media. Her slow climb was carefully directed. Approved conduct won praise. Disapproved

conduct was punished. But, the move toward law and order had started nationwide. It now took a different turn.



---

## Chapter 7

---

# SOUTH AFRICA

### The Beginnings

The history of the Western people in South Africa has been concealed from their kinsmen elsewhere. One can only draw opinions based on what one knows. A few pages will be taken to update the reader on the background of the struggle.

\* \* \* \* \*

South Africa occupies the strategic southern tip of Africa. All ships plying the trade route from England to India, the Dutch East Indies, Japan, and China pass there. Today, the great oil tankers from the Mohammedan world, unable to pass through the Suez canal due to their great size, also pass there. In early days, this long route to the Orient was preferable to the much shorter voyage through the Mediterranean that entailed a painful encounter with the powerful and hostile nation of Islam.

In 1616, the Dutch East India Company established a letter drop and a watering station on the southern tip of South Africa. Fresh meat was obtained by trade with the natives who were of two races. The bushmen, a tiny race of primitives, had been contracted to hunt cattle for the station. Difficulties soon arose because of their inability to distinguish between wild cattle and the cattle owned by the Europeans. There were also the Hottentots, a more advanced race. They worked copper, kept cattle, and were also expert cattle thieves. From the beginning, the colony was in a constant state of defense to repel cattle raids from these two peoples.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> African Blacks classify other Blacks according to race. They are usually easy to identify, by those who have been taught, because of differences in build, looks, color, and outlook, and they often speak dialects that are incredibly different - such as click languages, sounds never before heard by most Western ears. Natural relationship with other Black races is either master/slave or wars of extermination. The removal of White policing power has always resulted in a single dominant Black race with the rest subservient and usually greatly diminished in numbers.

On April 7, 1652, Jan van Riebeeck landed with settlers to plant vegetable gardens to supply passing ships. By the turn of the century, copper mines had been established, and the population had been augmented by French Huguenots fleeing the massacres of protestants by Louis XIV. A sprinkling of German settlers also arrived.

### Afrikaner Words

**Burgher** - from the beginning, the Dutch-French settlers were called "burghers," as in a citizen of Lynch-burg or Harrison-burg. This word is used in place of "citizen," and so one must early grasp its meaning which is now being lost over the rest of the West.

**Commando** - a military force. One goes on "commando," joins a "commando," or "commandos" gather for a purpose.

**Laager** - To go into "laager" means to go into a state of defense. When early settlers were attacked by hostile forces they would circle the wagons into a "laager."

**Boer** - A South African farmer of Dutch-French extraction.

**Afrikaans** - the old Dutch/French dialect spoken by Boers.

**Uitlander** - "Outlander," a European, not a Boer. Perhaps a friend or ally.

**English** - considered the hereditary enemy.

**Kaffir** - a Black.

### The Growth of the Colony

The Dutch East India Company, to create a demand for its Black slaves, discouraged immigration of White workers from Europe into South Africa. Starting from 1707 and continuing for over a century, Whites were barred.

To obtain workers, the South Africans were forced to buy slaves sold by the Company. Most increase of the European population over this period came from natural increase.<sup>2</sup>

It should be noted that a Dutch king, in debt to the international bankers, went from Holland to England to rule. As the king of the English, he received a percentage of the price of every slave sold into Virginia. He needed that income to pay his bankers ("*The borrower is slave*") and he forbade the cessation of the trade. A

<sup>2</sup> "David de Pinto ... and his son Isaac de Pinto played an important part in Dutch politics during the reign of William IV. David de Pinto was the chief stockholder of the East India Company." *Universal Jewish Encyclopedia*, Holland, P. 432.



similar thing was going on in South Africa. The king's rulers were responsible in both cases.

In 1770, Boer farmers marching north searching for farms and pastures had extended 400 miles into the interior. It was there they encountered the warring Xosas, of the Bantu race marching south. The Xosas were much superior to the puny Bushmen or Hottentots. This encounter triggered the beginning of a series of wars in which the "Company" was of little help. The Boers were on their own. They numbered about 16,000 with perhaps 17,000 slaves sold to them by the Company.

The usual Boer family on the frontier had to practice independence and self-reliance, or die. The head of the household usually read daily from the Scriptures and led in family hymn singing. Perhaps once a year he took his family to attend a church service where baptisms, marriages, and social events took place. Unhindered by a state religion, the love of God flourished, the type of LOVE defined by Jesus as being, *"If ye love me obey my commandments."* John 14:15. This sort of worship, without "mainline" or establishment interference, flowered just as it did on the Virginia frontier.

### England Arrives

The British invaded South Africa in 1795. Their excuse was to keep Napoleon's France from capturing it. In 1814, at the conclusion of peace, the Dutch were paid £6,000,000 for the land.

Six million pounds in that day was top dollar. Those who did really well were the Dutch bankers who lent the money to the English to buy from the Dutch.

The English debt has never been permitted to be paid off. It has become a milk cow for the international bankers, a cow that has never gone dry since the Bank of England was founded in 1692. Six million pounds lent at 10% in 1814 could have grown into a £115.68 trillion pounds debt by the year 1990. An impossible sum. This debt has reduced both Holland and Britain to dependencies of the very

mobile international bankers who have now located much of their operation in the United States.<sup>3</sup>

Few people take the time to understand the simple usury system of lending 10 for 11, and once understanding, insisting that their countries enforce the Law<sup>4</sup> to prevent the consequences of usury.

date	loan @ 10%
1814	£6.0
1820	10.6
1830	27.6
1840	71.5
1850	185.5
1860	481.1
1870	1,247.7
1880	3,236.4
1890	8,394.5
1900	21,773.2
1910	56,474.1
1920	146,479.2
1930	379,929.2
1940	985,438.6
1950	2,555,974.0
1960	6,629,538.3
1970	17,195,315.1
1980	44,600,218.5
1990	115,681,480.5

Figure 5: 1814 Loan At 10%: A £6 million loan at 10% made in 1814 would have grown to a debt of £115 trillion pounds today. This is the type of thing that put Britain into slavery to the international money lenders and made her furnish soldiers to protect her master. A debt of this size is larger than the entire worth of the world. This is the power of usury.

3 The colossal amounts of money involved in the world's usury loans, the power represented by these loans, usury's monopoly and intolerance of competition, along with its drive to possess everything, is the reason for the belief that somewhere on earth there resides some ONE being, kept anonymous and protected by layers of underlings, who is the chief anti-Christ ruler of the world. He, and his successors, will rule as long as his profession of usury is tolerated.

4 Ezek 18:13



Look at the figures on the previous page closely. This is the thing that confronts and confounds honest politicians:

The result of lending £6,000,000 at 10% interest in 1814 requires the repayment of £115 trillion pounds today if it has not been satisfied.

This is an impossible sum. That much money does not exist. However, it is an ironclad legally binding usury contract.<sup>5</sup> God's Law calls this contract a capital crime. The lender may allow the borrower to give everything he has, lands, industries, roads, and then obligate himself to work off the rest. The result - perpetual slavery. This is the thing that delivered Britain into the hands of the international bankers and made her their agent to further their designs on the rest of the world.

### Lord Charles Somerset - Renegade

The governor sent by England was Lord Charles Somerset, another like Governor Berkeley of Virginia. A lawless king had sent a lawless servant.<sup>6</sup>

Almost his first act was to revalue the Boer farms to increase the "quit rents" (taxes). The purpose of the increase was to start the bank program of tax-foreclosure.<sup>7</sup>

Next, he organized a police force composed of Blacks to discipline the White population and keep them in line.<sup>8</sup>

5 "Hath given forth upon usury ... he shall not live." Ezek 18:13

6 In 1290, the bankers were banished from England and their wealth seized. Those surviving confiscation did so by blending with the native population. They became almost indistinguishable by observation. Oliver Cromwell, the bankers' great friend and champion, has been accused of being a descendant to explain his Lawlessness. The same may be true of other notorious renegades of history. Cromwell lavished land on certain of his supporters and excluded others. Charles II is believed to have given them additional lands and many of the old titles to discharge partially his obligations to them. Much of the new aristocracy of Britain (since 1600) is believed to be of this group which could explain their unabashed Lawlessness and otherwise incomprehensible behavior through the years. "By their fruits ye shall know them." Matt 7:20. The ancestry of a persecutor is really immaterial to a victim. Any unlawful persecutor can cause a victim to be just as dead. Thus - the Law remains the yardstick by which all acts are measured. It is all-important; which is why the Phineas priesthood is commanded to punish violators impartially.

7 Taxes are the hall mark of government by usury bankers. Taxed land can never be owned, it can only be rented from the state. A tax shows that the land has been pledged by the state. Neither taxes nor interest are needed as proved by almost 500 years of Western history when taxes and interest were outlawed. See "Tallies," War Cycles/Peace Cycles, p. 37, 38, 48, 229.

8 "Thou mayest not set a stranger over thee." Deut 17:15

His Black police were ordered to bring to court a Boer, Frederick Bezuidenhout. The Black police killed him instead. This triggered a revolt similar to Bacon's Rebellion. The governor boasted that he easily suppressed this revolt. At Slachter's Nek, in March 1816, he hanged five White "rebels" and banished 32. Interestingly, the governor's executioner hanged the condemned so that they died very slowly.<sup>9</sup> All this was noted by the Boers.

The governor made few friends. In 1820, he persuaded Parliament to borrow £50,000 so that he could import English settlers to back his policies. Five thousand English settlers were brought in, given Boer lands, and told horror tales about the Boers. They were carefully segregated so that the Boers could not answer the charges and form sympathies with them. The Boers saw that these new settlers were settled on their land and spoke the same language as the hated governor, so they classified the English settlers with the governor. It was the old balance of power that has kept the money kings in power for hundreds of years.<sup>10</sup>

No one could doubt that the English governor was in the saddle. He continued his policies by replacing all Boer officers with his own men. Most could speak no Afrikaans-Dutch.

### The Missionary Homeland Plan

Many of the English settlers in South Africa became too friendly with the Boers. This was the type of thing that could become a real problem to the British. Something more was needed to handle this problem if it became serious.

This was the establishment of Black "homelands" which were to be ruled by British missionaries, not the Boers. The media told the world that the missionaries were sent to the savages to set up

9 Unnecessary brutality is another hallmark of the stranger. A particularly brutal method of execution was observed in the Nuremberg hanging of defeated German World War II leaders. Each was hanged so that he smashed his face into the side of the gallows when the trap was sprung.

10 Protestant landholders were dispossessed in Scotland by usury bankers. Catholics were dispossessed of their land in Ireland because they rebelled. The landless Scots were then transported across the sea to become tenants of absentee English landlords on the newly vacated Irish lands. They defended their new homes with a will to keep from starving. The Catholic Irish hated these Protestant Scots, with the hatred encouraged by the owners. The fight has lasted to this day with those fighting not realizing that the land they are fighting for is taxed. The tax is proof that it has already been pledged to the banks by the government for debts. If the true story were ever told, the contending parties might unite to divide the land Lawfully, and the established Church, the crown, and the bankers would lose their claim, and receive the prescribed punishment from God's priests made fierce by the Word.



hospitals and schools and bring the blessings of Christianity. The thing not stated was that most of these missionaries were establishment priests who followed orders, and their orders were to encourage a hostile attitude among the Blacks against the independent White Afrikaner. These British missionaries gave the natives a smattering of an African-European education, a quickie course in Samaritan Christianity, and a longer course on why the Boers were bad. The ultimate objective was to bring the Boers and their property under control of those who ruled England. The Blacks were taught that their natural ally was the missionary and the British government, and their natural enemy was the Boer. It was skillfully done and has borne fruit down through the years.

Later, this homelands plan, originally established by the British missionary/government alliance for their own use, was adopted by the South Africans to separate the various hostile Black tribes from each other and the Whites. This occurred in the mid-1900s.

The Blacks then banished the missionaries and ruled themselves in these homelands. This deprived the missionaries of Black homeland rule, the British government of their anti-White allies, and won the South Africans the undying hatred of establishment mainline churches ... something that they could not care less about.

### Slavery Ends

America, once separated from England, stopped importing Black slaves and sent cruisers to catch slave ships on the high seas. These actions helped ruin the English slave trade. All, however, was not lost. Money could be made by freeing the slaves. In 1833, £20 million was borrowed to free the slaves and compensate their owners.

Forcing an additional debt of £20 million on the people of Britain benefited the bankers only. It certainly did not benefit the South African Boers who were informed by their governor that their slaves were now free. They would be paid for them, but to get the money they had to travel a thousand miles overland to a port, and then travel thousands of miles more to London and apply for payment there.

The result was that the slaves were freed in 1833, and most South Africans were never compensated. This amounted to robbery. Next, the Kaffir war was fought in 1834-35. The new colonial secretary,

Lord Glenelg declared that the Kaffir invaders were more right than the Boers and refused to give effective help.<sup>11</sup> The English piled injury onto injury.

The Boers determined to go into the midst of this seething mass of warring Black humanity rather than remain under the ruthless and tyrannical British government. The exodus was described by the Encyclopedia Britannica in this manner:

"It was an exodus like that of the children of Israel from Egypt, the heads of families packing all their household goods with their women and children in the great lumbering ox-wagons, beside which they drove their vast herds of cattle and sheep."<sup>12</sup>

These settlers went into what was to become the Free State and the distant Transvaal, too far away for the British to bother, and for a time, they were left alone. One group went into Natal. Dingaan, the Zulu chief who succeeded Chaka attacked them and wiped out one Boer Laager at Weenen.

### The Blood River Battle

The "Great Trek," or Afrikaner exodus from British rule in the Cape, started in 1835 and culminated in the founding of the Boer Republic. The following story by South African author *Dirk van der Marwe* was copied in Richard Hoskins newsletter, issue #144, September 1986.<sup>13</sup>

"C. A. Venter, an Afrikaner historian says: 'The major reason for the Great Trek was Ordinance 50. This infamous ordinance stated that there would thenceforth (circa 1835) not be any further discrimination between White and Black (full citizenship) one man one vote et al' in the Cape ... and the ordinance could only be repealed or amended by the British Government

11 A recent Hollywood movie was shown about the Zulu chief, "Chaka." This bold, bloody Zulu leader seemed a demon in human form. He commanded tens of thousands of warriors, regimented and under iron discipline. These Black regiments were formidable. Chaka trained his army into a weapon that never lost. Chaka hated all he did not rule, and he hated Whites. This is the enemy the Boers faced.

12 E/B, 14th Ed., So. Africa, p. 54.

13 Readers may obtain a free copy of Hoskins' newsletter by writing The Virginia Publishing Company, P. O. Box 997, Lynchburg, Virginia 24505



in England (making it an Englishman's law to be obeyed by South Africans).

"This act, Venter states, 'left the Afrikaners feeling that they had lost control over their lives and destiny to a foreign power, and moreover that a government not of their own kinfolk was arrayed against them on the side of those who were not of their race.'<sup>14</sup>

"Practically speaking, this 'Ordinance 50' was designed to place the South Africans under the heel of the Blacks and make them subject to their tender mercies as was done in Haiti 45 years before and in the Southern United States 30 years later.

"Unable to survive under such conditions, the Afrikaners abandoned their businesses and farms, which were quickly grabbed by the British authorities for their own use, loaded their wagons, and started their now famous trek into the virtually unknown lands to the north.<sup>15</sup>

"They were pioneers moving into new country. When camping for the night or when in danger, they arranged their wagons in a circle. This circle of defense was called the "laager."

"The historic Battle of Blood River made the 'laager' synonymous with survival, solidarity and victory for the Afrikaner. This battle was fought on the 16th of December 1838. It followed after seven days of prayer and pleas for intercession to the Almighty in which the Afrikaners beseeched the Lord to give them the victory in the pending attack by Dingaan and his 30,000 Zulu impis (warriors) and to preserve them as a nation.

"On the morning of Dec. 16, 1838, under the leadership of Andries Pretorius and Sarel Cilliers, a covenant was made with the Lord. It reads as follows:

14 ED: It was obvious to the South Africans that Britain was allied with their Black enemies, but it was not obvious that Britain itself was not ruled by the British.

15 "English officials tried their utmost to prevent Piet Retef and his companions from providing themselves with ammunition on their departure from Cape Colony to face the savage foes and wild animals which would be encountered." *The Boer Fight For Freedom*, Michael Davitt, Funk & Wagnalls, NY, 1902, p. 3.

"My brothers and fellow citizens, here we stand in the presence of the Holy God, creator of heaven and earth, to make a vow unto Him, that if His protection shall be with us and (He) give our enemy into our hand so that we might be victorious over him, that this day and date every year shall be spent as a birthday and a day of thanksgiving, just as a Sabbath is spent, and that we shall erect a temple to His honor wherever it will be pleasing to Him, and that we shall also instruct our children that they must also share in it, as well as for our generations yet to come. Because the Honor of His name shall thereby be glorified, and the glory and honor of the victory shall be given Him. (Original in Dutch)..."

"By the end of the day the 460-odd Afrikaner men with their women and children not only successfully fought off the repeated onslaughts with the loss of Zulu lives estimated at 12,000 and not a single casualty on the Afrikaner side, but they also irrevocably bound future generations for survival to Him.

"If the outcome of the battle is to be considered a miracle, then equally miraculous is the fact that the Afrikaners did not lose a single one of their animals, notwithstanding the thousands of spears hurled inside the 'laager'. Neither did the animals (900 oxen, 500 horses) stampede at the blood chilling battle cries that accompanied 30,000 warriors' attack after attack. Neither did the odor of blood which permeated the air give cause to stampede.

"Old Zulus who took part in the battle as young warriors were later to tell that what decided the battle against them was not the Boers shooting from between the wheels of the wagons, but Boers shooting from the White cloud hovering above the laager all day' ... Afrikaners know their survival is completely dependent on divine intervention."

A Boer republic was set up in Natal. In 1842, English troops were sent to garrison Port Natal. Three years later Natal was annexed by the British.

A Black tribe to the north, the Griquas, under protection of the missionaries, was formidable because the missionaries had taught them the use of firearms. One of them, Chief Sechele, the protégé



of the famous Dr. Livingston,<sup>16</sup> caused particular trouble. It was suspected that his depredations were instigated by the British. His attacks on the Boers were used as an excuse by the British to move in and restore order and also to claim sovereignty over the Boers. They did not actively enforce their claims at this time, but their foot was in the door.

In 1852, the British sent commissioners to the Boers and signed the Sand River Compact which guaranteed them "freedom to manage their own affairs."

In 1880, the British declared war on the Boers. What had happened was this:

### Diamonds

In 1867 diamonds were discovered in the Orange Free State. In 1871, the British colonial secretary authorized the Cape governor to take over the diamond fields. The Boers of the Orange Free State proposed arbitration by an outside party. The proposal was refused by the British. However, in 1876, £90,000 was borrowed and given to the Boers as a token payment for the seizure of the mines.

The British then went on to claim the Transvaal. At this, the Boers took up arms and besieged the garrison at Potchefstroom and forced them to surrender. The English, not having troops available to invade, offered the Boers independence under the crown.

The British kept pushing from the south. Many Boers pulled up stakes and continued on north into lands that had been vacated by the "difaqane" - the Black holocaust.

### Black Difaqane

The following is another article by the Afrikaaner author, Dirk Van der Merwe, which appeared in *DAIS*, P. O. Box 1180, Fort Langley, B. C., March 1988. It is a story of an extraordinary adventure in South Africa - a venture which became very profitable for those who risked their blood and treasure to take and keep it.

#### "Difaqane"

"Difaqane is a Sotho word meaning 'forced relocation' or 'hammering.' The Nguni word 'Mfecane' for the same concept means 'devastated in a total war.'

"Both of these words are at best extremely poor attempts to describe the horror and magnitude of the worst (recorded) instance of Black fratricide, and Black on Black genocide in Southern Africa.

"... these wars started when the Manthatisi drove the Mist people from their country and then moved on west either to destroy other clans or to disperse them.

"In this way a congestion involving hundreds of thousands of people developed. Sotho groups both large and small turned westward, each trespassing on the domain of another.

### Waves Of Invaders

"Powerful armies annihilated their weaker neighbors, confiscating their possessions and moving on, knowing full well that if they loitered they too would be attacked by wave upon wave of people advancing from the east.

"Difaqane hurled the Sotho people into a maelstrom of destruction, until eventually an estimated twenty- eight distinct clans disappeared, leaving not a trace of their former existence.

"... The Difaqane exhausted itself by 1829 (leaving) in its wake the once proud Sotho nation a devastated ragtag mob ... The victors' 'mop up policy' was simple: That which could not be consumed on the spot was burned, slaughtered, raped, wrecked or murdered. With crops burned and herds obliterated, cannibalism became a necessity to survival ...

### Vacant Land

"The Difaqane also left the region north of the Orange River (South Africa) an uninhabited wasteland, littered with the ruins of burnt out kraals and the multiplied thousands of sun bleached skeletons - a wilderness ready for the taking by whomever would settle and claim it as their home.

"... seven years after the Difaqane came to an end, the Boers, emigrating from the British rule in the Cape colony, entered this uninhabited region and claimed it as their property ...

<sup>16</sup> Ibid., p. 89



(they) brought a religious and moral ethic ... that all should live in peace and that the weak were worthy of protection.

"... the enforcement of this ethic by Whites has (until now) prevented a re-enactment of the Difaqane in South Africa."

### Gold

In 1886, gold was discovered in unbelievable quantities on the Witwaterstrand "whereupon the hated English, with Frenchmen, Germans, Jews and others, Rhodes himself among the first, came flocking into the Transvaal to exploit the Eldorado."<sup>17</sup>

Cecil Rhodes, part of the international money establishment, determined to take the whole thing if he could. First he claimed all the land ahead of the march of the Boer settlements. This immense tract he planned to claim and develop for the establishment with himself holding it "in fief" as a prince, with the whole thing bearing his name - "Rhodesia."

He then planned a coup d'état to take the gold mines in the Boer state at one fell swoop. He financed a heavily armed column of horsemen to storm Johannesburg and take over its government, much as John Brown had been financed by banking interests to foment revolution in the United States.

Jameson, administrator of his Rhodesia development, and later prime minister of the Cape, led heavily armed troopers to Johannesburg. In so doing, he rode into a beehive, something more than he could handle. Four days later Jameson and his men were backed to the wall by half his number of irate Boers and forced to surrender. His captors graciously spared their lives, as Berkeley's life had been spared earlier in Virginia.<sup>18</sup>

The Jameson Raid failed, but there were other ways to claim the gold fields.

A great many English worked at the gold mines. The rights of these newly arrived miners suddenly became a great concern of the mine owners who had never before cared about anyone's rights but

<sup>17</sup> E/B, 14th Ed. South Africa, p. 58

<sup>18</sup> This was in contrast to the later execution of Boer Commandants Lotter and Scheepers captured by the British while engaged in legitimate warfare.

their own. They quickly organized a reform party<sup>19</sup> which called upon England to handle their disputes with the Boer government.

Captain Mark Phillips' book *With Rimington*, London, Edward Arnold, 1909, p. 105-106, includes this letter:

"As for the Uitlanders and their grievances, I would not ride a yard or fire a shot to right all the grievances that were ever invented. The mass of Uitlanders, the miners and working men of the Rand, had no grievances. I know what I am talking about, for I have lived and worked among them. I have seen English newspapers passed from one to another and roars of laughter roused by the *Times* telegrams about these precious grievances. We used to read the London papers to find out what our grievances were; and very frequently they would be due to causes of which we had never even heard. ...

"No; the Uitlands the world has heard of were not these but the Stock Exchange operators, manipulators of the money market, company floaters, and gamblers generally, a large percentage of them Jews. They voiced (spoke for) Johannesburg, had the press in their hands, worked the wires, and controlled and arranged what sort of information should reach England. ... When the proper time came, 'grievances,' such as would arrest England's attention and catch the ear of the people, were deliberately invented."

There was no way to deal with British political hacks. They served their masters. The hacks, however, could do nothing without the acquiescence of the British people. It was the British people who would have to send their sons to force a five year voting period on the Boers, while at the same time claiming the gold mines for the bankers.

The unsophisticated, straightforward Boers had not devised a way to deal with a hostile media, whose lies and distortions were poisoning the English people against them. Instead of shutting its mouth and becoming sole spokesman for themselves, they allowed reporters of an alien press the freedom to roam the land and ruin it.

In their extremities, the Boers went to great lengths to list their rights and publish them in a book. This effort by Michael Davitt is

<sup>19</sup> "The Outlander conspiracy which succeeded the Raid, financed and directed by the very capitalists who promoted the earlier Jameson plot, for 'the redress of the intolerable grievances' ... was carried on by the paid agents of Messrs. Rhodes, Beit, Echstein & Co. in Johannesburg." *Ibid.*, p. 42.



in my hand right now. According to the card, it is the first time in fifty years that anyone has removed it from the Jones Memorial Library, and it has been ninety long years since the media-fomented war ripped South Africa apart.

The Boers had not wanted the Uitland or "outland" miners in their lands, gold or no gold, but they were there. Once there the British government extended their protection over them, and, to weaken Boer power within their own nation, demanded that the Boers give the newcomers the vote.

To prevent war, the Boers arranged for the uitlanders to vote after a residence of seven years.

President Kruger repeatedly requested these disputes between Boers and British be arbitrated. Every time he was turned down. In a document found on a captured British officer soon after at Dundee, it was discovered that war had been decided upon long before by England. At the very time the discussions were in progress between Kruger and the British representative, plans were under way for a British army to invade both the Free State and the Transvaal.<sup>20</sup>

The British quibbled about the South African insistence that new voters have a seven year residency; they said that the time was too long and that the gold miners must be allowed to vote in five years. The Boers agreed.

But they began to realize that the British were only delaying matters until their troopships on the high seas could land thousands of additional men. The British were not bargaining in good faith. So, attached to their agreement to allow only a five year residency for uitlanders to vote, were these conditions:

- 1) Future disputes to be settled by arbitration.
- 2) British troops on the Boer borders be withdrawn.
- 3) Troops marching to the Boer Republics be directed away to the coast.
- 4) Troops at sea not to be landed.<sup>21</sup>

If the British would not accept the latest Boer concessions of the five year voting limit with these four conditions attached, the South Africans would assume that the British were delaying until their

<sup>20</sup> Davitt, p. 47.

<sup>21</sup> Ibid. p. 51.

armies had grown large enough to overwhelm them and that Britain had determined on war.

A note containing the conditions listed above was delivered on October 5 and a reply was requested by October 11, 1899. It was also stated that if no reply were forthcoming it would be assumed that the absence of a British reply would be the British declaration of war.

On October 11th the Boers received this message from the English:

"Sir - ... Her Majesty's Government have received with great regret the peremptory demands of the Government of the South African Republic ... the conditions demanded by the Government of the South African Republic are such as her Majesty's Government deem it impossible to discuss - ..." W. Conyngham Green, C. B.<sup>22</sup>

This was the British declaration of war. A note from the representatives of the British Empire launched its millions against the South African Boer Republic and its 232,000 Boer men, women, and children.

<sup>22</sup> Ibid. 54.



### Boer War

When I was a youngster, an elderly retired British Major moved to town. He was tall, stately, with a closely clipped mustache. He had married one of our gracefully aging Virginia belles and had come to live in Lynchburg where she had kin. He bought "monkeyville," a wooded tract containing old War Between The States trenches where generations of Virginia boys played war. He leveled the "trenches" and built a fine house which had a lead water fountain in front dated 1741. The house looked like a French chateau. He named it "Seven Pines." The boys hated to see the trenches go, but the house that replaced them included magnificent formal gardens, hidden pools with wonderfully large gold fish, and a fine swimming pool with figures, flowers, and more fountains. I was impressed. He courteously invited many Lynchburg residents to use his swimming pool. My family was included.

The white haired major with his clipped mustache was a very congenial sort, but there were two subjects he would never discuss. Virginia's favorite subject, genealogy, and the Boer War. I have since discovered the reason for the reluctance of the British upper classes to discuss their ancestry. They know precisely which of our ancestors hold claim to the titles and lands they presently possess, and their reluctance to discuss the subject often borders on rudeness.

This gentleman was well-connected in Britain, and had been a major in the British army serving in South Africa during the Boer War. He hated the Boers. When a youngster, I had an interest in military history and tried to get him to talk about his experiences. He would start a story, get red in the face, stand up and stalk off with such an expression on his face that one dared not broach the subject again. I couldn't understand it.

Many years later, after studying what had happened to the British Army in South Africa, I understood his reaction. A handful of Boer farmers had done the unforgivable - they had beaten the socks off the finest regiments in the British army and had humiliated the entire British Empire.

Starting on page 575 of *The Boer Fight For Freedom*, Michael Davitt, Funk & Wagnalls, NY, 1902, are tables that should be examined before any other detail of the war is examined. They explain everything.

"The total British forces employed in the war, and the casualties suffered by them up to the 1st of January 1902, are given as follows in British official reports:

These statistics tell a story that has long been suppressed. The powers who ruled Britain wanted the Boer gold fields. To get the gold fields, they needed to subjugate the Boers. They used the British Empire to defeat the Boers and get the the gold mines. The following is how it was done.

### Active Fighting

The Boer War was divided into two parts. At first, the Boers met the British toe-to-toe wherever they chose and inflicted unbelievable casualties on them. Battles in which odds were between three to one and six to one were commonplace. When the Boers were outnumbered only two to one, they figured that they held victory in their hand and went right after the British. With few exceptions, the Boer War was one long humiliating military disaster for the British.

### British Troops Employed In South Africa

#### Up to January 1, 1902

Garrison in SA on Aug. 1, 1899	9,940
Regulars	
Troops from Home & British Colonies	207,911
Troops from India	11,651
Colonials:	
Troops from Colonies other than SA	18,568
Troops raised in SA	52,414
Militia	33,958
Imperial Yeomanry	28,385
Volunteers from United Kingdom	17,341
Constabulary from UK	6,889
Constabulary from Canada	1,238
Scottish Horse	454
	-----
	388,749



On January 1, 1902, the following British forces were still in the field.

Regulars	141,700
Militia	19,750
Imperial Yeomanry	13,650
Volunteers	5,400
Colonials	57,300
<hr/>	
Total	237,800

Figure 6: British Forces in South Africa.

-----

**Official British Casualties to January 31, 1902**

The British casualties, officially admitted, during the whole campaign, up to Jan 31, 1902, are given as follows:

	Officers	Men
Killed In Action	473	4,841
Died of wounds	166	1,697
Prisoners died in captivity	5	97
Died of Disease	286	11,523
Accidental deaths	21	577
	-----	-----
Total deaths	951	18,735
Missing & PWs	7	432
Invalided home	2,731	63,603
	-----	-----
	3,689	82,770
		-----
Sub total	both	86,459
British PWs		15,000 est
British sick		14,000 est
		-----
Grand tot. British Casualties		115,459

Figure 7: British Losses

"The Boer forces and losses figure out as follows: The English having made war on the whole Boer nation, men, women, and children, the entire Boer population of the two little Republics would represent the 'army' opposed to the 388,000 English troops:

"The Boer population of the Transvaal and Free State in 1899 is not accurately known. The general estimates were for:

The South African Republics	130,000
The Orange Free State	90,000
<hr/>	
Total Boer population of	220,000
Add Cape Colony and Volunteers	12,000
<hr/>	
Grand Total	232,000

"I estimate the casualties of the Boer armies up to December 31, 1901 as follows:

Burghers killed in the field	3,000
Burghers died of wounds & sickness	2,000
Children killed in the concentration camps	14,000
Non-combatants, men & women, who died in ordinary course of nature, at the rate of 20 per 1,000 for two years, say	8,000
<hr/>	
Total killed & died	27,000
Men, Women & children imprisoned in the concentration camps (est.)	120,000
Combatants and non-combatants in prisons in St. Helena, Ceylon, India, Bermuda, and elsewhere (est.)	36,000
Burghers still fighting, (est.)	12,000
Leaving Boer men, women, and children unaccounted for in the Transvaal and Free State to the number of	37,000
<hr/>	
Total	232,000

Figure 8: Boer Losses.



In the second part, the British armies had grown so large that there was no way the small Boer armies could meet them in formal battle. The Boers broke up into small commando units and scattered, waging hit and run war. The British retaliated by burning everything aboveground that belonged to the Boers<sup>1</sup> and taking hostage their women and children and putting them into vast concentration camps where they were fed bad food and water.<sup>2</sup>

The children died like flies. Over 20,000 women and children died in these camps. The British killed far more Boers in these camps than they were able to kill on the battlefield. The threat was that if the Boers did not stop fighting, all their women and children would be allowed to die. This, in the end, forced the Boers to make peace to avoid the complete extermination of their people.

### War Instructions To Burghers

General Joubert of the Boer army issued instructions to officers and men regarding their conduct while in British territory:<sup>3</sup>

"When we are unwillingly compelled to cross the border-line of our country, let it not be thought or said that we are a band of robbers; and with that view let us remain as far as possible away from any private dwellings or places, where no enemy is stationed, and not allow each one to help himself.

"When food, forage, or cattle are needed, let one or two persons be appointed in each division, and let them be assisted by as many men, and if necessary, officers, as may be required to acquire such goods from the owner or caretaker, enter them upon a proper list, and, if desired, let a receipt be given for the same, with a promise of recompense by the Government of the S. A. R.

1 "Take care that you do nothing that is cruel ... do not you render the land naked by cutting down trees that bear fruit, but spare them as considering that they were made for the benefit of men." Josephus, *Antiquities* 4:8:42.

2 "He hath also provided for such as are taken captive that they may not be injured, and especially that the women may not be abused." Josephus, *Against Apion* 2:30

3 These are the same sort of instructions given the Confederate Armies. Most of the Afrikaner officers and men were landholders, ruled their land as kingdoms, and were therefore kings. Kings make do with what their kingdom provides. They have no need to rob others. Most Union officers and men and most British officers and men were landless and salary slaves. Anything they could steal added to the little they possessed.

"I will not allow robbery or plunder, and forbid any personal injury to be done to any private individual. - P. J. Joubert, Commandant-General.<sup>4</sup>

### Magersfontein Battle

There are many British / South African encounters from which to choose. The result of one is practically the same as the next. At the Battle of Magersfontein British forces containing the Highland Brigade, the Lancers, Australian and Canadian Volunteers, the Guards, Black Watch, and other Highland Regiments comprising about 14,000 men with 38 field pieces, were faced by 5,000 burghers with 3 field pieces.

The preliminary British artillery attack to soften up the Boer defenses lasted two days during which 3 Boers were killed and 6 wounded. No return shots were fired by the Boer artillery.

The British infantry attacked through a morning mist. The mist lifted exposing the attacking force, and the fate of the Black Watch and their general was sealed as Boer sharpshooters unerringly began their grisly work. Also decimated were the Highland Light Infantry, the Argyles, Seaforths, and Sutherlands. In half a minute over 700 Highlanders fell.

The Boer chronicler commented:

"Pity it was that Celtic blood should have paid so dear a penalty for so ignoble a cause, and that men from Highland glens and isles, sons of once liberty loving clans, should be the fallen foemen."

The South Africans lost 71 killed and 165 wounded. The English losses approached 1,500 (embarrassing losses were often "fudged" by reporting them piecemeal over a long time period). The Highland Brigade alone left 700 on the field. The Black Watch alone lost 300 men and 20 officers.

The London *Standard* in a rare unbiased article stated:

"...the enemy behaved with great courtesy. They had given water to our wounded of the Highland Brigade ... He further offered 50 burghers to help to bury our dead."<sup>5</sup>

4 Davitt, p. 87

5 Ibid. p. 223



### Nicholson's Kop Battle

Colonel Carleton of the British Army occupied Nicholson's Kop with two regiments. General Christian De Wet and 250 men climbed to "shoot them off."

Boer casualties: 16 killed; 55 wounded; Total 71.

British casualties: 63 men killed; 249 wounded; 954 prisoners. Total 1,266 casualties, with a battery of mountain guns captured.

After the battle, Boers carried water up from the valley to the English wounded on the mountain. There was no show of triumph over beaten foes.

### Sion Kop Battle

Spion Kop was a commanding hill taken by a night attack by 3,000 British from 16 Afrikaner defenders of the *Vryheid* commando. The *Carolina* commando sent up 90 men to drive them away. Later, more reinforcements were scraped up and sent to the hill until a total of 600 burghers were in the fight. The battle lasted for 14 hours before the British retreated.

South African losses were 50 killed and 120 wounded. Total British losses in killed, wounded, and prisoners were 1,500 with 400 being killed.

"A story is told of an old burgher, aged seventy ... accompanied by his grandson, a boy of fourteen. No other Mauser on Spion Kop dealt out a more steady and effective fire during the carnage of the 24th than that of Oom Piet. 'One more Rooinek down, grandpapa.' ... Finally Oom Piet's bandolier was emptied of its cartridges, and no other supply was at hand. ... Outside the entrenchments lay a burgher who had been shot ... the boy ... vaulted over the boulders, possessed himself of the dead burgher's bandolier, and sprang back ... with the ammunition. On the dead being counted the following day the old man and his grandson were found among the slain, lying side by side."<sup>6</sup>

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. p. 355.

### Boers Hymn Before Battle of Colenso

There were 23,000 Britishers forming up in the morning preparing for battle. Less than 5,000 burghers opposed them.

"Suddenly there came from the Boer positions a deep volume of thrilling sound, rolling, as it were, like peals of muffled thunder down from the hills, on towards the river ... It was the morning hymn of the Boer camp; the invocation of Divine help for the cause of 'Land un Volk,' sung by the older burghers as, rifle in hand, and hearts and minds set on victory, they stood ready."<sup>7</sup>

On the Britishers came, the Fusiliers and Connaught Rangers in front, and the Border Regiment and Inniskillings behind. Not a soul was to be seen in front. The Boers patiently waited until the enemy got too close to get away.

General Botha's report to President Kruger stated simply:

"The God of our fathers has to-day granted us a brilliant victory ... we opened fire upon them with our Mauser musketry, and killed their cannon-service, and ... captured ... ten big, beautiful cannons, together with twelve ammunition wagons ... We have also made prisoners of war of about 170 of their best men, who stormed us so pluckily time after time. ... The enemy's loss is terrible. Their dead are lying upon each other, and I think the British loss must have been 2,000 men.

"Our loss is confined to about 30 killed and wounded..."<sup>8</sup>

### Guerrilla Warfare - The Last Stage

The British army grew into a steamroller of a quarter of a million men. It was just too big to fight toe-to-toe. There were only perhaps 15,000 Boer commandoes. The decision was made to disperse and continue the war with hit and run tactics.

The British retaliated with scorched earth tactics, brutality toward prisoners, and summary executions. Farms, buildings, and crops were burned. In places - everything above ground that could burn, was burned. They punished the civilian population by herding them into concentration camps where many died.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. p. 260.

<sup>8</sup> Ibid. p. 272.



Empire generals boast much of their military "sweeps." Entire armies were spaced at arm's length distance in lines that stretched for miles and miles, and marched across the countryside. Behind the sweep-line rode highly mobile troops who immediately attacked the quarry that the sweep-line flushed.

In practice, the "sweeps" had some success, but the Boers mostly evaded them and continued their successes right down to the final capitulation.<sup>9</sup>

The only land the British army could really call its own was the land that they were standing on. All else belonged to the handful of Boer commandoes in the field.

As the war progressed, the Boers were forced to take greater and greater risks to achieve the same results. It is interesting to speculate on what would have been the outcome of the conflict if the Boers had detailed a small fraction of those they lost in action to special missions outside the combat arena against specific military, economic, and propaganda media targets on the scale that is presently planned or actually done by, say, the Soviet Spetznaz or the Israeli Mossad.

While the Boers quickly learned about soldiers, cannon, supplies, and the terror of the torch, those were only combat techniques of the soldiers they were fighting. They had no real comprehension of the deeper type of warfare being waged against them by those who directed the soldiers.

The simple missions actually undertaken against traitors behind British lines were almost 100% effective. But, nothing was undertaken against these other less vulnerable but more important targets.

### Conclusion By A Boer

The following heart-rending words written in the middle of the Boer War are those of an African patriot crying for someone to listen, to understand. It is the cry of someone whose land was being brutalized, a cry that echoes down over the years.

9 The Tunnels of Chu Chi provides an insight into how the Vietnamese communists dealt with modern day "sweeps," today's standard procedure against irregular warfare. The Viet Cong constructed tunnels that could be lived in, and another type that could be fought from, few of which were discovered during the entire war, and only one of which was successfully stormed.

"The world looks on - the civilized Christian world of churches, and of preachers of the Gospel ... at this barbarous spectacle in South Africa, with about as much real indignation as if Lord Kitchener and his 220,000 troops were inflicting all the horrors of British warfare upon a commonwealth of criminals or brigands, and not upon two little Republics made up of one of the bravest races in Europe, and of the most intensely and sincerely ... Christian people on earth ...

"England has killed 14,000 Christian children, has imprisoned 45,000 Christian women in barbed wire enclosures, has devastated two Christian countries where there was less poverty and less vice than in any other Christian community in the world, and had armed savages to help her ... And yet Cardinal Vaughan,<sup>10</sup> in the name of the Catholic Church of England, the Archbishop of Canterbury in behalf of the Protestants, and ... the Nonconformists of the same enlightened Christian nation, piously call down God's blessing upon the arms which are killing and exterminating a little Christian nation in South Africa. And the United States, Austria, and other countries, equally Christian, enlightened, and humane, sell ... supplies to the power which wages such a war.

"The explanation of this ... moral standard of the day is not hard to seek. England, by her money markets and press and commerce; by her ... pulpit and Parliament; ... by her rationalistic missionaries, her newspapers, and the influence of her wealth, has morally debased Christianity, and has enthroned the creed of human cupidity in the Temple out of which the gentle Savior of Nazareth, with his gospel of love and of justice and humanity, once banished the money changers.<sup>11</sup> This is why Cardinals and Archbishops, papers and stock exchanges,

10 "It is now a question of something more than of what is lawful... we realize with grateful confidence the most honorable mission with which God seems to have entrusted us ... For these purposes, you will please to recite on Sundays, ... the prayers to be found in the 'Manual' ... and headed 'In Times of Calamity.'" Davitt, footnote p. 587

11 The scriptures tell Christians that Jesus in the beginning gave the Law to Israel only. (1) "He showed his word unto Jacob, his statutes and his judgments unto Israel. He hath not dealt so with any nation: and as for his judgments, they have not known them." Ps 147:19-20. (2) "Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you. Matt 7:6



politicians and cabinets, look on as unmoved at the horrors of the concentration camps as the Herodian High Priests probably did at the measures which carried out the wholesale murder of the Judean children of 1,900 years ago. It also explains why a United States, a France, and a Germany continue, at least in their governments, as passive spectators of the most dishonorable and unchristian war which has ever disgraced a civilized age."<sup>12</sup>

### The Enemy Media

Far more important than the tremendous British armies was the establishment media. The Boers constantly complained of the way they were being treated. Such things as the following appear in their writings:

"This little state has been hounded down by its English enemies in the press of England and America."<sup>13</sup>

In another place:

"The crusade of lies carried on by the capitalist newspapers was in no way justified by the actual facts."<sup>14</sup>

Afrikaners, confusing "freedom of the press"<sup>15</sup> with giving license to an alien apparatus to teach murder, rape, plunder, and annihilation; and not knowing to establish a central information clearing office to guard and defend against the plague spread by this media, were helpless before the world media colossus, far more powerful and deadly than the British army. The media were the reasons the army was there. The media were the reasons the British soldiers committed the atrocities. The media were the whips the international bankers used to rule the Christian British public.

<sup>12</sup> *Ibid.* p. 587-588.

<sup>13</sup> *Ibid.* p. 12

<sup>14</sup> *Ibid.* p. 24

<sup>15</sup> "Death and life are in the power of the tongue: and they that love it shall eat the fruit thereof." Prov 18:21

Thomas Jefferson complained about the media. Andy Jackson condemned it. Its power was monstrous. People only know what they read or are told. They can know nothing else. Based on this they attempt to act righteously to ensure justice. Most, if given truth, act justly.

If people are made to believe a lie, and believing a lie they act to harm someone, they have been presented with a stumbling block,<sup>16</sup> and The Law condemns the liar. In a Christian nation the juries punish such offenders, and the government keeps watch to see that such things do not occur.<sup>17</sup>

The South Africans complained that "the 'grievances' thus manufactured by a subsidized press,"<sup>18</sup> were as much a part of the war as bullets and cannon. They did not realize that the press was not only subsidized, it was most often owned or controlled outright from abroad. It printed whatever it needed to gain the gold mines. If it was necessary to lie about miners' "grievances" - they lied. They alone selected the "source" to speak for the South Africans. If that "South African source" were composed of their own creatures in their pay, and if war followed because of it and thousands of men, women, and children died - that was the price paid for doing a good job. That too was all right. After all, war was good for the economy back home, the gold mines were an additional prize, and they were just doing their job.

The press and its owners, by their actions, had put themselves into the front lines where bullets fly, blood is spilt, and young lives are snuffed out by their false witnesses. *"Then shall ye do unto him, as he had thought to have done unto his brother ... And thine eye shall not pity; but life shall go for life."* The hirelings of the press coldbloodedly manufactured another war which murdered thousands. It was only the inability of the Boers to recognize this form of warfare that prevented them from retaliating by hunting down to a man the writers and owners responsible, a thing which could have easily been done.

<sup>16</sup> "If a false witness rise up against any man to testify against him that which is wrong ... Then shall ye do unto him, as he had thought to have done unto his brother ... And those which remain shall hear, and fear, and shall henceforth commit no more any such evil among you. And thine eye shall not pity; but life shall go for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot." Deut. 19:16-21.

<sup>17</sup> It has been the same through the ages. At the time of the Maccabees the government was in the hands of Greek strangers and alien law governed. This forced the people, in Phineas fashion, to govern and dispense punishment to evil doers.

<sup>18</sup> *Ibid.* p. 42



To condition the people of England, Australia, Canada, Scotland, and Ireland for the war, and to condition them to furnish needed soldiers, the most outrageous "atrocities stories" were manufactured about South Africans. South Africans noted that they had to contend with:

"The uniform silence of the Cape and English press on every incident or act which has conspicuously belied the unjust estimate of the Boer by his implacable enemy."<sup>19</sup>

The results of the fictitious media atrocity stories had predictable results. Following is a case in point:

"A nephew of General Joubert's ... entered a shed from whence sounds of pain came from a party of wounded British. ... he overheard one of the wounded say in tones of fear, 'May God have mercy on us, here they come! They will cut our throats!' 'Oh No, we won't,' instantly responded Mr. Joubert. 'We are Christians like yourselves, and you will be treated just as kindly as our own wounded!' ...

"Boers ... were believed to be a compound of uneducated Dutchmen and of savage Kaffir; a treacherous, inhuman foe, dead to all the better feelings of civilized soldiers; unkempt, cruel, and rapacious ... Great and agreeable, therefore was the astonishment of the British prisoners and wounded ... with the maligned Boer. They found him the very reverse of the picture which the ... slanderers in the Cape and London press had drawn of the people whose country was to be ruthlessly despoiled."<sup>20</sup>

The media had filled the British with lies in their effort to arouse public support for plundering the South African gold mines. As a consequence, many British soldiers thought nothing of shooting defenseless prisoners, or entering dwellings and robbing and even beating South African families. The feeling had been foisted that whatever punishment meted out to the evil South Africans was not half what they deserved.

The media-aroused British army went so far as to issue its soldiers "Mark IV ammunition"<sup>21</sup> - dum-dum bullets, bullets manufactured to expand on hitting human flesh and which inflict dreadful wounds.

<sup>19</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 79.

<sup>20</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 125.

<sup>21</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 124.

The media were responsible for this state of mind among the military.

The *Liverpool Daily Post* printed the following letter from one of the British soldiers at the front:

"Many of our soldiers are quite rich with the loot that has fallen to them. The infantry regiments profited to the largest extent. ... Our boys are parading about now with gold watches, chains, and other trinkets.' The spirit which prompted such unsoldierly conduct was the result of the calumnies circulated in the Rhodesian and Jingo press."<sup>22</sup>

This letter was printed without a mention of the Law which forbids such conduct. The British public and the recruits going into the British army were taught that despoiling Christian prisoners and Christian dead was acceptable behavior. Another media falsehood

The uninitiated did not comprehend the power of the usury kings who rule with their press. Their wealth is large. It was gotten by means God declares to be fraudulent.<sup>23</sup> This wealth is not measured in millions, hundreds of millions, or even a billion, but in tens and hundreds of billions. There are scores of these money barons who can, if they wish, buy companies like Chrysler Corporation, American Electric Power, or American Telephone as easily as a Boer could buy a wagon.

The international bankers learned in 1290 that invisibility is their protection. Their usury gives them the power to impose debt on borrowers. Debt reduces the borrowers to slaves. "*The borrower is slave...*" Slaves do the will of their masters. The usurers had growing multitudes of slaves required to do their will. Such rulers are powerful. They live unseen. Some live on vast estates having hundreds of retainers, airports, golf courses, and private armies of bodyguards. Their yachts rival anything seen by heads of state. But, their owners are seldom photographed by their media. Their papers overlook them. They are invisible.

We catch a glimpse when their overseers momentarily step into the limelight to bid \$5 billion or \$10 billion to add to their collection of corporations. A billion dollars is \$1,000 millions. Ten billion is \$10,000 millions. A one-time expenditure of five percent of this amount, or just \$500 million, would buy control of any state in the U.S. The same expenditure made each year would deliver control of

<sup>22</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 138

<sup>23</sup> Ezek 18:13



most countries. There are hidden individuals who own ten times ten billion, and control ten times that - or trillions of dollars.

We see them once in a while when we are stopped by police to allow their cavalcades to roar past, or when a private plane lands and is immediately surrounded by bodyguards, or when a mysterious fifty million dollar yacht drops anchor, or when the occasional mysterious meeting is held in the dead of night on a Virginia mountain top, seen and talked about by the locals. They are there.

Sometimes a glimpse of the illustrious is not all that exotic. While attending law school at William and Mary, I worked as usher and ticket collector at the local movie house, and had the opportunity to meet one of usury's major practitioners - John D. Rockefeller, Jr.

On occasion, he came to see a movie. Receiving word a few minutes before the show started, I would clear a few grumbling movie-goers from the back row to make room for him. Since he owned the theatre, that seemed reasonable enough. After everyone was seated and the show was ready to start, Rockefeller's little party arrived and slipped into their seats.

John D. Rockefeller, Jr. was a thin, well-dressed, polite, nice looking, elderly man of medium height. He had one or two attendants to whom I never had time to give a second thought. They sat on the same row with him. I supposed that he had gotten tired of looking at four walls somewhere and had to get out among people. I was probably right. He could have watched the movie at home if that is all that he had wanted to do.

This is what John D., Jr. looked like. He looked like anyone else. The entire time I was in Williamsburg I never saw his name in the paper, or his activities or opinions discussed by the media. Seldom seen, he appeared suddenly and disappeared just as fast, but, his presence hung over everything. He, or technically, his foundation, owned Colonial Williamsburg. Everyone there worked for the man.

This knowledge is not secret if one knows where to look. In Williamsburg, it was a fact of life seldom discussed, but who looks in Williamsburg? Especially when there is no limelight to guide. In other places and other times a little more digging is needed to uncover what is not discussed by the media. It becomes easier to follow the trail when sometimes they quietly boast among themselves, especially those things that happened in former years after the dust of time has covered most tracks. A few quotes illustrate:

"In 1593 Maranos arrived in Amsterdam after having been refused admission to Middleburg and Haarlem. ... They became strenuous supporters of the House of Orange and were in return protected by the stadholder." *Encyclopedia Britannica*, 14th Ed., Netherlands, p. 228.

"William III, employed Jews in his negotiations with foreign kings ... Isaac Lopez Suasso, (who lent two million gulden to William III for his descent upon England)." *Jewish Encyclopedia*, Netherlands, p. 230.

"When William III went to England to assume the British throne, Isaac Lopez Suasso granted him a long term loan of two million gulden without interest." *Univ. Jewish Ency.*, (Holland) p. 432.

Those who see with eyes sharpened by Christian Law know that "*The borrower is slave to the lender. Pr:22:7* Through their slaves, the lenders first ruled Holland, then Britain. The Britons that the South Africans fought were serfs, not hereditary foes. They were doing what serfs do when they are ordered to do it.

The wealthy rulers had others to execute their wishes. To crush the Boers, the Blacks were organized along with the armed might of the British Empire. Australia, Canada were represented. India sent troops. Had it been necessary, Germany and the United States would have been ordered to send their battalions, and they would have sent them. The establishment media in those countries obediently castigated the South Africans.

All that the suffering and agony of the South African men, women, and children proved was that a man who is a free "*king and priest*" is a better warrior than a serf. Christians already knew that. The Boers of South Africa bled themselves white defending themselves against hired hands, and never once struck a blow against those who caused the violations of God's Laws. The invading soldiers they killed were landless hired mercenaries. They were their own cousins, their own flesh and blood.

Those who caused the war now owned South Africa's gold and enjoyed the planes, yachts, corporations, and estates it bought while remaining invisible behind their paper curtain.



### State Religion

There are those who obey God's Law and those who don't. Those who obey are the Lawful. Those who disobey are outlawed by God. God has specified the outlaw's punishment. Phineas Priests enforce the Law, and God rewards them with a covenant of an everlasting priesthood.

The atrocity committed against South Africa was instigated by the establishment, fanned by the media and approved by the "state-religion." False witnesses assured the world that the crimes committed were approved by God. South Africa was damned by them and its people were earmarked for death.

In the Boer War, the media and the state-church were very visible. They relied on their victims' unsophisticated reactions to work their schemes, smoothing the way for the establishment to bring about the South African holocaust.

In defending themselves, the Boers called on the Lord, but forgot to listen to His words. They were so intent on the invader at hand that they neglected to watch those directing him. What did they forget?

**"Death and life are in the power of the tongue: and they that love it shall eat the fruit thereof." Prov 18:21**

**"If a false witness rise up against any man to testify against him that which is wrong ... Then shall ye do unto him, as he had thought to have done unto his brother ... And those which remain shall hear, and fear, and shall henceforth commit no more any such evil among you. And thine eye shall not pity; but life shall go for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot." Deut 19:16-21**

**"Hath given forth upon usury ... he shall surely die; his blood shall be upon him." Ezek 18:13**

The day will inevitably come when the sufferings of long bloody conflicts will teach a more successful mode of warfare. The Indians in Virginia almost annihilated the Colony until the White man copied their concept of total war and used it against them. In South Africa the financiers and their media could not be met on their own ground, and they were not forced onto the battlefield. South African

writers have voiced the opinion that ten Boers in Capetown and five in London could have accomplished more than 15,000 of their fellows on the veld.



---

## Chapter 8

---

# War Against Germany

## World War I

World War I was fought for two principal reasons: the land and wealth of Germany, and the land and wealth of Russia. The land had been ordered by God to be given to the people forever, but had been taken by the rulers. The establishment wished to possess this land and wealth of the Tzar of Russia, and the land and wealth of the Kaiser of Germany.

The first part, capturing the wealth of the Tzar, was realized. To prevent the Tzar of Russia, or any member of his family from ever reclaiming this wealth, they were shot. All of his land and property and that of his nobles, plus that of the Russian Eastern Orthodox Church, of which he was head, was seized. This together constituted the total land area of Russia. A prize indeed! No wonder the world bankers were so eager to finance the communist revolution.<sup>1</sup>

The second reason, the attempt to seize the German land, was only partially successful.

## Germany Surrenders

Britain needed help to prosecute the war. She executed the Balfour Agreement with world Zionists. This agreement gave the world Zionists the land of Palestine in exchange for bringing America into the war on the side of the allies.

The American media, from a balanced, even-handed treatment of the news, immediately began an anti-German crusade. Like the earlier stories of Southern soldiers bayoneting Black babies, and

1 One can see why no effective help was given the "white" Russian armies of the Tzar fighting the Bolshevik reds, and why the token American, British, and French armies sent to Russia were withdrawn after making their "appearance" and "doing all they could," and why the invading Polish army which had reached the gates of Moscow was turned back for lack of supplies never sent from Britain. The present "privatization" of this wealth is just a transfer of stolen wealth without an accounting.

Boers cutting wounded prisoner's throats, stories of German soldiers walking around with Belgian babies on their bayonets became daily fare. Books containing photographs of the most awful sights of bodies mutilated by shell fire were distributed, purported to be visual proof of German atrocities.

The British fleet prevented ships from neutral countries from supplying Germany. German submarines in turn blockaded the British Isles. At first they stopped ships, searched them, and if contraband was discovered, sank them. The British countered by attacking and sinking large numbers of surfaced German submarines with heavily armed Q-ships.<sup>2</sup> This made surfacing and searching for contraband impossible. Forced to choose between abandoning the submarine blockade or attacking without warning, Germany declared the area around Britain a war zone where it was assumed that ships found there were there to aid the British war effort and would be sunk without warning.

The public was agitated into virtual hysteria by media reports of each German submarine attack and every gory detail that resulted while the British blockade of Germany was treated as something quite proper and natural. American companies continued to send munition-laden ships into the war zone around Britain. In this war zone, if they crossed the bows of blockading submarines, they were attacked along with the rest.

That did it! War on civilians! War on defenseless women and children! No one was safe! War! Germany was an outlaw! The media called for war. The headlines of practically every major newspaper in the country were fierce in denunciation of "the Hun." Few realized that it was just the media that wanted war and it was just the media that spoke this way. Most of the people, and most of the politicians, did not want war. It was "just assumed" that everyone wanted war because that's all the media talked about, an assumption the media intended to convey. The words of those who spoke against the war were seldom printed, and when they were, there were also disclaimers and counter-articles to neutralize their effect.

This was the excuse used to push aside all opposition and have America declare war against an "outlaw nation," a nation that was said to fight against the Laws of God.

2 Merchant ships having concealed heavy armaments.



On the word of a false witness,<sup>3</sup> America was launched into war with her kinsmen, losing over 100,000 dead, and killing unknown numbers of German kinsmen in turn. Another stumbling block had been placed before the people.

Before World War I began, President Wilson posed as a peace mediator. He proposed "Fourteen Points" to end the war. These included "no territorial aggrandizement, no fault for the war, and that all participants return to lines occupied before the war began." The plan was commented on favorably by all the belligerents.

Germany, exhausted by four years of war, agreed to a surrender based on Wilson's "Fourteen Points."

### The Communist Plan

The news of the armistice triggered the communist contingency plan. As had happened earlier in Russia, the well-financed communist network in Germany, led by the media, launched their takeover attempt. Everything appeared to be going their way. But, they had miscalculated. While many German sailors and soldiers joined the revolt, most didn't. The submarine fleet did not. The submarines quietly pointed their noses at the great battleships at anchor that had been taken over by crews turned communist, and dared them to move. The great ships and their crews remained quiet.

However, the red flag of revolution was up. The red revolution had been launched - it was "1848" all over again. Germany appeared to have fallen to the communists. The Allied politicians instructed their fleets to continue to maintain the wartime food blockade of Germany, to encourage the desperate starving German population to fight their old rulers.

In spite of the careful planning and help from the Allies, a problem arose. The returning German veterans were unbeaten and were intensely patriotic. They immediately formed into voluntary militia organizations called Freikorps. This Freikorps militia smashed the communist military organizations led mostly by strangers. Bloody battles took place all over Germany. This was unexpected. It upset timetables and it upset plans.

<sup>3</sup> "If a false witness rise up ... Then shall ye do unto him, as he had thought to have done unto his brother." Deut 19:16-19

### Consequences of Communism's Defeat

If Germany had been handed over to the communists according to plan, she undoubtedly would have been permitted to remain intact, and after having had a few thousand of her aristocrats and businessmen shot, she would have been allowed to take her place in the family of nations as was done with other communist countries. But, instead of having a communist government, a civil government composed of the remnants of the old regime was formed. This was not good. The land and wealth seized from the Kaiser now belonged to this new German government by default, but that government was not a communist government. There was no way the wealth could be transferred to the world usury bankers. Germany had to be kept weak so she could not protect this prize, the prize for which the war had been fought.

Once Germany agreed to surrender under Wilson's "Fourteen Points" plan and had laid down her arms, the Allies renounced the plan and instead forced the harsh Versailles Treaty on Germany and Austria. Germany's extensive overseas colonies were taken. The German province of Alsace-Lorraine was given to France, Schleswig-Holstein to Denmark, the city of Danzig and the Danzig corridor to Poland, West Prussia to Poland, Czechoslovakia made into a separate country; Hungary, Romania, and Yugoslavia were seized from Austria and made into separate nations; and other provinces were seized and given away. Both Germany and Austria appeared broken and vanquished for all time.

Wilson's "Fourteen Points" called for a referendum of the peoples involved. No referendum was allowed. This resulted in great misery for the millions of Germans placed under the rule of strangers in Yugoslavia, Poland, and Czechoslovakia.

### Inflation

The international usury banks were allowed to control the price of the German mark. Inflated by "reparations" money demanded by the Allies, German inflation went wild.

Foreigners flocked to Germany buying up land, houses, and businesses for pennies from Germans who had nothing. It was like Richmond, Charleston, Atlanta, and Johannesburg all over again.



In parts of Berlin, one out of four homes and half the businesses were bought up.

A German economist, Dr. Hjalmar Schacht, was placed in control. He stopped the inflation of the German mark in a single day. He forbade the German banks to exchange marks at any other rate than that set by him. That did it. Inflation was over. The bankers were furious.

### Hitler

An anti-establishment politician came on the scene. His name was Adolf Hitler.<sup>4</sup> His election campaign hammered the campaign slogan which condemned "the thralldom of interest." The man had become a danger to the establishment.

He instituted trade programs with South America that bypassed the banks. Goods were exchanged for goods ... a "no-no" in the usury world where one is supposed to borrow at interest from the banks when one trades.

He denounced the Versailles agreement as a violation of Wilson's Fourteen Points. He stated that the seizures of German land were illegal. Germany took the seized properties back, and the land formerly owned by the Kaiser in the territories taken from Germany and Austria reverted to the German government. He then seized the almost limitless property that the strangers bought for almost nothing during the time of Germany's distress and returned it to German control.

The trigger that actually turned the establishment actively against him was his seizing their press and turning its direction over to party functionaries. The stranger was shut out as a voice in German affairs. For the first time in two hundred years, Germans heard something other than establishment propaganda. People all over the world became excited.

Unhampered by the usury banks, Germany was first to bounce out of the depression of the 1930s. Germany's motto was a version of the motto of the Israeli and Japanese nations. "Germany for Germans!" This man was intolerable.

<sup>4</sup> After Hitler's death, it was found that his entire estate contained an equivalent of \$50,000. This had come from the sale of a book he had written. It was a modest estate even by 1945 measures. Compared with politicians who leave million dollar estates, Adolf Hitler was honest.

The Polish media inflamed the Polish Slavs against the one and one-half million German citizens newly acquired by terms of the Versailles Treaty. "Thousands of German men, women and children were massacred in the most horrendous fashion by press-enraged mobs. The photographs of these massacres are too sickening to look at!"<sup>5</sup> Germany invaded Poland to halt the slaughter, a fact never mentioned by establishment media. The USSR used the German invasion as an excuse to invade Poland also. England and France, on establishment order, ignored the Soviet communist presence in Poland and declared war on Germany alone. The media worked hard to justify the act. England, France, and the USSR were all fingers of the same fist united to regain the prize that had been wrested away from their master by the Germans.

### Hitler's Reichstag Speech

Germany quickly defeated her opponents except for Britain who refused to make peace.<sup>6</sup> The next project was to use the might of the United States to fight and defeat upstart Germany. But first, Germany had to be maneuvered into firing the first shot, as was done earlier to the American South and South Africa.

The Japanese attack on Pearl Harbor on December 7, 1941 culminated a long series of provocations, each planned to make Germany lash out against her tormentor. To keep these incidents from the public, Hitler's declaration of war has been carefully omitted from establishment history books.

The first time Hitler's speech appeared in English, 48 years after the event, it appeared in the *Journal of Historical Review*<sup>7</sup> in 1989. This speech is excerpted below. It is believed that the following is only the second time it has appeared in English. If the West's own infant alternate media had been able to furnish Americans with this information earlier, there would have been no war. Below are the

<sup>5</sup> *Epic*, p.24, Leon Degrelle, IHR, PO Box 1306, Torrance, California 90505

<sup>6</sup> "Adolf Hitler's peace offer (to the British) was generous. ... I've seen it in the German, Swedish, Swiss and American archives ... The offer was this: Hitler declared that he was prepared to pull his armies out of France, Holland, Belgium, Norway, Denmark, Poland, and Czechoslovakia - out of all these territories except of course for the regions which had been German before and which he had fought the war over. Now that he had the territories like Alsace and Lorraine back, he was not going to let them go." David Irving, Author of *Hitler's War 1939-1942*, *Hitler's War 1942-1945*, from *Speech to the Clarendon Club*, 1990, and printed with permission.

<sup>7</sup> *Journal of Historical Review*, Volume 8, \$4, Winter, 1988/89, PO Box 1306, Torrance, California 90505. \$40/yr.



American provocations as listed by Adolph Hitler in his speech to the German Reichstag:

11 December 1941

"Deputes! Men of the German Reichstag!...

"After the repeated rejection of my peace proposal in 1940 by the British Prime Minister (Churchill) ... it was clear that ... this war would have to be fought through to the end, contrary to all logic and necessity. ...

"... a man (President Franklin Roosevelt) is one who likes to chat nicely at the fireside while nations send their soldiers to fight in snow and ice: this man, above all others, is the man who is primarily responsible for this war.

"When the nationality problem in the former Polish state was growing ... 62,000 ethnic Germans were killed, including some who were horribly tortured. There is no question that the German Reich had the right to protest against ... this situation on its border ... In geographical terms, the problems to be resolved were not very important. Essentially they involved Danzig and a connecting link between the torn-away province of East Prussia and the rest of the Reich. Of much greater concern were the brutal persecutions of the Germans in Poland ...

"We were prepared to enter negotiations with Poland ... we made the following practical proposals:

"1. ... Danzig returns immediately to the German Reich on the basis of its purely German character and the unanimous desire of its population.

"2. ... the so-called (Polish) Corridor will decide for itself whether it wishes to belong to Germany or to Poland ...

"3. ...All Germans who lived in this territory ... are entitled to vote. ... Those Germans who were expelled from this territory will return to vote in the plebiscite. ...

"Germany and Poland agree to guarantee the rights of the minority populations on both sides ...

"The former Polish government refused to respond ... and, in addition, carried out further cruelties against the Germans, ... and even ordered the general mobilization of its armed forces.

"A look at the documents from the (Polish) Foreign Ministry in Warsaw later provided the surprising explanation. They told of the role of a man (Roosevelt) who, with diabolical lack of principle, used all of his influence to strengthen Poland's resistance and to prevent any possibility of understanding ... These documents clearly and shockingly reveal the extent to which one man and the powers behind him are responsible for the Second World War.

"... Why had this man developed such a fanatic hostility against a country which in its entire history, had never harmed either America or him? ...

"In the entire history of the United States, the German Reich has never been hostile ... toward the United States. To the contrary, many Germans have given their lives to defend the USA.

"The German Reich has never participated in wars against the United States, except when the United States went to war against us in 1917 ...

"... there are no territorial or political conflicts between the American and German nations ...

"It is a fact that the two historical conflicts between Germany and the United States were stimulated by two Americans, that is, by Presidents Woodrow Wilson and Franklin Roosevelt, although each was inspired by the same forces. History has given its verdict about Wilson. His name will always be associated with the most base betrayal of a pledge (Wilson's 'Fourteen Points') in history ...Because of this broken pledge, which alone made the imposed Treaty of Versailles (1919) possible, countries were torn apart, cultures were destroyed and the economic life of all was ruined. Today we know that a group of self-serving financiers stood behind Wilson. They used this paralytic professor in order to lead America into a war from which they hoped to profit. The German nation once



believed this man, and had to pay for this faith with political and economic ruin ...

"... I understood very well that there is a world of difference between my own outlook on life and that of President Roosevelt. Roosevelt came from an extremely wealthy family.<sup>8</sup>

"By birth and origin he belonged to that class of people which is ... assured of advancement. I myself was only the child of a small and poor family, and I had to struggle through life by work and effort in spite of immense hardships.

"As a member of the privileged class, Roosevelt experienced the World War (I) in a position under Wilson's shadow (as assistant Sec. of the Navy). As a result, he only knew the agreeable consequences of a conflict between nations from which some profited while others lost their lives ...

"Franklin Roosevelt took power in the United States as the candidate of a thoroughly capitalistic party, which helps those who serve it. ... Franklin Roosevelt took control of a country with an economy which had been ruined ... I assumed the leadership of a Reich which was also on the edge of complete ruin ... In both countries, public finances were in chaos ... Whereas the German Reich experienced an enormous improvement in social, economic, cultural, and artistic life in just a few years under National Socialist leadership, President Roosevelt was not able to bring about even limited improvements in his own country. ... In just five years, the economic problems were solved in Germany and unemployment was eliminated. During this time period, President Roosevelt enormously increased his country's national debt, devalued the dollar, further disrupted the economy, and maintained the same number of unemployed.

"But this is hardly remarkable when one realizes that the intellects appointed by this man, or more accurately, who

8 Hitler makes a telling point but did not press his advantage. It is doubtful that he knew that he had made it. Hitler was Roman Catholic. "Western" Roman Catholics often instinctively know the right thing to do but lack scriptural training to "prove" their conclusions by scripture and verse. The point Hitler made was (1) (The king) "shall not ... greatly multiply to himself silver and gold. Deut 17:16- 17. (2) "Let him not have ...abundance of riches ... he may grow too proud to submit to the Laws ... and if he affect any such things let him be restrained, lest he become so potent that his state become inconsistent with your welfare." Antiquities 4:8:17. Christian scripture frowns on wealthy persons as rulers.

appointed him are members of that same group who, ... are interested only in disruption and never in order ... The New Deal legislation of this man was spurious ... In a European country his career would certainly have ended in front of a national court for recklessly squandering the nation's wealth. And he would hardly have avoided a prison sentence by a civil court for criminally incompetent business management. ...

"The American president increasingly used his influence to create conflicts, intensifying existing conflicts, and above all, to keep conflicts from being resolved peacefully. ...

"His actions against the German Reich in this regard have been particularly blunt. Starting in 1937, he began a series of speeches ... with which this man systematically incited the American public against Germany. He threatened to establish a kind of quarantine ... As part of this steady and growing campaign of hate and incitement ... President Roosevelt ... called the American ambassador in Berlin back to Washington ...

"In public he hypocritically claimed to be interested in peace while at the same time he threatened every country ... blocking credits, economic reprisals, calling in loans, and so forth... He repeatedly claimed that other countries were trying to interfere in American affairs...

"On 4 November 1939 the Neutrality Act was revised and the arms embargo was repealed in favor of a one-sided supply (of weapons) to Germany's adversaries ...

"In July 1940 Roosevelt began to take many new measures toward war, ... permitting the service of American citizens in the British air force and the training of British air force personnel in the United States ...

"... in September 1940 ... he transferred 50 American naval destroyers to the British fleet ...

"After Britain was no longer able to pay cash for American deliveries, he imposed the Lend-Lease Act ... to furnish lend-lease military aid ...

"As early as 19 December 1939, an American cruiser within the safety zone maneuvered the (German) passenger liner



*Columbus* into the hands of a British warship. As a result, it had to be scuttled. On the same day, US military forces helped in an effort to capture the German merchant ship *Arauca*. ... on 27 January 1940 the US cruiser *Trenton* reported the movements of the German merchant ships *Arauca*, *La Plata* and *Wangnim* to enemy naval forces... in November 1940 he permitted US warships to pursue the German merchant ships *Phryga*, *Idarwald*, and *Rhein* until they finally had to scuttle themselves ... On 13 April 1941 American ships were permitted to pass freely through the Red Sea in order to supply British armies in the Middle East.

"... all German ships were confiscated by the American authorities in March (1941) ... German citizens were treated in a most degrading way... Two German officers who had escaped (to the US) from Canadian captivity were shackled and returned ... contrary to international law. ...

"... President Roosevelt sent (OSS chief) Colonel Donovan ... to the Balkans with orders to help organize an uprising against Germany and Italy in Sofia (Bulgaria) and Belgrade. ...

"... On 26 April, Roosevelt delivered twenty PT boats to Britain. At the same time, British naval ships were routinely being repaired in US harbors. On 12 May, Norwegian ships operating for Britain were armed and repaired (in the US), contrary to international law. ... on 9 June came the first British report that a US warship, acting on orders from President Roosevelt, had attacked a German submarine near Greenland with depth charges.

"On 14 June, German assets in the US were frozen, again in violation of international law. On 17 June ... Roosevelt demanded the recall of the German consulates. He also demanded the closing down of the German 'Transocean' press agency, the German Library of Information (in NY) and the German Reichsbahn (national railway) office....

"On 10 July, Navy Secretary Knox suddenly announced the existence of an American order to fire against Axis warships. On 4 September the US destroyer *Greer*, acting on orders, operated together with British airplanes against German sub-

marines ... Five days later, a German submarine identified US destroyers as escort vessels with a British convoy.

"In a speech delivered on 11 September (1941), Roosevelt at last personally confirmed that he had given the order to fire against all Axis ships, and he repeated the order. On 29 September, US patrols attacked a German submarine east of Greenland with depth charges. On 17 October the US destroyer *Kearny*, operating as an escort for the British, attacked a German submarine with depth charges, and on 6 November US armed forces seized the German ship *Odenwald* in violation of international law, took it to an American harbor, and imprisoned its crew.

"I will overlook as meaningless the insulting attacks ... against me personally. That he calls me a gangster is particularly meaningless, since this term did not originate in Europe, where such characters are uncommon ...

"We know that this man ... has operated against Japan in the same way ... This man first incites to war, and then he lies about its causes ... he wraps himself in a cloak of Christian hypocrisy, while at the same time slowly but very steadily leading humanity into war. And finally ... he calls upon God as his witness that his actions are honorable.

"We know the power behind Roosevelt ... Mr. Churchill and Mr. Roosevelt declare that they want to build a new social order ... These gentlemen ... should worry about their own unemployed people rather than incite war. They have enough misery and poverty in their own countries to keep themselves busy insuring a just distribution of food there. ...

"Despite the years of intolerable provocations by President Roosevelt, Germany and Italy sincerely and very patiently tried to prevent the expansion of this war and to maintain relations with the United States. But as a result of his campaign, these efforts have failed...

"Deputies! Men of the German Reichstag!

"Ever since my peace proposal of July 1940 was rejected, we have clearly realized that this struggle must be fought through to the end ... We ... are not at all surprised that the Anglo-



American ... and capitalist world is united together with Bolshevism. In our country we have always found them in the same community. Alone we successfully fought against them here in Germany ...

"The American President and his plutocratic clique have called us the 'have not' nations. That's correct! But the 'have nots' also want to live, and they will certainly make sure that what little they have to live on is not stolen from them by the 'haves.' ...

"Our opponents should not deceive themselves. In the 2,000 years of recorded German history, our people have never been more determined and united than today. The Lord of the universe has been so generous to us in recent years that we bow in gratitude before a Providence which has permitted us to be members of such a great nation. We thank Him that, along with those in earlier and coming generations of the German nation, our deeds of honor may also be recorded in the eternal book of German history!"

### Germany's Formal Declaration of War Against the United States

About two hours before Hitler gave his speech to the Reichstag (above), Germany formally declared war against the United States when Reich Foreign Minister Joachim von Ribbentrop delivered a diplomatic note to the American Chargé D'affaires in Berlin, **Leland B. Morris**. At the same time, a copy was presented to **Ray Atherston** by **Hans Thomsen** at the Washington Department of State.

Following are excerpts:

"The government of the United States of America, having violated in the most flagrant manner and in ever increasing measure all rules of neutrality (is) guilty of the most severe provocations toward Germany ...

"... the President of the United States of America publicly declared that he had ordered the American Navy and Air Force to shoot on sight any German war vessel ...

"... American war vessels have systematically attacked German naval forces since early September 1941 ... The American

Secretary of the Navy ... confirmed that the American destroyers attacked German Submarines. ...

"... naval forces of the United States ... have treated and seized German merchant ships on the high seas as enemy ships.

...

"The German government therefore establishes the following facts: Although Germany on her part has strictly adhered to the rules of international law in her relations with the United States of America during every period of the present war, the government of the United States of America from initial violations of neutrality has finally proceeded to open acts of war against Germany. It has thereby virtually created a state of war.

"The government of the Reich consequently breaks off diplomatic relations with the United States of America and declares that in these circumstances brought about by President Roosevelt, Germany too, as from today, considers herself as being in a state of war with the United States of America."

It had begun.

### The War

Germany had three special things that set it apart from the other combatants in WW II.

The first was a code of conduct. It was similar to the one issued by General Robert E. Lee, and President Kruger of South Africa. But this code went even further. Not only was it issued in general orders but it was issued to each individual German soldier and had to be in his possession at all times. It is the sort of thing one would expect from the descendants of the Teutonic Knights.

### Code of the German Soldier

German soldiers carried a paybook at all times for identification. In each was posted the following:

1. The German soldier fights chivalrously for the victory of his people. Atrocities and needless destruction are unworthy of him.



2. Combatants must wear uniforms or be distinguishable by special insignia clearly visible from a distance. Waging war in civilian clothes without such insignia is forbidden.

3. No enemy who surrenders may be killed, even if he is a guerrilla or a spy. These will be punished by lawful courts.

4. Prisoners of war may not be mistreated or insulted. Weapons, maps and sketches are to be confiscated from them. No other possessions may be taken from them.

5. Dum-dum bullets are forbidden, nor are they to be improvised from standard ammunition.

6. The Red Cross is inviolable. Wounded enemies are to be treated humanely. Medical personnel and chaplains may not be hindered in their medical or spiritual work.

7. The civilian population is inviolable. Soldiers may not plunder or carry out wanton destruction. Historical monuments and buildings which are devoted to religious services, art, scholarship, or charity, deserve particular respect. Payments in kind or labor may be demanded from civilians only on orders from superiors and must be compensated.

8. Neutral territory may neither be entered or flown over nor may it be involved in combat through weapons fire.

9. If a German soldier is captured, he must give his name and rank when asked them. Under no circumstances may he speak regarding his unit and regarding military, political, and economic conditions on the German side. He must not allow himself to be induced to make such statements either by threats or promises.

10. Violations of the above military order are punishable.<sup>9</sup> Offenses by the enemy against rules 1-8 are to be reported. Measures in reprisal are permitted only on the order of higher staff.<sup>10</sup>

9 There were incidents of German violations of their code of conduct. Most were identified and severely punished. As for the accusations of "millions," no proof has been produced, no evidence. The same ones who accuse Germany accuse both the South and South Africa. Judge the truthfulness of the accusations by the past truthfulness of the accusers.  
10 *Institute for Historical Review*, 1822 1/2 Newport Blvd., Costa Mesa, California 92627. April 1987, No. 47. p. 6.

This code exemplifies the code of the Christian soldier extolled earlier in both the Confederate and South African armies. These noble ideals were not matched by any of her opponents.

Germany made a fatal error in assuming that because some of the countries she was fighting were composed of Christians, that she was fighting Christian nations. Nothing was further from the truth. She was not fighting Christian nations, she was fighting nations inhabited by Christians who had been conquered. Their armies were the drafted armies that conquered peoples are forced to contribute to, just as Attila the Hun forced conquered German tribes to supply soldiers for his armies to fight other Germans. These conquered nations, as agents of the establishment, followed establishment law - not Christian Law.

One does not fight the lawless with Lawful Christian rules in the Christian manner. One is even forbidden<sup>11</sup> to tell the stranger of the Christian rules to keep them from using them against Christians. One must know the rules of the lawless and fight them by their own rules, while retaining Christian rules for dealings with Christians.

In the War Between The States, Col. Ulric Dahlgren led a mounted storm troop on a lightning raid to Richmond. The announced objective was to free Union prisoners held there and capture the Confederate government. Dahlgren had the misfortune of running into the Little Boy Blues outside of Richmond, who cut his command to pieces. The remainder of his command was decimated a few miles on by the Prince William boys and old men's militia. On Dahlgren's body were found his orders

"... once in the city, it must be destroyed and Jeff Davis and cabinet killed."<sup>12</sup>

These orders shocked the finders. They were published in the southern papers. It shocked the North as well as the South. The discovery of the orders and the real objective of the raid alarmed the Union General Meade who quickly assured the Confederate authorities the U.S. government did not sanction that kind of warfare. Foolishly, the South believed his denial. She wanted to believe that Dahlgren was one of a kind, an aberration ... that there were

11 "Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you." Matt 7:6

12 *The Lincoln Murder Conspiracies*, William Hanchett, Univ. of Illinois Press, Chicago, 1983, p. 32



no Shermans and Sheridans and Grants waiting in the wings to repeat his acts.

Those orders were not an aberration. Dahlgren's orders were the real thing. They were policy. The burning, starvation and prisoner brutality in that war was policy. The Valley, Atlanta, Charleston, and Richmond burnings and the burnings of countless other towns and cities proved it. The denials were also policy. The fact was, if the Confederates fought to the end they would be burned and terrorized. If they did not fight and meekly submitted, they would be burned and terrorized. If they resisted, Blacks would rule them. If they submitted, Blacks would rule them. As long as their opponents were in power, they were marked for destruction.

If they could have known that it was glorious but useless to grab a musket and rush to the front to fight countless hired foes, with an almost certain chance of death. They would certainly have tempered their outpouring of selfless patriotism with prudence. Westerners are students. History shows that they study and learn from their mistakes. Recent history shows that certain of them have already changed their tactics. They have learned that their fathers might have achieved far more success if, instead of impetuously grabbing rifles and pistols and charging off to meet hordes of invading hirelings, they had instead donned suits, picked up brief cases, and quietly traveled to the city to seek gainful employment. Their active duty would have begun when they observed violations of their General's instructions.<sup>13</sup> When no violators were left, the war would be over and warriors could come home to wives and children. While away on detached duty, each was governed by, and judged by their Leader's standing orders. His Law judged everyone.

Events have shown that the Germans made the mistake that was made by the Boers and the Southern Confederates before them. They fought the hirelings instead of their masters who sent them. Their Viking ancestors, in their roving days, would have instantly declared such wars noble but unprofitable, and would have immediately gone after more vulnerable game. Still, names like Rommel and Galland<sup>14</sup> stir the souls of Viking sons.

<sup>13</sup> The Christian is both king and priest, ("Jesus Christ ... hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father." Rev 1:5-6). The finder is entitled to the arms and wealth found with an outlaw when the true owner cannot be found.

<sup>14</sup> The fact is inescapable; the great reputation of Galland was made by the establishment forcing him to kill more than 100 pilots in single combat, men who were of his own flesh and blood, and Rommel killed his tens of thousands in like manner.

### Heroes and Accomplishments

The German people of World War II had heroes every bit as great as the South's Major John Pelham, of Stuart's Horse Artillery, and Captain Danne Theron, the great Boer scout.

One such was the German air force's Erich Hartmann. A fighter pilot becomes an ace by shooting down five enemy aircraft. Hartmann shot down 352. Hans Ulrich Rudel, in his obsolete Junkers 87 dive bomber, destroyed a Soviet battleship, 500 tanks, and shot down 11 enemy aircraft. Young SS anti-tank gunner, SS-Unterscharfuehrer Remi Schrynen, alone at his gun, destroyed 11 Stalin tanks in one day before his gun was destroyed and he was severely wounded.<sup>15</sup> There were many others.

The South had military leaders such as Jackson and Forrest, South Africa had de Wet and Louis Botha. Germany had her Guderian and her Rommel. Like the South and South Africa, Germany, too, was heavily outnumbered and the odds grew progressively greater as the establishment levied on her conquered peoples to bring up their battalions.

### The SS

The third German accomplishment was the formation of an international force of volunteers to fight communism - the SS. That such an organization ever existed has so frightened the establishment, that the public in the West has been told almost nothing about it.

Those other than Germans are able to speak on the subject of the SS while the Germans are still forbidden to do so. One such observer says:

"The greatest triumph of the Waffen-SS was not on the field of battle. It was in its policy of recruiting non-German volunteers, not as hired mercenaries, but as co-fighters for a European ideal."<sup>16</sup>

Another American writes:

<sup>15</sup> For this act of heroism, he was imprisoned for five years in the West after the war.

<sup>16</sup> Beadle & Hartmann in *The Waffen-SS: Its Divisional Insignia*, Key Publications, 1971.



"... a unique international armed force stood its ground against a barbarous foe. They were soldiers of the Waffen-SS, the elite assault force of the German Army, yet on their sleeves they bore the colors of Denmark and Norway, Sweden and Finland, Holland and Belgium, Flanders and Estonia. ... They spoke different languages but they shared a common commitment: a love of their continent and a hatred of communism and international capitalism. Motivated by the call of conscience, they chose, voluntarily, to do battle against these predatory enemies.<sup>17</sup>

Leon Degrelle, a Belgian who fought in 75 hand to hand combats, the commander of the 28th SS Volunteer Panzer Grenadier Division "Wallonien" and bearer of the Oak Leaves to the Knight's Cross of the Iron Cross, writes:<sup>18</sup>

"It is now 30 years since we fought side by side ... German comrades, comrades from Holland, Flanders, Denmark, Norway, the Baltic and we, the French-speaking Germanic Walloonian comrades. We gave our blood - thousands among us gave their lives - in the service of a great cause. In this bloody battle we fought for the true Europe, the Europe of 2,000 years of culture. ...

"... I believe that our Europe was the *true* Europe. ... Our Europe was the Europe of high ideals and beliefs, held as a common bond. ... Our Europe was a Europe ... all encompassing and large, from the end of the steppes to the Atlantic, supported by an immense healthy force, the force of the Waffen-SS; youth from 28 European countries ...

"This Europe had a soul, a meaning, it possessed then the only real, effective unity ... Sooner or later, this strong, idealistic Europe, as opposed to the Europe of the small- time politicians and manipulators, will become a reality. We believe ... we have proven by our actions ... and in the whole period of the great struggles of the Eastern Front, that some of the credit belongs to us!"

In his book *Epic*, Degrelle continues:

17 Narva 1944: The Waffen-SS and the Battle for Europe, Bibliophile Legion Books, Inc. Box 612, Silver Spring, Maryland 209010612  
18 *Ibid.*, p. 14.

"It is hard to imagine that from a total of one million SS, 352,000 were killed in action with 50,000 more missing. It is a grim figure! ... Half of all division commanders were killed in action. Half! There is not an army in the world where this happened.<sup>19</sup> The SS officer always led his troops to battle. I was engaged in 75 hand-to-hand combats because as an SS officer I had to be the first to meet the enemy. ...

"After breaking out of Tcherkassy's siege I talked with all my soldiers one-by-one, ... two of my soldiers suddenly pulled their identity cards from the Belgian Resistance Movement. They had been sent to kill me. At the front line, it is very simple to shoot someone in the back. But the ... SS officers could expect loyalty of their men by their example. The life expectancy of an SS officer at the front was three months ...

"German racialism has been deliberately distorted. It never was an anti-'other race' racialism. It was a *pro*-German racialism. It was concerned with making the German race strong and healthy in every way. ... Today one finds rampant alcohol and drug addiction everywhere. ... National Socialist racialism was not against the other races, it was for its own race. It aimed at defending and improving its race, and wished that all other races did the same for themselves. ...

"That was demonstrated when the Waffen SS enlarged its ranks to include 60,000 Islamic SS. The Waffen SS respected their way of life, their customs, and their religious beliefs. Each Islamic SS battalion had an *imam*, each company had a *mullah*. ... National Socialist racialism was loyal to the German race and totally respected all other races.

"At this point, one hears: 'what about the anti-Jewish racism?' One can answer: 'What about Jewish anti-Gentilism?'

"It has been the misfortune of the Jewish race that never could they get on with any other race. It is an unusual historical fact and phenomenon. When one studies the history - and I say this without any passion - of the Jewish people, their

19 This statement is true compared with Germany's opponents. Most allied leaders (with certain notable and celebrated exceptions) sent their men to die while they themselves remained in safety. Casualties among the leaders of both Confederate and South African armies, however, were as high as the German. They always will be when a nation's leaders lead.



evolution across the centuries, one observes that always, at all times, and at all places, they were hated. They were hated in ancient Egypt, they were hated in ancient Greece, they were hated in Roman times to such a degree that 3,000 of them were deported to Sardinia. It was the first Jewish deportation. They were hated in Spain, in France, in England (they were banned from England for centuries), and in Germany. The conscientious Jewish author Lazare wrote a very interesting book on *Anti-Semitism*, where he asked himself: 'We Jews should ask ourselves a question: why are we always hated everywhere? It is not because of our persecutors, all of different times and places. It is because there is something within us that is very unlikeable.' What's unlikeable is that the Jews have always wanted to live as a privileged class divinely-chosen and beyond scrutiny. This attitude has made them unlikeable everywhere. The Jewish race is therefore a unique case. Hitler had no intention of destroying it. He wanted the Jews to find their own identity in their own environment, but not to the detriment to others. The fight - if we can call it that - of National Socialism against the Jews was purely limited to one objective: that the Jews leave Germany in peace. It was planned to give them a country of their own, outside Germany. ... plans were dropped when the and U.S. entered the war. In the meanwhile, Hitler thought of letting the Jews live in their own traditional ghettos. They would have their own organizations, they would run their own affairs and live the way they wanted to live. They had their own police, their own tramways, their own flag, their own factories which, incidentally, were built by the German government. As far as other races were concerned, they were all welcomed in Germany as guests, but not as privileged occupants. ...

"... the European SS, as much as they admired Hitler and the German people, did not want to become Germans. They were men of their own people and Europe was the gathering of the various people of Europe. European unity was to be achieved through harmony, not domination of one over the others. ...

"Compare these aims, these ideals with the 'Allies.' The Roosevelts, the Churchills sold Europe out in Teheran, Yalta and Potsdam. They cravenly capitulated to the Soviets. They

delivered half of the European continent to Communist slavery. They let the rest of Europe disintegrate morally, without any ideal to sustain it. The SS knew what they wanted: the Europe of ideals was the salvation for all. ...

"The nearer Germany was to defeat the more volunteers arrived at the front. ... eight days before the final defeat I saw hundreds of young men join the SS on the front. Right to the end they knew they had to do the impossible to stop the enemy....

"If the Waffen SS had not existed, Europe would have been overrun entirely by the Soviets by 1944. They would have reached Paris long before the Americans. ... Without SS resistance the Soviets would have been in Normandy before Eisenhower. ... Not since the great religious orders of the middle ages had there been such selfless idealism and heroism. In this century's materialism, the SS stands out as a shining light of spirituality. ...

"The curtain of silence fell on the Waffen SS after the war but now more and more young people somehow know of its existence, of its achievements. The fame is growing and the young demand to know more. In one hundred years almost everything will be forgotten, but the greatness and heroism of the Waffen SS will be remembered. It is the reward of an epic."<sup>20</sup>

"Not long ago, a visiting Belgian journalist asked him if he had any regrets about the war years. Leon Degrelle thought for a moment, and then gave his reply: 'Only that we lost!'"<sup>21</sup>

<sup>20</sup> *Epic*, The Story of the Waffen SS, from a video by Leon Degrelle, Institute for Historical Review, 1989

<sup>21</sup> After the war Degrelle's family received special attention from the Allies. His wife and parents were arrested, brutalized, thrown into jail, where all died. The names of his eight children were changed and they were scattered in orphanages, reform schools and homes for the retarded all across Europe. *Campaign In Russia*, Degrelle, p. xii, IHR, PO Box 1306, Torrance, California 90505



### Atrocities Against Christian Germany

The same acts repeated again and again against the South, South Africa, and then against Germany, show evidence of the skill and cunning of a Genghis Khan. The same Lawless genius, using the same Lawless tactics to produce the same Lawless result - almost to the last minute detail.

Just as Southern and South African cities, towns, and plantations were systematically raped, looted and destroyed; their civilian populations molested, brutalized, and starved, so the same happened to German cities, towns, and countryside which were wantonly destroyed, and their women and children systematically raped, molested, brutalized, and starved.

The Southern Confederates, the Boers, and the Germans all directed Christian prohibitions to their soldiers forbidding mistreatment of enemy and civilian personnel. There are cases of violators being shot as examples. Thus far the author can discover no such restraint placed on establishment minions. There seems to have been no United States policy to execute military personnel for either rape or looting in the War Between The States. My investigation has thus far uncovered only one incident of two British soldiers being shot for their massacre of unarmed Boer prisoners, and this was done at the end of the war to make the British look believable in the eyes of Boer fighters in the field.

In the case of the Allied invasion of Germany, no executions of rapists and looters can be discovered in any of the allied armies. On the contrary, the media of the allied nations encouraged looting. The Soviet radio told their victorious soldiers to "take the German women and break their racial pride." Here in Lynchburg there was handsome silver flatware on display in a store window said to have belonged to a prominent German leader.

### Rape of German Women

Following are some quotes of treatment of German women compiled by Dr. Austin J. App,<sup>1</sup> Lord's Covenant Church, Box 30000, Phoenix Arizona 85046 at the end of World War II.

"Berlin ... a city without men. Out of the civilian population of about 2,700,000 ... roughly 2,000,000 were women ... doctors

1 Ravishing the Women of Conquered Europe

were besieged by patients seeking information about the quickest way to commit suicide, and poison was in great demand. ... waves of Soviet soldiers went wild. Rape, plunder, and suicide became commonplace. Soldiers entered the Haus Dahlem, an orphanage, maternity hospital, and foundling home, and repeatedly raped pregnant women and those who had recently given birth. All told, the number of rape victims in Berlin - ranging from women of 70 to little girls of ten - will never be known ..."<sup>2</sup>

"In Danzig, March 24, 1945, a 50 year old Danzig teacher reported that the preceding day her niece, 15, was raped seven times, her other niece, 22, fifteen times. A Russian officer told the women to seek safety in the Cathedral. After they were securely in, ... (the Soviets) entered and, playing the organ and ringing the bells, kept up a foul orgy through the night, raping all the women, some more than thirty times."<sup>3</sup>

"In Vienna alone they raped 100,000 women ... girls not yet in their teens, and aged women!"<sup>4</sup> ...

"John Dos Passos (*Life*, Jan. 7, 1946, p23) quotes a 'red faced major' as saying, 'Lust, liquor and loot are the soldier's pay.' A serviceman writes, 'Many a sane American family would recoil in horror if they knew how 'Our Boys' conduct themselves with such complete callousness in human relationships over here (*Time*, Nov. 12, 1945).

"An army sergeant writes, 'our own army and the British army along with ours have done their share of looting and raping ... This offensive attitude among our troops is not at all general, but the percentage is large enough to have given our army a pretty black name, and we too are considered an army of rapists (*Time*, Sep 17, 1945).' ..."

### Reconstruction Of Germany

The German occupation followed the same plan as the conquest and occupation of the American South.

Soldiers were stationed in strategic spots to squelch dissent. Germans who had taken part in the war were considered ques-

2 *Time Magazine* April 1, 1966

3 *Nord-Amerika*, Dec. 6, 1945, p1

4 *NC Report*, Oct 18, 1945, Rev. Bernard Griffin, British Archbishop.



tionable (All Southerners had been considered questionable after the war). They had to go before de-Nazification tribunals, were forbidden to vote, hold office, get a job without a conqueror's signature on a release form, and great numbers spent years before being released from prisons. Collaborators (carpetbaggers) were put into office to facilitate the siphoning of German wealth to those favored by the establishment. Some placed in high German office have, almost a half-century after the event, boasted of being secret strangers.

German money became almost worthless. The victors had the money monopoly. The carpetbaggers voted heavy taxes on a people who had no money with which to pay to force tax defaults. The expected happened as it had happened earlier in the South - tax defaults swept German property wholesale into establishment coffers.

German property taken over by aliens in the 1930s depression following World War I had been taken back by Hitler's government. This property was again returned to the establishment with interest. As is true in the South and South Africa today, almost nothing German that has value is now owned by Germans. Also, as in the South and South Africa, the media keeps the lid of indignation from boiling over by constantly accusing Southerners, South Africans, and Germans of being "bad."

Large sectors of German industry were disassembled by the victors and taken to other lands leaving the Germans no way to make a living. Starvation became common. German soldiers were kept as prisoners for years after the war ended to deprive the German women of their own men. The foreign garrisons, many of them Asians and Africans, were supplied with food for gifts that they made available to the starving German women.

"Our government, along with the Russian and the British, has so stifled German trade, industry, and agriculture that one can almost assert that the only German mothers who can keep their young children alive are those who themselves or whose sisters become mistresses of our occupying troops. By our official admission we have brought Germany down to a daily food level of from 700 to 1500 calories, which is less than an American breakfast, and which leads to sure gradual death."<sup>5</sup>

<sup>5</sup> Ibid., p. 5

"The American provost marshal, Lt. Col. Gerald F. Beane, said that rape presents no problem to the military police because 'a bit of food, a bar of chocolate, or a bar of soap seems to make rape unnecessary.' Think that over if you want to understand what the situation is in Germany." (*The Christian Century*, Dec. 5, 1945).

### Andersonville Prison/Buchenwald

When Union forces entered Andersonville Prison in Georgia, they found thousands of Union prisoners in an advanced state of malnutrition. Their ribs were sticking out and their arms and legs were like pipe stems. Conditions were deplorable. Disease, dysentery, stench, and death were everywhere.

Accompanying the Union army were flocks of war correspondents. Photographers had a field day taking pictures of the miserable wretches - victims of the evil slave-owning Southerners. The *Encyclopedia Britannica*, 11th edition, "Andersonville" says:

"The terrible conditions obtaining there were due to the lack of food supplies in the Confederate States ... and the refusal of the Federal authorities in 1864 to make exchanges of prisoners, thus filling the stockade with unlooked-for numbers. After the war Henry Wirz, the superintendent, was tried by a court-martial, and ... was hanged, and the revelation of the sufferings of the prisoners was one of the factors that shaped public opinion regarding the South in the Northern states, after the close of the Civil War."

Here you have it - Southern atrocities. The one accused of being the worst offender, the prison superintendent, was hanged. Trial for war crimes was thus justified and implemented by the victors. A new age had arrived.

Then, week after week, month after month, year after year - the endless display of pictures and reams of copy to whip up sentiment against slave-owning Southerners. The writers pointed to the fact that one man was caught red-handed, was convicted, and hanged after a "fair trial." The South was pictured as being guilty! Every Southerner was individually and collectively guilty!

None of the media writers asked why 26,000 Southern prisoners died in Northern POW camps while only 22,000 Northerners died



in Southern POW camps. There were many more Northern prisoners in the South than Southern prisoners in the North. The unmentioned fact was that the death rate per thousand was much lower in the South.

There were no calls for war crimes trials for Northern prison superintendents. There were no calls for trials for those responsible for putting brutal Blacks to guard the Southern prisoners. There were no charges brought against the man who stopped the POW exchange in 1864 causing the Andersonville overcrowding. None of this was commented on because prisoners and prison deaths were only incidental. They were being used to whip up Northern public support for the establishment's Reconstruction seizure of the remaining Southern wealth.

During World War II, the British and Soviets developed a very successful campaign of training and arming civilians behind German lines so that they could attack German military and civilian personnel. Instructors and weapons were dropped from aircraft almost nightly. The SS General Reinhard Heydrich, National Socialist chief of security was one of those killed by these partisans in Czechoslovakia. It is estimated that as many as 50,000 German soldiers were killed by this partisan campaign. Some of these soldiers were tortured to death in the most dreadful manner. Since the Americans and British did not provide uniforms for these guerrillas they could not be distinguished from the general population. The only effective defensive measure the Germans had was to take men of military age living in these hostile districts and confine them in concentration camps. It was either that or have them shot.

The allied encouragement of this guerrilla warfare was the reason for the large numbers in concentration camps. Forcing the Germans to establish these large camps also forced them to take from their own slender resources to feed the inmates which put a strain on their already overextended means.

I remember talking to a classmate in the dormitory at Hampden-Sydney College one Sunday afternoon. He had been a fighter pilot in Europe and told us his experiences. He related the times he had machine-gunned Red Cross trains. It was exciting to see the boilers blow up. He had personally destroyed three. I questioned the propriety of attacking mercy trains bearing the Red Cross symbol. He replied that American intelligence had told him that the Germans were using the Red Cross trains to transport troops and

supplies and he was sure that that was what they were doing. If there had actually been food in those three trains, the food certainly did not reach its destination.

Andersonville in Georgia was built to hold prisoners. It was forced to hold too many prisoners because of Abraham Lincoln's non-exchange policy. The prisoners got the same rations as the Southern soldiers. They died en masse, because of disease, overcrowding, and the destruction of the food transport system by Sherman.

The German prisons were initially established to hold criminals and pre-war anti-German types.<sup>6</sup> These camps were not designed to hold the great masses that were ultimately sent there because of the Allied policy of promoting civil insurrection behind German lines. Once there they received the same rations as the German population, but diseases such as typhus, aggravated by overcrowding, and the prevention of the allocated food supply from arriving because of air attack caused malnutrition and a high death rate in the closing months of the war.

Still, the total deaths in all the German prisons are believed to be only a fraction of those that took place in allied prisons. Everyone is familiar with Solzhenitsyn's book. Tens of thousands of Germans arrived in Soviet prisons. In some of the camps, they died almost to a man. Of one-third million German prisoners taken at Stalingrad, only eight thousand returned home after the war.

Similar conditions existed in the west. Additional information recently came to light. On page xii of the book *Other Losses* it is stated that between the years 1947 and 1952 the Germans determined that over 1,700,000 of their soldiers who were alive at the war's end, never returned home.<sup>7</sup>

In the foreword of this book, Dr. Ernest F. Fisher, Jr., Col. U.S. Army (ret), charged that starting in April 1945 the United States and the French armies annihilated about one million German POWs, most of them in American camps. He went on to say that Eisenhower's hatred of the Germans produced death camps unequalled in horror by anything in American military history. He went on to illustrate the magnitude of this horror by pointing out that

6 The Japanese were confined in America at the same time even though they had not been armed, had not attacked Americans, and had not been encouraged to civil disobedience.

7 *Other Losses*, p. xii, James Bacque, Stoddart Publishing Co., 34 Lesmill Rd., Toronto, Canada, M3B 2T6, 1989



these deaths surpassed by far all the deaths incurred by the German Army in the West between June 1941 and April 1945."<sup>8</sup>

The book reveals that General Eisenhower ordered that available food and shelter for these camps be deliberately withheld from the five million German POWs flooding his POW camps at the end of World War II. As a result of the deliberate exposure, medical neglect, and starvation, almost a million of these German POWs died. These shocking charges seem to have broken a dam of silence as a flood of German ex-POWs have since stepped forward to substantiate the charges with their first-hand accounts. It is documented in *Other Losses* that food for the Germans was available in abundant quantity but permission to distribute it was denied.

The British brought the charge of Boer brutality as an excuse to answer the criticism resulting from the British scorched-earth policy in South Africa and the deaths of tens of thousands of Boer women and children in their concentration camps. The media told the world that the Boers were the criminals. They charged that the Boer's mistreated and tortured the Blacks and the captured British soldiers.

This media offensive was the reason the British soldiers acted harshly toward Boer soldiers who had the misfortune to fall into their hands. The British people could not bring themselves to believe that the establishment was using them as it used the Boers who were supposed to be their enemies. The media also used the Boer atrocity stories to direct attention from the establishment's seizure of the South African Gold mines, which was the main objective of the Boer War.

Most of these atrocity stories, printed without place names, could fit any locality in which the establishment media chooses to operate. They all read alike. The pictures of sick, emaciated British prisoners in South Africa look like pictures of sick, emaciated Andersonville prisoners which look like sick, emaciated Auschwitz prisoners. Mix the pictures and they are indistinguishable. Even the accompanying stories appear almost verbatim.

### Manufactured German Atrocities

Everyone has heard of the German massacre of American soldiers at Malmedy during the Battle of the Bulge. The media make sure no one forgets. Seventy-two Americans died while 30 escaped.

8 Ibid. xx-xxi

The establishment says that it was cold-blooded and planned. Thus far, 70 Germans have been implicated. The Germans say that in the heat of battle, one group of Germans captured the Americans and another German group came upon them suddenly, and thinking that the Americans were armed, opened fire. They say this accounts for the 30 survivors being able to escape.

In the South, General Forrest stormed Fort Pillow which was defended by Blacks under White officers. The Blacks surrendered. After laying down their arms they picked up their weapons again and began fighting once more. This occurred several times and Black casualties were higher because of this than in other of Forrest's many captures.

The event was blown up and billed by establishment media as "The Fort Pillow Massacre" and used to inflame Northern soldiers against Southerners. After the war they used it to excuse the excesses of Black occupation soldiers. To this day they call it "The Fort Pillow Massacre." Educated Southerners are familiar with establishment stories, this one in particular.

Scenes like the shooting of Captain Hanse McNeil, leader of McNeil's Raiders, are ignored. After being captured in Southwest Virginia, McNeil was laughingly told by his Union captors that they would give him a chance - he could run for it. He fell in a hail of pistol shots before he had taken a dozen steps. Such was the fate of Confederate soldiers falling into the hands of media-enraged Federals in the later stages of the war. Then there are establishment censored stories that no one knows about.

When the Americans rode up to Dachau prison, Andersonville-type sights greeted them. The commander of the American force had the German garrison of 580 German doctors, nurses, and guards rounded up, lined up, and machine gunned. I saw the training films of the event while serving in the 116th Regiment of the 29th division.<sup>9</sup> The barrel of the machine gun swiveled from left to right. Those hit would topple one after another like little rag dolls. Most atrocities of this sort have been extensively photographed, if you can get to see the film.

Many of those German guards were fifteen, sixteen, and seventeen-year-old kids who had to serve as prison guards because they

9 The 29th Division hit Normandy and suffered heavily. Much of it came from the Lynchburg area and surrounding counties, and was never charged with any such breach of proper conduct.



were too young to serve at the front. The excuse still used today is that the massacre was in retaliation for the camp being used as a mass extermination center to gas millions of prisoners. Needless to say, no charges have ever been filed against the American group commander for machine-gunning prisoners of war.

Now, even the excuse that the Dachau camp was a mass extermination camp where victims were gassed has been proven a lie. But, the Andersonville-type pictures still continue to be used by the anti-White media to prove guilt. This is possible because the liberating force knew what they would find in a camp that size and made sure that the same type of media writers that accompanied Union forces to Andersonville accompanied the army to Dachau. Their purpose was the same: to prepare the Western world to accept the German reconstruction soon to come as it earlier prepared the North to accept Southern reconstruction. Their pictures of piles of dead bodies and walking human skeletons accompanied by reams of newspaper and TV copy will remain daily fare as long as the German Reconstruction continues.

In Georgia, the conquering Union army brutalized Andersonville's superintendent, Henry Wirz, to get him to say what they wanted him to say before they tried and hanged him as a much publicized war criminal. The British captured Rudolf Hoess, commandant of the Auschwitz prison. He was given the Wirz treatment by the British, had a confession placed before him to sign, and he signed it. The confession stated that he had personally witnessed the mass extermination of camp inmates by gassing. Then, like Wirz, he was executed.

Based on the Hoess confession, and other questionable eyewitnesses to gassings who got German reparations for their signed statements, many, many Germans have been executed. It has been only in 1989 that the whole matter of mass gas extermination has finally been laid to rest, the eyewitnesses proved liars, and the Hoess confession a fraud. It was the *The Leuchter Report* that drove the last nail.<sup>10</sup> Fred A. Leuchter is the world's leading expert in gas chamber design, construction, and maintenance. He has no equal anywhere in the world.

The German gas extermination story was first promoted to divert attention from German reconstruction. Unable to produce

10 *The Leuchter Report*, Samisdat Publishers Ltd., 206 Carlton Street, Toronto Ontario, Canada M5A 2L1, \$25/copy.

evidence supporting gas chambers in West Germany, the media then claimed it all happened in East Germany and Poland - areas under communist control where the existence of gas chambers was thought to be impervious to Western verification.

### Leuchter Report Debunks Gas Chambers

Leuchter took a team of experts into Poland, went to the so-called extermination camps, took samples from the so-called death chambers, videotaped the whole operation, returned to the US and had the samples analyzed. These were his findings:

"Promoting these facilities as being capable of effecting mass, multiple or even singular executions is both ludicrous and insulting to every individual on this planet. Further, those who do promote this mistruth are negligent and irresponsible for not investigating these facilities earlier and ascertaining the truth before indoctrinating the world with what may have become the greatest propaganda ploy in history."<sup>11</sup>

"Forensic samples were taken from the visited sites ... A detailed analysis of the thirty-two samples taken at the Auschwitz-Birkenau complexes showed ... no significant cyanide traces. This would be impossible if these sites were exposed to hydrogen cyanide gas ... Thus, chemical analysis further supports the fact that these facilities were never utilized as gas execution facilities ...

"After a thorough examination of the alleged execution facilities in Poland and their associated crematories, the only conclusion that can be arrived at by a rational, responsible person is the absurdity of the notion that any of these facilities were ever capable of, or were utilized as, execution gas chambers."<sup>12</sup>

The Wirz show-trial was used as "proof" that the South was guilty. If someone tried to defend the South, he would be answered with a single word - "Andersonville." Southern guilt was based on Andersonville and was beyond discussion. "Andersonville" was a conversation stopper. "Auschwitz" has been used in the same way - until now. The tragic thing is that German Christians have been hanged

11 *This is why the Holocaust is now called the "Holohoax."*

12 *Inside the Auschwitz Gas Chambers*, Fred A. Leuchter, IHR, 1822 1/2 Newport Blvd., Suite 191, Costa Mesa, CA 92627.



by the establishment because the media wrote stories based on non-existing evidence based on untruths, and these stories have persuaded Christians worldwide to stand aside and let them do it.

This entire episode is another part of the German Reconstruction that must be investigated. However, like the Southern and South African Reconstructions, it will be a long time coming, and as long as the establishment's media rule, it is doubtful if anything will be done to correct past excesses.

### Civilian Deaths In Dresden

Germans consider the carpet bombing of German cities as one of the greatest evils to befall their land. Scripture prohibits the cutting of a fruit tree, setting a land on fire, or mistreatment of an enemy,<sup>13</sup> but the air raids against civilian targets were many times worse. Two thousand planes would rain incendiary bombs on a single city, carpeting it from end to end and giving it over to the flames. Civilian casualties were enormous. The attack on Dresden, though only one of many such raids, was the crowning blow.

The historic old city of Dresden is noted for its delicate porcelain. It was an open city, a city with no guns, no defenses. It manufactured no war material and had no strategic value. This open city was used as a crowded collection point for women and children refugees fleeing the Soviet hordes. The presence of hundreds of thousands of refugees tempted a saturation bombing effort - a type of aerial bombardment that prevents escape.

Thousands of American bombers roared over the city all day, hour after hour, dropping uncountable numbers of incendiary bombs. Thousands of British bombers did the same all night. There was no respite. There was no escape for the women and children. The first raid drove them deep into the shelters and the continuing bombings kept them from emerging. Non-stop day and night bombing built super-hot fires all over the city. The fires would not allow survivors to emerge above ground without being roasted. The fires continued to build in intensity until they used up the available

13 (1) "Take care that you do nothing that is cruel; and when you are engaged in a siege ... do not you render the land naked by cutting down trees that bear fruit, but spare them as considering that they were made for the benefit of men." Josephus, *Antiquities* 4:8:42. (2) "Treat those that are esteemed our enemies with moderation; for he doth not allow us to set their country on fire ... He hath also provided for such as are taken captive that they may not be injured, and especially that the women may not be abused." Josephus, *Against Apion*, 2:30.

oxygen supply and thousands suffocated underground. Later, many of the bombing crews flying over the city vomited from the sickening smell of roasting human flesh that was wafted high into the air.

I talked to a rescuer who entered one of the underground bomb shelters several days after the raids when things had cooled. There were hundreds of women and children sitting quietly in the dark. All dead. It was like a wax museum. There were thousands of shelters like that one. Estimates of the deaths from this one single raid against civilians run all the way to three-quarters of a million. Some higher. Most were women and children.

No military excuse<sup>14</sup> could be offered for the bombing of Dresden, and to date no one has attempted to do so.

When the establishment earlier burned Atlanta, Charleston, Richmond, Cassville, Georgia and Belfontein, Alabama and the South African towns and farms, the civilians were permitted to escape to starve elsewhere. But the establishment then was not as bold as it is today.

### Deaths From German Dislocation

The single event producing the largest number of civilian deaths in Germany was the same thing that caused the largest number of civilian deaths in the South and in South Africa. It was civilian displacement. In the German case, millions of Germans were uprooted from ancestral homes of a thousand years and forced to flee to the West without food, clothing, or shelter. Perhaps as many as three million died in this German Diaspora. Some place the number of civilian dead at four million.

A German living in California told me this story. He was a young boy of eleven at the time and had been in the woods for several days with his grandfather gathering wood. When they emerged the land was vacant. No one could be seen. There was no one on the streets nor in the homes of any of the neighbors. The grandfather was old and told the boy to leave him and go crosscountry to the West by himself. Traveling at dusk and early morning for about ten days, he at last reached kinsmen in Austria. He said the trip was ghostly. Going through villages, his steps and his calls would echo back to him. There was nothing living: not a chicken, not a barking dog. He

14 The few refugees who managed to escape the bombing were later strafed on the roads outside the city by fighter planes sent to follow up the bombings.



could hear Soviet tanks and trucks sometimes on distant roads, but that was all.

### War Crimes Trials

The entire Boer armed forces in the field were outlawed by the British in the latter stages of the war. They were to be treated as criminals if they had not surrendered by a date set by the British commander. If they killed a British soldier in combat, they were to be tried and hanged. The Boers held more prisoners than the British so the British had to revise their demands to persuade the Boers to return to their blackened homesites. If the Boers had not held hostages and been ready to retaliate, the British would have doubtless enforced their intent.

After the war against the Southern Confederacy, President Jefferson Davis was captured, brutalized by his guards, and thrust into a cell dug into the damp earthen bank of Fortress Monroe to await trial. He almost died from brutal treatment, bad food, cold, and medical neglect. The media cried the whole while for the blood of all Southern leaders and generals including General Lee.

Davis was not brought to trial, not because his captors feared that his mistreatment would be made known, but because of the Constitutional illegality of what had been done to the Southland. At that time, it was entirely possible that the courts would declare illegal the act of the Republicans in invading the South and freeing the slaves, with or without compensation.

Hitler sent Rudolf Hess, his deputy, to Scotland to try to arrange peace between the two nations. Hess was rewarded with a lifetime in prison that was virtually a solitary confinement. With the emergence of "Glasnost," the 92 year old man is said to have been murdered to continue to keep establishment secrets. Even a lifetime of solitary confinement was better than the fate that befell the rest of the German leaders.

The Southern army surrendered. Some parts peacefully, other parts were shot down after they surrendered. Some, like Quantrill's battalion, were not allowed to surrender at all. This gave birth to the James gang and others like it who were outlawed and hunted down one at a time and killed.

The German SS, the larger part made up of volunteers from other countries, were branded as war criminals en masse. **Hundreds,**

**if not thousands, were given show trials and executed for being successful.**

SS Obersturmbannführer Paul-Albert Kausch of Division "Nordland," recruited largely from Norway, led his unit of tanks in the Battle of Berlin until his last tank was lost. Captured by the communists, he was tried as a war criminal and sentenced to 25 years hard labor.<sup>15</sup>

Ostuf. Fritz Knoechlein took charge of Regiment "Norge" and fought bravely against the Soviets invading Estonia.

"After the war Knoechlein came before a British- arranged 'war crimes' trial, despite being severely tortured by the British, he refused to confess to trumped-up charges ... As a result, Knoechlein was found 'guilty' and executed."<sup>16</sup>

War crimes trials were only for officers:

"The young Fleming had several wounds ... he had accounted for one last tank victim, now smoldering a bare 50 yards away. There were 11 burned-out tank hulks on the battlefield within the range of Remi Schrynen's field piece."<sup>17</sup> He received the Knight's Cross and 'was held in brutal captivity' for 5 years."

Sometimes the trials were held before the war ended:

"The remnants of Panzer Detachment 502 had to pull out so fast that they left all of their wounded behind - a tragic mistake! The wounded German prisoners, including the commander of 2nd Company/502 Panzer, Oberleutnant Carius, were gathered together by the Soviets. Slowly and deliberately, commissars went among the German wounded and captured and began killing them one- by-one with a bullet in the nape of the neck... later Radio Moscow would broadcast the names of all the ... officers who had been dispatched at Dunaburg. This was yet another war crime neglected at Nuremberg!"<sup>18</sup>

The concept of devastating a kinsman nation, stealing his land, burning his homes and cities, carting off his wealth, raping his women, and holding "war crimes" trials for the defeated, is not a Christian concept.

<sup>15</sup> Narva 1944, Richard Landwehr, p. 103, Bibliophile Legion Books, Inc, P. O. Box 612, Silver Spring, Maryland 20901-0612

<sup>16</sup> *Ibid.*, p58.

<sup>17</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 105

<sup>18</sup> *Ibid.* p. 113



### Reflection

There are two kinds of people. The Lawful and the Lawless. The Lawful obey the Law. The Lawless are marked for punishment. The punishments are specified by God and are to be carried out exactly. Failure to do so guarantees that the outlaw will repeat his offense. Each time the stakes rise.

Germany was the birthplace of modern-day usury. The usury bankers wanted the property the king and church owned. Germany was wracked by the communist revolution of 1848 to take this property. Precautions were taken against it happening again, but not enough. Germany made the fatal mistake of allowing the usury system which had financed the first revolution to remain to finance the second. Germany also allowed strangers to teach in her universities and train other revolutionaries. The second revolution broke out in 1918 financed by the very ones who financed the first. The prize was the same.

The atrocity of World War II was to crush Germany's recapture of what had been taken from her after World War I. Her suppression was a repeat of what had happened to the South and South Africa.

Germany too late learned that the contest was "to the death." She relied on armed might while ordinary Christians throughout the West, obeying the Law, would have made the fratricidal war impossible.

History is a learning process. Out of the wreckage of World War II something new, different, and terrible has entered the scene. Something learned. Something inevitable.

---

## Chapter 9

---

# THE POSTWAR RESTORATION ATTEMPT

### Lynching 1873 - 1910

In 1873-74, the national media was instructed to stop their fifty-year ongoing attack on the South. The media attack stopped on a dime. Read the newspapers of that period. One week the Blacks were "holy"; the next week they could do nothing right. The new media policy was that the South had been "misunderstood," that things were really bad down there, and that it wasn't the fault of the bankers who had financed the likes of John Brown and Horace Greeley. The Blacks and carpetbaggers were responsible. This was something new. It was the first time the North had heard this. You can do this sort of thing when you have a media monopoly.

Next, the international bankers started a nationwide revolt against the Republican Party by supporting the Democratic Party. The attack was led by their media. A Democrat/Republican political war was the result. The Democrats were now the good guys. The Republicans lost and their occupation troops were pulled out of the South. Without federal troops to protect them, the Blacks and the few remaining carpetbaggers were ousted. The establishment land syndicates kept their southern land purchases from grasping Black rulers who would confiscate them. The Whites were prevented from "legally" repossessing their property because many had moved away and media election of politicians who appointed the judiciary hampered the rest.

Then there was the question of what to do about the other BIG problem. Thousands of criminals guilty of murder and rape walked the streets in every city in the country from New York to New Orleans. They were the source of practically all crime.



It was the criminal's turn to flee and hide, but there was no place to hide. The people remembered.

With the Republicans gone, the criminal had lost his protector. The media were instructed to look the other way. The media seldom found anything to criticize in the things that followed.

It was as if fresh air blew through the land. Where Lawful judges presided, legal executions took place. Sometimes as many as ten on a gallows. Where lawless courts still existed and criminals were protected, extra-legal executions took place. There were thousands upon thousands of unpunished criminals. America went on a nationwide house-cleaning hunt for them.

Almost as many legal and extra-legal executions took place outside the South as in, even though the South was where most crimes had been permitted to occur. Murderers set free ten years earlier rounded a corner and found a committee of six quietly waiting for them. A quick trial, and the felon discovered that there was a God in heaven whose Laws were enforced.

### Summary Of Lynchings

*Hist. Statistics of the US, Colonial Times to 1970, From US Department Of Commerce. Washington, D.C., 1975. "Historical Data" contains interesting information.*

Executions peaked in 1892 and declined drastically from that time on. The great mass of unpunished criminals was dead by the turn of the century, and from that time both legal and extra-legal executions merely polished off the remaining few and kept down the new crop of murderers.

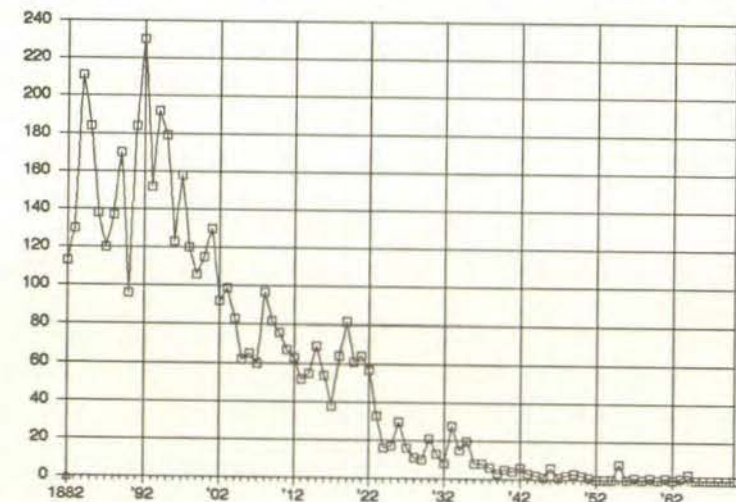
There were undoubtedly victims of private vengeance, especially when counter-restoration forces were also active. But private vengeance occurs today, both in courts and out. Some of the worst criminals are judges. However, those committing such crimes risk falling afoul of the Law forbidding those acts. Where murder has been committed, the Law adjudges them murderers, subject to the punishment required of murderers. The Law has set a punishment for all other crimes. It only remains for the penalty to be enforced, and historically, someone steps forward to do what it is felt must be done. The rules are known by all.

When I was seven, I had this fact of life explained to me by Richard. We were riding down the road in a pickup truck when

Richard pointed to a tree in the middle of a field and said, "That's where some White men hanged a colored fellah." I replied, "That's awful! Why did they do such a thing? You are Black, aren't you afraid?"

Richard replied, "He fooled around with (raped) a White woman. I ain't done nothin', I got nothin' to worry about." He was right. If anyone in Culpeper County touched Richard and could not

### Whites & Blacks Executed Extra-legally



*Figure 9: Executions 1880-1970: In 1884, 211 recorded extra-legal executions took place of which 160 were White and 51 Black. In 1892 a total of 230 were executed of whom 69 were White and 161 Black. Most criminals had already been executed by the time the media started their 1920-1930s anti-Klan anti-lynching campaign. The media's anti-lynching crusade was pure humbug.*

prove justification, he would have had to deal with my grandfather, "Dick" Kelly, and my Uncle Thompson. This might have been more than a great many people could handle. The Law that was obeyed had existed since before the nation was founded and was quite clear. Everyone understood. Life was simple for Richard and easily understood. He did "nothin' wrong" and he had "nothin'" to worry about." And he didn't.



The chart uncovers one more media falsehood. Their all-out assault against KKK lynchings in the 1920s and 1930s was a hoax. The Klan had been disbanded and there had been no Klan for 50 years. It was not re-formed until 1915. By this late date the mass execution of criminals had been completed (see chart).

By the 1930s the extra-legal executions done by Phineas priests and vigilante committees all over the country, the "neighborhood watch" of the time, had virtually exterminated known murderers and rapists. The thousands of interracial couples who flaunted themselves in carriages and on the streets in every city in the 1860s and early 1870s were dispatched almost overnight - not only in the United States, but in most of Europe. The symbol "#25," signifying *Numbers: Chapter 25* in the Bible, appeared on walls and sidewalks. The media actively encouraged the elimination of criminals by whatever means available and found almost no fault with the process.

### The Violent Time - 1873-1910

The overt struggle to rid the nation of establishment-imposed Black and renegade tyranny swirled around the comatose Democratic Party. The Democratic Party, district by district, became much more than a political party. It contained organizations within the organization, and groups within those groups. It became the political soul of an enslaved nation, North, South, and West, trying to free itself.<sup>1</sup> No one has ever plumbed the depths of the Democratic organization of that period. There has been no history written. There never will be. It was a violent age. The establishment had paid assassins everywhere. One's existence was kept secret. No records were kept. The oath of silence was absolute. It had to be.

### Phineas Groups - Birdwatchers - 1880-1910

Local tradition says that the Democratic Party contained one small covert group known as the Birdwatchers. Its name has passed down by word of mouth. The few dedicated members of this particular group were specifically interested in high ranking, corrupt

<sup>1</sup> I have a gold-headed walking stick cryptically inscribed to my great uncle, an attorney, with the following words: "Smith County Democracy to A. D. Kelly 1894."

political figures. It is said that they occasionally met to discuss birds. In time, they vanished forever and no one ever learned exactly what it was that they did. Money is supposed to have changed hands within this group and, on occasion, they traveled to other towns, other cities, and sometimes other states. They were all good Democrats and scores of carpetbaggers left the state or disappeared during the time they discussed birds.

Such groups which had a name were rare. While numerous, most passed like birds flying over water, leaving no record of their passage, just legends and stories - and the usual propaganda official version.

Lore has it that a full-strength Law enforcement organization had seven members. Seldom more, most often less:

*"Cause them ... to draw near, even every man with his destroying weapon ... six men come ... and one man ... with a writer's inkhorn at his side." Ezek 9:1- 6*

The sixth member with the writer's inkhorn was the propagandist and correspondent. The seventh member was the leader - *God the Word*. The Leader was the invisible one who presided over every meeting. His standing orders were in writing, were final, and could not be appealed. Any group or member violating the Leader's rules was as subject to the Leader's punishment as anyone else who broke the rules. The rules were spelled out exactly in the rule book and the required punishment was also spelled out exactly. The groups were ultra-legal and very predictable. To the Lawful they were a shield, to the Lawless a spear.

Individual members considered themselves chosen knights like Lancelot, Arthur, or like a crusader ancestor - ones "called" to their ministry and charged with enforcing God's Law to the letter. Their password - "God wills it." In later years one could not be chosen to an office until he had proven himself by his acts against the enemy.

During this period, the editors of the establishment media kept a very low profile, or in many cases with their owner's approval, they reversed themselves and supported the purge of criminals, thereby escaping punishment for their earlier support of the very deeds they now condemned in others. They could very easily have been swept up in the purge. They prudently let the spirit of Law enforcement



sweeping the nation expend itself before returning to their dirty work.

An elderly business acquaintance told me why his grandfather limped. He had been shot. A woman had been raped.<sup>2</sup> Local justice handed down a few years imprisonment in place of punishment and then paroled the rapist in a few months.

A visitor arrived late one night at his grandfather's door. His grandfather quickly dressed and left. He returned at sunrise with an injury to his left leg that was slow in healing. His family later learned that it was caused by a bullet wound. The culprit had been heavily armed, possibly one of the local militia or constabulary. He had taken shelter in a barn and wounded one of his assailants, the speaker's grandfather, before being punished.

Incidents such as this were so frequent as to be non-events.

### The Peaceful Time - 1910-1940

As has been shown in the previous chapter, the violent age gradually came to an end when the supply of criminals was exhausted, and the people took on other tasks.

The 1920s and 1930s that the media picture as being filled with violence were, in fact, the exact opposite. Certainly there was violence, but precious little compared to what had gone on during the previous fifty years. Much of what was pictured as violence were the efforts of those made destitute by the establishment to retake their money from usury banks. Robbing a mom and pop corner grocery store was considered a real crime - but a bank? Well, that was something that only the establishment and its media went into hysterics over. People felt that it was difficult to commit a crime against those guilty of capital crimes.<sup>3</sup> It was believed that the banks were just collecting points for tribute wrung from defenseless people. When Jesse James shared his take with the people, they gladly took it as those entitled to the return of property that had been stolen from them. A man is not supposed to profit from his own wrong doing and Jesse James and others like him saw to it that they didn't. Except for the very first bank raids made during the late

2 "If a man ... force her (rape), ... the man ... shall die." Deut 22:25

3 Ezek 18:8-13

War, the James raids were the first time that men went directly after the dragon in his lair. It shocked the establishment as nothing else ever had done.

### Texas Drunk Reforms

Mike Cator was an old-timer who belonged to the Lynchburg Gideon chapter. He was a feisty, faded, red-haired Texan. He told me a story about a man near Tyler, Texas in the 1920s who regularly got drunk and beat his wife and children.

Men came to his house one night, just after he had arrived home drunk again, and had begun beating up his family. He was taken out in front of his house where he sobered immediately. His visitors trussed him to a tree in his front yard and he was severely whipped by torchlight.<sup>4</sup> He was told that if he ever took another drop of liquor, or beat his family again, that they would return and finish the job.

The man never touched another drop of liquor during the twenty years that Mike Cator lived there. In fact, Mike said that, sober, he was a hard worker and an exemplary husband, and from that time on, he was sober.

### Pregnant Girl

There was a girl in Culpeper who had been going with a man and was pregnant by him. He refused to marry her. A group accosted him on the way home one night and explained that he would die if he did not marry the girl. If he tried to leave town they would follow and kill him. He married the girl, had four lovely children, and lived happily ever after.<sup>5</sup>

### Sen. Carter Glass Learns About Politics

When I was a boy, Carter Glass, of Federal Reserve fame, lived in Lynchburg. He owned the newspaper. A gifted speaker may

4 (1) "It is not for kings to drink wine ... lest they ... forget the law." Prov 31:4- 5. (2) Deut:16-17, Ex 21:24- 25

5 (1) "If a man entice a maid ... and lie with her, he shall surely endow her to be his wife." Ex 22:16. (2) "If a man find a damsel that is a virgin ... and lie with her ... she shall be his wife ... he may not put her away all his days." Deut 22:28- 29



persuade one, one hundred, or one thousand. A newspaper persuades many thousands. A gifted editor may persuade the majority of voters in an area with a single editorial. An editor may defeat an opponent by merely omitting reference to him. It is axiomatic that whomever a newspaper states is the most honest and able man available for political office is almost always elected. Glass owned the newspaper, and his newspaper naturally identified him as being an honest, able, and gifted person, so, he was elected senator from Virginia. When the New York media, in a periodic, staged mudslinging contest, accused Senator Glass of living in a hotbed of Klan activity, he replied that there wasn't a Klansman within miles of Lynchburg.

The next morning Klansmen in regalia lined up in front of Jones Memorial Library and began to parade across the long Rivermont Bridge, down Main Street, up Church Street, company by company, troop by troop, regiment by regiment, up the hill and past his big house on Clay Street. By nightfall the parade was still passing his house and continued by torchlight late into the night. Klansmen on foot, Klansmen on horseback. Lynchburg had never seen anything like it. No one had ever seen anything like it. Not a word spoken, absolute silence. Only the tramp of feet. It was eerie.

Senator Glass was first and foremost a politician. Klansmen were voters, and here were thousands marching past his house. For the rest of his life, he had little further to say about the Klan, and so far as I have been able to find out, little appeared about the incident in the New York papers. But, just because it wasn't reported didn't mean it did not happen. It happened right here in Lynchburg.

### **The Klan Phenomenon - 1915-1940**

This new Klan cloaked in the hocus-pocus of yesteryear was a political organization which attempted to copy the restoration feats of the nationalist movements then beginning to take place in Italy and Germany. It was a very real power for 25 years.

As such, it immediately came into conflict with an establishment fighting to keep the loot it had accumulated during the recent wars and depressions. Those who had an adventuresome and patriotic spirit joined the Klan. It swept the nation before the media could stop it. It swept into its sphere 24 state houses - half the nation - and had 6.2 million dues paying members. It was semi-secret in order to

shield its members from media slander. The Klan was the number one enemy of the establishment. Establishment agents often found themselves in the position of complaining to a governor or police chief who was himself a Klan member. The Klan was very powerful.

The need for "committees of six" was rare. Law obedience and Law enforcement became second nature to everyone. Almost everyone obeyed and enforced the Law. Almost everyone was ready to step in and help out if there was a need. The elected peace officers seldom found their services needed.<sup>6</sup> Almost everyone approved - except the national media. It was a day when both men and women could walk the streets anywhere without fear, and citizens did not bother to lock doors. Right was right, wrong was wrong. I remember those days well.

### **Anti-Reaction Programs - Part I**

#### **(Establishment 7-Step Plan)**

- 1- Prize
- 2- Vilification/Provocation
- 3- Trigger
- 4- Barbarous War
- 5- Unconditional-Surrender  
/Occupation-reconstruction
- 6- Puppet Government
- 7- Anti-Reaction Programs

The establishment was being assaulted throughout the Christian West. In Germany, the NASD party threatened to do dire things to the establishment and took control of the newspapers, re-possessed much of the loot taken in the post-WWI reconstruction period, and turned out establishment professors and politicians. The same thing had taken place in Italy with the ownership of Italian industry being stripped from the banks, and usurers shunted to the section of town occupied by houses of prostitution. The establishment was incensed.

<sup>6</sup> Cousin Vay Garnett Newbill's husband was sheriff of Essex Co. He seldom left his office. When he wanted to arrest someone he just sent word to them and they came on in to jail.



The American West had *The Grange*, a grass roots movement to shackle trusts and industrial monopoly. Political parties advocated allowing workers to own the factories in which they worked as their due inheritance. Everywhere there was talk of a return to the land, and of returning the land to those from whom it had been taken. Books which critically examined establishment religion and the establishment version of history poured from the presses.

Other races had long had their histories. For the first time histories of the White race appeared to take their place alongside the others.

As a disease prevention measure, strangers nationwide began to be separated into their own schools. In Lynchburg in the 1930s, the newspapers were full of discussion of a single school for Blacks, Jews, Orientals, and Indians, since all were equally strangers.<sup>7</sup> The same movement was gathering momentum in America and Britain as throughout the rest of the West, but it was stamped out before it could achieve the political and economic success it strove for. This is how it was done.

The prize was the old one, the land formerly held by both organized religion and kings, which had been taken from the people. It was now held by the international bankers. Nothing ever changes. The people were going after the big prize, and the international bankers determined that the people were not going to have it.

The establishment had the power of money. It had unlimited wealth that comes from the ownership of the money monopoly. They immediately located the rebels' weak point - communications! Many small town presses were still owned by the people and could often elect their own candidates to county and state political office, but the money powers owned the widely read national establishment media and elected national leaders as well as many state governors.

With their unlimited wealth, a major buyout of small town and county newspapers began.

7 "The Southern birth rate remained nearly 20% higher than that of the nation as a whole, and infant mortality in the region remained higher than elsewhere; nearly half the children born in the South in 1860 died before they reached five years of age." *American History*, Richard N. Current, Alfred A. Kopf, NY, 1983, p. 327. This high mortality rate disappeared with the introduction of racial separation.

Thomas Edison's new invention, the motion picture, was taken over by the establishment and moved to California. There, it was beyond Edison's ability to protect his patents, and it was converted into a weapon to be used against Edison's own people. Radio, another new invention, was also taken over by the establishment and used in the same way. Things changed in America. In 1910, only one song in ten was a love song. In the 1920s, it was one in five. Now, ten out of ten are so-called love songs, many containing explicit sexual messages.

In the 1930s, the little town of Culpeper had two newspapers. *The Star* and *The Exponent*. They lost much circulation to the advertisement-supported national papers which carried more and varied news and cost less. Since *The Star* and *The Exponent* were restorationist papers, little national advertising came their way. They were forced to merge to make ends meet. The new *Star-Exponent* did well until the owner died. Then the paper had to be sold to pay the new inheritance taxes.<sup>8</sup> A chain bought the *Star-Exponent* and it now operates profitably, carries the usual news items, receives national advertising subsidies, and reads like any other establishment paper. This is what has gradually happened to most of the small county and town media in the rest of the nation.

This created a restorationist information vacuum, and created the Father Caughlin phenomenon. Caughlin, a Catholic priest, launched a radio program that became well supported over much of the nation. His supporters were so loyal and militant that he could not be taken off the air without the risk of dire consequences. The establishment sent President Roosevelt to inform the Catholic Church that their tax exemption was in jeopardy unless they took Father Caughlin off the air. Caughlin received orders from the Catholic Church to give up his patriotic program. He did. The people now had no propaganda medium with which to replace him. He had been almost the sole national spokesman for the rebels.

On the political front the ball was carried almost exclusively by the semi-secret national Klan organization. To neutralize this political clout the media went after the Klan. Klan impersonators com-

8 The inheritance tax was levied to force closely held private businesses to the auction block when they could not raise the required tax money.



mitted all sorts of atrocities, invariably leaving a burning cross each time to point a finger. It was a repeat of what had happened to the 1867 Klan. Just as with the establishment's bogus 1870s Klan, almost no one was caught, and the Klan was blamed by the media for everything. Every indiscretion, every bit of hanky- panky, every adultery, every case of drunkenness - if the offender belonged to the Klan, it was plastered on the front page. In essence, if you belonged to the Klan, the media pictured you as a brute, drunk, adulterer, or worse. The proof offered was the exposé story in the newspaper.

Exposé followed exposé. The indiscretions of a Kansas Klan ditch digger were seized upon as eagerly as those of a member of the Pennsylvania legislature. A drunk falling down on a sidewalk could make national front-page if he were a Klansman. The media meant to destroy the Klan's political power and they hit just where it hurt - with no fear of being answered.

Communist party members and radical Black organizations were immune from equal treatment.<sup>9</sup> This atrocity drum-fire propaganda was very effective.

College educators who had turned out the hundreds of books on racial studies in the 1920s decrying racial interbreeding suddenly found that those who promoted integration and who participated in Klan-bashing received professorships and tenure. Those who didn't were passed over.

The reason for this is that college boards of visitors are composed of substantial contributors to the colleges. Corporations are the most substantial contributors. Banks elect most corporate officers. The reason is that most stock is held in bank trust accounts by individuals to legally avoid inheritance taxes. This stock held by banks is registered in their "street name." "Street name" corporate stock is voted by the banks. The banks in this way elect many if not most corporate directors. These bank-elected directors order the corporations to make grants to colleges. These corporate directors and wealthy stock owners making the grants are usually those elected to the college boards. When elected to a college board, they

<sup>9</sup> Black nationalist Marcus Garvey's *Back To Africa* movement was attacked the same way. See *War Cycles / Peace Cycles*, p. 185.

tell the college whom to hire and whom to fire. In effect, usury banks run America's colleges.

This is why college professors teach pro-usury, anti- Christian propaganda. A whole generation is being educated by teachers who are selected, paid, and promoted by usury organizations simply because they espouse anti-Western views. This is the cause of the flood of anti-Klan books, papers, and pamphlets that began to pour from their prostituted pens in the 1930s.

An "anti- Klan" cult was born once again, this time just as sophisticated, just as vicious, just as hypocritical as the old anti-Klan network. The Klan was bad - anti-Klan was good. Both good and bad were defined by the same media. There was no answer because there was no way to answer.

### Suppressing The Huey Long Phenomenon

The national political restorationist banner was carried by Huey Long of Louisiana. The Klan-dominated Democratic Party sang his praises. The establishment was scared to death of him. The people saw what he was trying to do and gave him their wholehearted support. With their help, he was able to subdue the establishment in Louisiana and throughout much of the South and West. There was such a national groundswell for him that he was going to be, hands down, the next president of the United States. There was no one in the American political arena who could have stopped him - almost.

Walking quickly down a hall in the Louisiana state capitol building on the way to a committee meeting, a stranger, Dr. Carl Weiss, stepped in front of him and shot him. This assassination ended the restoration hope of America.

With the restorationist political leader, Huey Long, out of the way, and its spokesman Father Caughlin gagged, there were few holdouts left, and they were isolated from the people.

The odds had shifted drastically as the rebel banners fell one by one. Building on their unlimited money, supporting national media, and assassins, the sole banner left was held by the quiet, unassuming Lindbergh, now leader by default. But Lindbergh had no way to communicate with the people who looked to him for leadership. The establishment media blacked him out. He could talk all he liked



about the evil of America sending armies to Europe to fight their own kind, but no one could hear him.

Others, like-minded, were rounded up and tried en masse in sedition trials when WW II started. They were exonerated, of course, but the plan was to neutralize them, and this was accomplished when they spent their private fortunes in their defense and were left penniless. The establishment had crushed America's political revolt, as it later crushed the European military one.<sup>10</sup>

### Anti-Reaction Programs - Post World War II

At the end of WW II the establishment was faced with several very large problems - each of its own making.

The lack of restraint in suppressing rebellious Germany resulted in establishment atrocities surpassing anything previously recorded in Western history.

These horrible events had to be concealed to block retaliation, not only from a resurgent and aroused Germany who might rearm one day, but from a kindred West. Also, the conquered must be kept defenseless while the conversion of its non-portable property to the conquerors took place, tribute exacted, and unfavorable trade concessions forced on the conquered.

Solution: blame establishment atrocities on the victim. Raise a "hue and cry" against the victim accusing him of "Andersonvilles" to justify the major looting to follow.

Germany had been a National Socialist state. Much property formerly held by private owners was owned by the state. The liquidation of Germany's WW II leaders allowed the new leaders, who were appointed by the Allies, to dispose of Germany's public property to whomever they chose.

To keep Germany in subjection, for the first time since the conquest and occupation of Scotland and Ireland, she was permanently occupied by her conquerors. The excuse given by the Allies was the danger from the Soviet menace. The Soviet justification for the occupation of Eastern Europe was the American

menace. Fifty years after WW II, Germany is still occupied, paying tribute, overrun by strangers to help keep her subjected, and the present government still hunts down members of her old government to justify their existence.

This technique has DELAYED the atrocity revelations, and it has also created an army of cynics who believe that any establishment victim is automatically in the right, that the establishment is always wrong, and that the media always lie.

News suppression has also forced the birth of an alternate media which annually publishes hundreds of books, thousands of newsletters, unnumbered audio cassettes, and even makes professional-quality documentaries for home video. A disillusioned public demanding this information grows by millions each passing year.

Many books, blacked out by the establishment media, are "best sellers" even by establishment standards. The author's own book *Our Nordic Race* was surreptitiously copied by establishment wreckers and for years was sold below the author's printing costs. It is estimated that many more than 100,000 copies have been circulated in this manner in spite of copyright protection. This is done with the works of a number of conservative authors. The purpose is to attract conservative customers and at the same time to saturate the market with subsidized cheap copies to prevent conservative authors from making a living from their writing, and thereby being able to write others. His other book *War Cycles/Peace Cycles* has also reached best-seller proportions. This, without having had one single review by the establishment media. The author has thus far had to institute or threaten legal proceedings three times to block attempts by establishment wreckers to do the same with this book.

<sup>10</sup> Those who know their history know that one reason for the continuous Klan bashing is that the 1915 Klan almost took control of America from its present day owners. The establishment is not likely to forget that scare any time soon.



### Communist Spy Scare - 1945-1954

Following World War II, all of America's secrets, including the ultra-secret atomic bomb, effortlessly flowed to the Soviet Union. The war had generated great patriotic fervor and had brought a large number of non-professional soldiers and non-establishment politicians to Washington, D.C., where they really thought that their job was to protect America from her enemies. It was these newcomers who made almost daily discoveries showing the presence of traitors turning America's secrets over to her enemies. The rumor mill had it that DC and the nation were riddled with traitors. Worse, these traitors seemed to come from the groups that Roosevelt had sponsored and brought into the government.

### The McCarthy Phenomenon

An alarmed grass-roots contacted Congress, and under this spur, Congress formed its own Un-American Activities Committee to look into these allegations of communists in government.

Under the leadership of an unknown, Senator Joseph McCarthy, this committee went far beyond what was expected and found that the government was in fact riddled with communists. Everywhere they investigated there were communists. Almost daily, government employees came forward to report the existence of groups heretofore unknown. McCarthy had a field day.

McCarthy was likable. He had style, a way with words, and he was a hard worker. He was also photogenic, personable, and his anti-Communist crusade persuaded grass-roots America to foot the rearmament bill then being sold to the American public. Hundreds of billions of dollars rode on McCarthy's revelations. He couldn't understand why the government or the administration didn't seem to be interested in the security risks that he uncovered.

On TV, McCarthy named names and named places. Not just a few, lots of them, subsequently found to be just as he said. America was glued to the radio. The McCarthy disclosure was table talk. The Soviet Union was the evil giant waiting to pounce. They had agents in our government and were building new armaments from the latest designs furnished by traitors in America's midst. Government agencies galore were set up to cope with these discoveries. It was not,

however, the communists who were the target of this government interest. It was the anti-communists.<sup>1</sup>

McCarthy was not establishment. He was believable. He had whipped America out of her post-war lethargy, started up the rearmament industry, and it was now time for him to take a back seat.

### Disposing Of McCarthy

The media held all the cards and played them as they chose. They had created McCarthy. He had done his job and it was time for him to go. From this time on, only McCarthy's opposition was heard.

The media coined a slogan: "McCarthy is a nice guy, but I don't like his methods." It became a national buzz-phrase. What methods didn't they like? They couldn't say. When asked, the media seemed pained that anyone would ask.

Another buzz-phrase; "McCarthy condemns people just by the company they keep."<sup>2</sup> McCarthy had been doing just that. If secrets had been passed to the Soviets, and a scientist having access to these secrets kept close company with the known Soviet agent who passed them, and also kept company with communist sympathizers and security risks, McCarthy said that that man was a probable security risk, too. McCarthy spent all his interview time defending his methods.

The McCarthy investigation was shut down and a Senate committee was formed to investigate McCarthy himself. The Senate selected a ham-handed inquisitor. He made McCarthy look persecuted.

1 On the advice of a friend, a few years ago I wrote for a copy of my FBI file under the Freedom of Information Act. It returned with most items blacked out with black ink, but enough was readable to be interesting. Government informers had reported on my activities going back to the time I was a teenager. It contained conversations I had with children on city buses. In the report, my mother was condemned for belonging to the Daughters of the American Revolution. For teaching Sunday school, she was called a religious fanatic. The American people had been told that their government was out looking for communists. This was a smoke screen. All the while they were looking for anti-communists or those who they thought might become anti-communists some day. A Sunday school teacher who teaches that it is better to follow God than man may constitute a danger to a Lawless state.

2 "Can two walk together, except they be agreed." Amos 3:3.



The matter was salvaged by giving the inquisitor ten minutes TV exposure for each one minute given McCarthy, and then having news anchormen tell the public what the inquisitor should have said but didn't. Then, they shut the show down. The senate gave McCarthy a reprimand. The whole thing stank of whitewash. Some of McCarthy's committee workers who had been the most dedicated anti-communists later showed up as supporters of pro-communist causes.<sup>3</sup> Their anti-communist work allowed them to discover just who the anti-establishment, anti-communists were.

McCarthy wrote a book<sup>4</sup> defending his cause and died shortly there after. They said he had a heart attack.

### Almond - Virginia's Trojan Horse

An oppressed people can interpose the authority of their state between themselves and the oppressors. It has been done many times before.

For example, the following "Sanctuary Cities" interposed their authority between the Federal Government and illegal aliens to make it virtually impossible for the Federal government to apprehend illegals. They are: Berkeley, CA; Burlington, VT; Cambridge, MA; Chicago, IL; Ithaca, NY; Los Angeles, CA; Madison, WI; Olympia, WA; Sacramento, CA; St. Paul, MI; Tacoma Park, MD, and West Hollywood, CA. New York has joined by ordering city officials not to cooperate in the apprehension of illegals.

One does not have to approve. It is enough to know that interposition works.

There are many incidents of successful interposition. In the 1830s, Congress passed tariffs directed against South Carolina. These tariffs would have virtually destroyed the merchants and planters of that state. John C. Calhoun helped interpose the authority of South Carolina and refused to recognize the law. President Andrew Jackson thundered, but South Carolina was prepared to fight. The taxes were reduced to virtually nothing. Interposition worked.

<sup>3</sup> The only way a virus can stay in a host body is to take over the body's defenses.

<sup>4</sup> McCarthyism, The Fight For America, Senator Joe McCarthy, Devin-Adair Co., NY 1952

A key point in interposition is the leader. He must be willing to lay down his life for his people if events so demand. If he does not have this dedication, the matter is lost before it begins.

Any discussion of interposition must include interposition's failures.

In the 1950s, the U.S. government attempted to take over the school system of the State of Virginia. Judge Bill Ould of Chesterfield County said that it was unconstitutional and that the U.S. government didn't have the authority. He stated that Virginia must interpose her authority to protect the people or the education system would be ruined.

James Kilpatrick of the *Richmond News Leader* expounded on the topic and became its most vocal champion. Congressman J. Lindsay Almond, a candidate for office, vowed that if elected governor, he would never betray his mother state Virginia. The media got behind Almond and started a bandwagon. Since the Republican was in favor of capitulation to the federal authorities, Almond was the only choice. Rather than split the vote, other conservative candidates withdrew. On the crest of the media, Almond was steam-rollered into office.

I was a young officer in the Richmond Light Infantry Blues, one of the regiments that went across the slaughter fields at Gettysburg, and the one my great-great-grandfather fought with at Yorktown during the Revolution. The Blues, one of the many regiments of the Virginia National Guard, stood ready to be mobilized to once more defend their state from invasion.

Unlike the former governor, Virginia's newly elected governor never came to visit Virginia's first line. The reason soon became apparent. He stood by and allowed federal marshals to walk in and take over the schools. It had every appearance of having been planned that way from the beginning.

Governor Almond went before the legislature with head down and mumbled some words about doing the best he could. I was one of the many who cried at Virginia's humiliation. Governor Almond received a federal judgeship as soon as his term expired. It boggles the mind to think that he chose a federal judgeship when he could have stepped into the shoes of George Washington or Tom Jefferson and immortality as a national hero.



The media's candidate had proven to be a Trojan Horse. Wallace of Alabama and Orval Forbus of Arkansas followed suit and also bent the knee. The people lost control of their legislatures and now media-elected officials could rule, tax, blockbust, and exploit entire states at a time. The ancient citizen selected election system had been replaced by a media-controlled election system serving the establishment. The states were now made over in establishment image. The people were on their own.

The alternate media was born in Virginia at this time. Pamphlets dealing with the communist background of NAACP founders and other such organizations were printed by the thousands and distributed everywhere. My book *Our Nordic Race* is a result of this period. I had volunteered to work for *The Defenders Of State Sovereignty And Individual Liberties*, a states' rights organization working against the federal takeover of Virginia's schools, and I became tired of having to educate each audience about who they were before I could talk to them.

Because of this, when I was called to active duty during the Berlin Call-up Emergency in 1961, I was refused promotion from 2nd to 1st Lieutenant. No reason was given. I was aide to the commanding general of the 100th Division, and he personally intervened in my behalf. Six colonels from Fortress Monroe, Virginia, appeared at Fort Chaffee to investigate me. They did not investigate to see if I had communist connections, they investigated my states' rights sympathies! Remember, this was the time when the 100th Division had been called to active duty to block communist expansion in Berlin.

I notified Senator Harry Byrd, Senator Willis Robertson, and half a dozen Virginia congressmen who were members of *The Defenders* about what was happening to me, and I was immediately given a clean bill of health.

Something else interesting: the great conservative writer whose editorials on constitutional matters were quoted nationwide during that period is today one of the establishment's handful of token conservatives. His columns appear in most newspapers to add "balance." I called and told him about the establishment investigating my states' rights views. My earlier comrade-in-arms and banner bearer wasn't interested. Thinking I might have been mistaken, when I got out of service I phoned him again. He was too busy to talk to me.

### The Wallace Piper

Forced busing and forced integration have upset all Americans who have had to deal with them.<sup>5</sup> Gov. George Wallace of Alabama stood up for the people. He stood in the doorway of a public school as a public act of defiance. The thing not widely reported is that as soon as his picture was taken he also stood aside and let the federal government take over the schools of Alabama.

George Wallace was a Lindsay Almond type, something the establishment could work with. The media made him a national figure. They hammered the first part of the story, Wallace's brave "Schoolhouse Stand."

A third-party ground-swell had been brewing in the nation for some time. Wallace's national reputation stemming from his schoolhouse stand gave him recognition, and the recognition let him assume leadership. He said all the right things. People from all over the country, never interested before in politics, went to work for George Wallace.

Public opinion polls results were amazing. They showed that Wallace was doing more than satisfying a groundswell - a tidal wave of revolt was building around him. He was the focal point, bringing together people of like mind from all over the country, people who had never known or worked with each other before suddenly found they had much in common. Wallace was the center of something that could be dangerous. The media had channeled the third party movement in his direction, but now it had to be stopped.

Wallace was expendable. He appeared at a rally in a shopping center and was shot. His third party organization was immediately blacked out by the media, and died with no focal point to hold it together. Wallace recovered and reverted to being what he had been all along - a liberal.

One of the close conservative Wallace supporters, one who learned the workings of the emerging conservative resistance, is now the head of an extremely wealthy anti-White organization which

5 "They ... were mingled among the heathen and learned their works." Ps 106:35- 36.



spearheads attacks on conservative individuals and organizations nationwide.<sup>6</sup>

### Suppressing Lincoln Rockwell

I went to see Bill Stephenson, editor of the *Virginian*. Working for him was a tall, quiet fellow. He was introduced to me as Lincoln Rockwell. I had never heard of him. He was later the founder and head of the American Nazi Party.

Rockwell was made into a national figure by the media to be a whipping boy, just as the Klan had been. The media used pictures of him in his uniform to teach the public that there were wild-eyed crazies in the country who wanted to do all the things that nazis were supposed to have done.

The media made a big mistake. The Lincoln Rockwell of the American Nazi Party had been a commander in the United States Navy, an Annapolis graduate. He was well-educated and knew the situation in America. He worked for Bill Stephenson's *Virginian* and found that a little alternative media newspaper such as that one, as good as it was, would not reach many people. Rockwell wanted to talk to lots of people. He had something to say. This nazi business gave him a stage.

Rockwell and his followers, dressed in nazi uniforms, instantly had a crowd. His crowds often numbered in the thousands while the *Virginian* numbered its readers in the hundreds. Lincoln Rockwell was America's new radical spokesman. Radical left-wing colleges usually limit their speakers to left-wing radicals. To feign impartiality they periodically invite a conservative - the more right-wing the better. This is not as easily done as said since the conservative field is very limited. Most conservatives receive no press coverage and have no national recognition. The few who do receive this recognition are overworked. In this atmosphere, one Rockwell as a speaker would balance ten radical speakers.

Rockwell received many invitations from colleges to come and speak to students on campus. He was billed as a wild-eyed nazi and because of the billing he spoke to packed houses. Everyone came

<sup>6</sup> The only way a virus can stay in a host body is to take over the body's defenses.

expecting someone in jack boots with a swastika on his arm, and was disappointed to find a tall quiet man in a three-piece suit smoking a pipe.

He didn't rant and rave. He spoke quietly, outlining what was the matter with America. The catcalls died down and the students listened. Lincoln Rockwell became the darling of the conservative campuses in America. He had found a way around the media blackout. American college campuses listened to the man. It had to be stopped.

An assassin shot him.

### Rhodesia Into The Bag

To gain the billions of dollars worth of gold mines and lush acreage cleared, cultivated, and remaining in the hands of White Rhodesian settlers, Britain ordered Rhodesia to turn Rhodesia's rule over to marxist Blacks who in time would turn the rule over to the establishment.

The Rhodesian Whites objected. Seeing that the capitulation would not be peaceful, the media promoted a World War II fighter pilot to be leader - Ian Smith. Smith was promoted as a conservative and other conservative candidates were blacked out.

Under the media's elected leader, the country voted its independence from Britain and stripped to meet the onslaught of British-, Soviet-, and American-backed marxist guerrillas. Everyone, including women and children, went about armed. Armor plate was strapped onto trucks and trains and they went through. Clerks left their jobs once a week to lead combat patrols deep into the bush. The economic boycott imposed by Western nations was met by sales to uncommitted nations. There was more profitable trade at the end of a year than at the beginning. Rhodesia's revolt against Britain was a smashing success.

The newly-elected government of Rhodesia had truly interposed its authority to protect its defenseless citizens from the wholesale robbery of the nation.

All this had been foreseen and planned for. Media-leader Ian Smith called a meeting with Britain and her allies, and without a referendum to seek the people's opinion turned the country and its wealth over to the Black revolutionaries. Most Whites lost virtually everything.



Thanks to the media's Trojan Horse, a multi-billion dollar coup had been completed at the cost of an entire White nation.

### Solving South Africa's Verwoerd Phenomenon

South Africa had suffered horribly at the hands of the establishment in the Boer War but had not been defeated. Unlike the Confederacy and Germany, she had forced a negotiated peace from her enemy. Her pride was unbroken. All that was needed to bring her the rest of the way from under the establishment's heel was a leader. She found that leader in Hendrick Frensch Verwoerd. Hendrik Verwoerd was the son of a deeply religious Hollander who migrated to South Africa in 1903 to become an assistant evangelist for the Dutch Reformed Church.

Hendrick Verwoerd went to Stellenborch University and gained a MA and a doctorate in philosophy. He became professor of psychology at his old university in 1928, and in the dark days of the depression worked extensively among poor Whites. This drew him into politics.

In 1937, he was offered the editorship of *Die Transvaler* and was also given the job of helping to rebuild the National Party in the Transvaal. In 1938, he publicly came out against mixed marriages. He also attacked Jews who belonged to and led revolutionary communist organizations. In 1947, he recommended that South Africans ignore the visit of Britain's royal family - a declaration of independence.

In 1948, he left the newspaper to become a member of the Senate. In 1950, as Minister of Native Affairs, he was responsible for implementing for the natives the old British homelands plan that the British had started in the last century. He was responsible for 80,000 Blacks joining their fellow tribesmen in their own separate self-ruled homeland of Soweto.

Winning the confidence of the nation, he became prime minister in 1958 and two years later presided over the referendum when South Africans voted to separate from Great Britain and form their own nation.

His offer of help to prepare Blacks for self-government in their own homelands won him almost solid White support, and his veiled comments that South Africa must treat all strangers and sojourners alike created consternation in certain circles since most of South

Africa's multi-billion dollar industrial and mineral resources were an establishment monopoly. Verwoerd was so popular in South Africa that it was certain that anything that he wanted he would get. In South Africa the establishment was on the run, but its agents, provided with unlimited funds, continued to fight for their master.

On April 9, 1961, an assassin fired two bullets into his face. He survived the attack.

In 1966, he was knifed to death in the House of Assembly by a mixed-breed, Dimitri Tsafendas. Tsafendas' father was a Greek and his mother a Mozambican Black. The people who hired him as a parliamentary messenger in the House of Assembly close to Verwoerd saw nothing unusual in that he had traveled and lived in Germany, Canada, the United States, Greece, France, Turkey, Portugal, Iran, Ghana, Angola, and South Africa. Just as the Warren Commission had done, Verwoerd's successor announced to the press that "This was the work of a lone killer."

Tsafendas was not executed as a murderer,<sup>7</sup> but was declared insane and safely tucked away in a mental institution for life or until such time as he was cured.

The establishment had solved the Verwoerd phenomenon.

<sup>7</sup> "Whoso killeth any person, the murderer shall be put to death." Num. 35:30



### Breaking Up The Nebraska Farm Rally

Midwestern farmers were desperate in 1985. A grassroots organization called a rally of farmers from all over the nation. I was asked to speak at this rally because of my familiarity with Virginia's Interposition.<sup>1</sup>

The Nebraska rally had the potential of frustrating the farm takeover then under way. To break up the rally the establishment pulled out all stops from the governor on down. The media led the attack and did an unsurpassed hatchet job on the farmers.

On landing in Omaha, I was greeted with newspaper headlines and TV announcements that the Kearney Farm Rally had been called off. With this news, many arriving on the same plane with me turned around and went home. After traveling 2000 miles, I figured I might as well drive four hours more to get to Kearney and see for myself.

Arriving in Kearney, I found the announcement was false. The meeting was on and the people of Kearney were looking forward to it. The press announcements had been made to break up the meeting. Kearney merchants were offering discounts to convention participants. A pressure group, B'nai B'rith, was on the radio and TV attacking the meeting and demanding that the Holiday Inn back out of their agreement to rent their large convention center to the farmers. The local press was hostile and quoted B'nai B'rith spokesmen every time an opportunity presented. Establishment preachers met to denounce the farmers.

The manager of the Holiday Inn where the farm meeting was scheduled refused to cancel, stating that nothing could be wrong with a group that had two senators and a preacher as speakers. But, orders came down from headquarters and they were forced to comply. The next day's meeting was transferred to an unheated steel

<sup>1</sup> Interposition is a legal defense by a sovereign state against the federal government when the federal government allows or promotes injustice. It was used by South Carolina in the 1830s when the federal government imposed unrestrained tariffs on her imports which almost took her merchants into bankruptcy, and has been used many times since. The latest attempt was by the state of Virginia against the federal takeover of state schools. It was frustrated when the media sponsored, backed, and elected governor proved to be not a conservative as the media claimed, but a liberal fake. He betrayed the state.

barn two miles out in the country. The weather was freezing. I saw no correction of the convention cancellation by the media but was told later that a few papers did carry the notice. All the while the farmers were being painted as "extremists."

The first night there was a news conference. Batteries of cameras taped the meeting. All the questions were provocative - leading questions. The farmers had invited the media so that they could present the farmers' case against foreclosure to the nation. The press didn't want to hear the farmers. They wanted someone to slip and say that they were going to resist, fight, blow up something, or anything that could be twisted into another smear.

They failed in this, but that didn't stop them. Their evening TV news spots showed only silent pictures of panel participants making statements. The speakers lips moved and the reporters used their own inflammatory words to describe what the speaker said.

At the farmers' convention the next day I was the first speaker. I lost my temper over the treatment the media was giving the farmers. I pointed at the television cameras and told the convention to vote AGAINST those the media were for and FOR those the media were against. This didn't get on the air either.

My recommendation to the speakers and others after the meeting was to have no dealings with the media. Their masters send them to deceive and destroy. Give interviews seldom, and then only to the reporters and networks who have a "proven" record of fair and objective reporting, and refuse all interviews that do not go out LIVE. Anything less is an open invitation to vilification and slander.

In my talk, I used Rhodesia as an illustration. The newspapers used this to say that the speaker from Virginia was against Blacks. That was the total extent of the media coverage of my talk. I don't think I mentioned Blacks. I wasn't talking about Blacks - I was talking about Interposition - one of the most important political and economic theories ever to surface in America. This is the power of the media. You get the picture.

Almost all the farmers at the meeting complained that lawyers won't take their cases. The farmers said that if the lawyers do take their cases the banks won't give the lawyers business. Many farmers have to present their own cases in court. When they say something wrong the case is thrown out. The judges are hostile. They said it's next to impossible to get a jury trial. It makes no difference what the law says - in the absence of a jury trial, the law is what the judge says



it is. Several said that there was only one lawyer in several surrounding states who would take a foreclosure case for a farmer. The total number of lawyers in the whole Midwest who would take farmer foreclosure cases could be numbered on the fingers of one hand.

The farmers lived in fear. Not only the fear of foreclosure and being left with no job or trade with which to earn a living, but the fear of being killed for protesting too loudly. I was told the story about a federal marshal who has won the name "death angel." On seven separate occasions he was at the scene when a farmer was killed.

I met some of the farmers who were on the TV Special "20-20" about America's farmers that stirred so much comment. They said that during the interviews the reporters were very friendly. But then they took a few sentences out of context and made them look like potential killers or fanatics. They said that they would never talk to reporters again.

There were no conservative newspaper or newsletter reporters present except me. This graphically points out the inadequacy of farmer communications. I have talked to writers of several periodicals since then who said they wanted to be there but didn't know about it.

None of the big name TV evangelists were present either, and only one preacher that I knew about.

There was evident a growing anger in these people at their unjust treatment by the media, by the courts, and by the politicians they regard as agents of the banks, and who have now come out against them.

The farmers have not had their day in court and no one has heard their complaints. Being forced to stand in a cold barn for six hours did nothing to soften resentments. America has had few political explosions before because the oppressed could always take their grievances before the nation. Now, because of their relatively few numbers, the nation's farmers are denied this outlet. Few avenues of protest remain open.

In Kearney, Nebraska, the American farmer tried to speak and was denied the opportunity.

As first speaker, and based on my experience with interposition in Virginia, I told the farmers that in my opinion what was needed was:

1) A moratorium on foreclosures.

2) Elect a friendly governor.

3) Interpose the authority of the state between the banks and the people.

● **Moratorium** - Farms are being taken over by the banks every day. Sixteen thousand were taken over during the next 90 days in Nebraska alone. Land values had dropped from \$2,000 an acre to \$600. Some had sold for as low as \$200. Farm machinery was selling for 5-10¢ on the dollar. Very little was bought locally. A moratorium needed to be invoked to stop the looting.

● **Elect a Governor** - Nebraskans needed a governor who was not an agent of the foreclosing banks. If they organized as they did in the 1890s and outworked the media, they might elect their own man. If they did there might be a glimmer of hope.

A friendly governor would be needed to interpose the authority of the state between its oppressed citizens and the oppressors. It has been done many times before.

● **Implementing Interposition** - In 1940, Lambert Schuyler wrote his famous *Think Fast America*. In it, he outlined a simple plan of converting debt into equity.

If a man bought ten acres on a certain date for \$1000 an acre, and \$4000 of the money was his own, he would own 40%. The remaining debt of \$6000, or 60%, would be converted into equity. This 60% would be owned by the lender.

Any payments of principal and interest made since the purchase date would apply against the lender's portion based on the original purchase price of \$1000 an acre. The original purchase price is the key to each transaction.



In this case, the bank would gain \$6000 - an amount equal to the "credit" they loaned in the first place.<sup>2</sup>

They would not get the interest amounting to an additional \$12,000. This would do the lender a service since usury is a capital crime<sup>3</sup> forbidden by the Christian religion. No real Christian would risk death at the hands of an almighty God or his priests for forbidden profit.

The conversion of credit into equity would preclude foreclosure where the farmer loses everything and would prevent other deplorable incidents.

Practically, at Kearney the farmers' organization plans and their political proposals were destroyed by the media before they could become operational.

### Suppressing 125 Georgia Farmers

In Georgia, farmers made frantic by the threatened loss of their farms offered armed resistance.

An illiterate black farmer, Oscar Lorick, fell behind on his payments. He owed \$112,000. In November 1985, the bank came and took all of his farm equipment. Then they came and gave him seven days to vacate his 79 acre farm.

On December 15th, 125 of his white neighbors, who also faced foreclosure, got their guns and set up a perimeter around Lorick's farm. They vowed to fight bank agents who were there to foreclose.

Sheriff Edward Coley came unarmed, looked over the situation and went away. When questioned, he said that he "didn't start the situation" and that it was "out of his hands."

The banking interests argued that the sheriff's action encouraged lawlessness across the nation.

The sheriff is the highest law enforcement officer in a county. The next step is the governor.

The "125" farmers all knew what happened to farmer Arthur Kirk in Nebraska when he protested his foreclosure. SWAT teams were

brought in to do the foreclosing. His Nebraska farmer friends had stood beside him all day. When they went home at night to tend to chores, the SWAT team went in under cover of darkness and killed Kirk while he was alone.

With this lesson, the Georgia farmers didn't leave when night came. One of the farmers who was there told me that he was afraid. He said that when he went to help Lorick he didn't know if he would leave in a box or not. He just knew that he had to go, and that he wasn't going to sleep at night while he was there.

Over the years, banks have had enacted statute laws that favor their foreclosing tactics. They rely on these statutes. When threats don't work, the establishment brings whatever force is needed against the selected victim. First the sheriff is brought in. If he fails, the governor allows the state police to enter the scene, or he allows a SWAT team to be sent in.

The governor can then, if he chooses, call the national guard and back them with tanks and planes. A powerful force like this can kill and scatter the protesting farmers in a short time.

Such escalation isn't wise. It alienates voters and makes martyrs. It also is like swatting a hornet's nest. The hornets scatter and return to sting everyone concerned, including bystanders. This includes consenting politicians at all levels, bank stockholders, establishment preachers, media, etc.

Then, there is always the problem that the force selected to suppress the uprising will refuse to fire on their own kinsmen. They may turn their weapons on those who will.

The Georgia farmers had raised questions much greater than the usury bank's foreclosing a single Black. The signs they displayed at the Lorick Farm demanded JUBILEE:

**"Ye shall hallow the fiftieth year ... it shall be a jubilee unto you; and ye shall return every man unto his possession ... "**  
Lev 25:9-13

**"In the year of the jubilee the field shall return unto him of whom it was bought, even to him to whom the possession of the land did belong." Lev 27:24**

This demand was held up on posters and signs and was carefully ignored by the media. The farmers demanded their right under

<sup>2</sup> A 100% profit is more than fair on the transaction where the "credit" was created as a bookkeeping entry and cost the bank nothing.

<sup>3</sup> (1)Ezek 18:13. (2) American usury banks maintain that interest free banks can't work. History reveals that they did work for almost half a millennium, and it is a fact that Arabs today operate interest free banks.



Christian Law. They also backed their claim to this right by another Law:

"At the end of every seven years thou shalt make a release ... Every creditor that lendeth aught unto his neighbor shall release it; he shall not exact it of his neighbor ... that which is thine with thy brother thine hand shall release." Deut 15:1-3<sup>4</sup>

The media coverage at the Lorick farm was selectively fantastic. The White farmers had chosen to protest the Black being foreclosed as a propaganda ploy. Most of the media didn't even mention that Lorick was a Black, but they did have to cover the incident and not ignore it as they had the Nebraska Farmers Rally because the word had gotten out that farmers were making a stand. Scores of cars drove by the first day blowing horns and shouting encouragement. The next day, hundreds, and then thousands. This thing had been turned into a circus. This may have saved the protesting farmers' lives. The media covers what everyone knows is going on anyway, and so there were TV cameras, radio and news paper reporters everywhere. It was front page news in Georgia newspapers. After that, even more crowds gathered, driving by cheering the farmers on. The threatening clouds of violence were pushed aside for the moment by the outpouring of the people.

### Selective Media Blackout

Outside of Georgia, it was different. At first, there was a total blackout. After several days, the national TV carried the story to the people in the big cities. City dwellers all over the nation knew about it. Farmers in the farming belts of America didn't.

Most farms receive TV by satellite. Satellite TV refused to carry the story. Georgia newspapers carried the story only after newspapers were swamped with calls from subscribers asking questions. Most towns located in farming areas in other parts of the nation mentioned the story only after the event was over and the protesting farmers had gone home.

4 When I was a boy, I was told by my grandfather that because of Bible Law even usury bankers seldom made loans for more than seven years.

The chances are that most readers of these lines who live outside the big cities are learning about the 1985 Georgia farmers' confrontation for the first time.

The Georgia incident was another example of selective media blackout. It was the establishment protecting itself with its media monopoly. The effort was made to keep the nation's farmers from being aroused against the usury interests while multi-billion dollar foreclosures were under way, and it succeeded once again.

Days passed. The authorities backed away, just keeping a few observers on hand. The crowds became bored and thinned. The Georgia papers started reporting other things than the farmers' standoff. The farmers had their own farms to take care of. The chickens still had to be fed and the cows milked even if the farmers were going to die for their rights the next day. Their numbers also gradually thinned. Then, cameramen were observed taking pictures of the remaining holdouts with telescopic lenses. Lawmen were observed busily going about with clipboards taking down license numbers of remaining cars and farm trucks. Still, die-hard holdouts would not leave.

Then, news arrived that a Black family from Florida had arrived to buy the Lorick farm. Lorick was to be paid \$75,000 for the farm, and it was to be leased to Lorick for \$1 a month for the rest of his life. At least that's what the papers said.

This was great! It gave the holdout farmers the excuse they needed to take their heads out of the lion's mouth. They cheered their victory and left. A couple of months later Lorick was thrown off the farm and it was foreclosed. The media had pictures of each of the 125 Georgia farmers, and their car license numbers in case they tried the same thing again.

The farmers had lost - but they were still alive. An Eisenhower or a Kennedy might have entered the scene and killed them all.

The lessons learned were simple. It is glorious to stand for the right and defy caesar, but the cold fact is that the establishment could have killed them all at any time they chose by bringing up whatever force was needed. Farmers with shotguns are not going to deprive the usury system of their billions and trillions because of some intangible historical or religious rights as long as the establishment has machine-guns, cannon, and tanks necessary to keep it.

Not only had farmers put their lives at risk, but if the establishment chose to bring charges through their courts, they might



have been made to forfeit their property and go to jail, leaving no one to feed their families. Putting all at risk with no chance for gain is a fool's game.

The lesson relearned by these men who themselves had signed usury agreements was that to believe the word of anyone participating in a usury contract is sheer lunacy. If that person does not fear God, he certainly cannot be counted upon to show mercy to man.

This is the most recent time a farm group performed this kind of public act of defiance. Across the country, individuals were thrown onto their own resources. Those who stood their ground in obedience to Bible command not to sell their land forever were shot down one by one. Don McGrath of Enarado, North Dakota was killed by sheriffs' deputies, John McMillen was killed at Winder, Georgia by a SWAT team, Arthur Kirk was killed in Nebraska by the Nebraska State Patrol, and others.

### **Taxes: The Gordon Kahl Ambush**

The world bankers always offer loans to governments. "*The borrower is slave.*" Governments are instructed to engage in bridge building, road building, defense, and war. This causes debt, and taxes grow higher and higher.

High taxes inevitably cause tax-foreclosure. People sell their possessions for almost nothing to rid themselves of the thing taxed. The family of a friend, Mr. Milner Noble, past president of Aerofin here in Lynchburg, sold 5,000 acres of prime tobacco land near Richmond in the 1930s for 50¢ an acre to avoid paying the taxes that were destroying them. They felt that by selling, they had gotten the better part of the bargain even if 50¢ an acre was all they received.

As taxpayers encounter difficulties in paying taxes, the lenders bring the force of police power to force taxpayers to pay their allocated part of the government debt (taxes). The taxpayer may protest, squirm, and even revolt, claiming that taxes are illegal and that their God has exempted them.<sup>5</sup> These last are called tax-protesters. Such revolts set examples that may be followed by others, and so must be suppressed.

<sup>5</sup> Matt 17:25-26, Neh 5:4

Tax-protesters always find some loophole in the statutes to keep from paying taxes. The courts, run by the creditors, always find that each tax-protester's loophole is illegal, and so rule. Then tax-protesters find another loophole, which is also declared illegal, and so on.

### **Gordon Kahl's Last Statement**

Gordon Kahl, a man of 63, was a much-decorated hero of World War II. He believed the income tax to be illegal both according to the Laws of God and by man's statute law. He believed that the income tax was used by the world revolutionary movement to destroy Christian Civilization. Believing this, he thought that to consent to this tribute was the worst kind of treason, treason to both God and God's people. He stopped paying taxes to secure a trial by jury to determine the justice of his case.

The event which triggered his ambush appears to have been his attempt to organize Christian townships where bankrupt farmers could live governed by God's Law. In effect - a nation within a nation. One governed by God, the other by the establishment. This was looked upon as treason and the enforcers were sent in. The following is his story which was published by the alternate media and which has never appeared in the establishment newspapers. It is purported to be Gordon Kahl's own statement of the events of the ambush by establishment enforcers where he was the target.

To be as careful as possible I contacted his son, Yorie, who is in a federal prison in Pennsylvania, and inquired about his opinion of the authenticity of the following statement. Yorie replied that his father always wrote in the sort of block letters as the letter copy that I have was written in, and that this letter sounded like his father's statement.

The following is the statement as I received it:

"I, Gordon Kahl, a Christian patriot, and in consideration of the events, which have taken place the last few hours, and knowing to what lengths the enemies of Christ (who I consider my enemies) will go to separate my spirit from its body, wish to put down on paper a record of the events which have just taken place, so that the world will know what happened.

"I feel that the awesome power which will be unleashed to silence forever my testimony, if not checked by the power of



my God, who is the God of Abraham, and Isaac and Jacob, will cut short my time to leave to the world these happenings. Therefore, I'm going to make this record and leave it in the hands of those who I know will bring it to light, even though I may in the meantime be extinguished.

"While urgency, or human weakness, tells me to run, my spirit says write, so this I am going to do and if my God continues to protect me, I shall write first, and flee from the hands of my enemies later.

"We had just finished our meeting in Median, concerning how we could best implement the proceedings of the 3rd Continental Congress, which was to restore the power and prestige of the U. S. Constitution up to and including the 10 articles of the Bill of Rights, and put our nation back under Christian Common Law, which is another way of saying God's Law, as laid down by the inspiration of God, through his prophets and preserved for us in the Scriptures, when word was received from someone, whose identity I am not able to give, that we were to be ambushed on our return to our homes.

"I realize now that we did not take this warning as seriously as we should have. The reason for this was because it has happened so many times before when nothing happened. I see now that the many false alarms were to cause us to lower our guard.

"As we pondered what to do, someone suggested that we take two cars instead of one. Consequently, I went with Dave Brower, and my son Yorie, Scotty Faul, my wife Joan, and Vernon Wagner, went in our station wagon. At this time none of us really expected any trouble, but just to be on the safe side, my son Yorie, myself, and Scotty prepared to defend ourselves in the event that an attack upon us should take place.

"As we came over one of the hills just north of Medina, I saw on the top of the next hill what looked like two cars parked on it. About this time they turned on their red lights, and I knew that the attack was under way.

"We were just coming to an approach and I told Dave to pull in on it and stop. Our other car pulled in just beyond us and stopped, also.

"I looked back in time to see another vehicle coming from behind with its red light on.

"I picked up my mini-14, and got out and got myself and my weapon ready as the vehicle coming from behind skidded to a stop about 20 feet away. The doors flew open on it and the two men who were in the front seat aimed their guns at us. My son Yorie had jumped out of the other car and had run over to a high-line pole. The two cars which we had seen ahead of us pulled up and stopped behind us.

"A man got out of the vehicle which had come from behind us, and ran out into the ditch on the east side of the road.

"During this time there was a lot of screaming and hollering going on but nothing else so it appeared to be an impasse.

"About this time a shot rang out, and the driver of the car who I believe at this time must have been supposedly in command turned around and stood up so he was looking at his man in the east ditch and toward the cars which had come from the north and yelled 'who fired? who fired?' The other man who was with him, echoed his question.

"At the time the shot rang out I heard Yorie cry out 'I'm hit, I'm hit.'

"I took my eyes off the men who were yelling 'Who fired?' and looked over at Yorie. He was still standing, but I could tell he was in pain from the way he stood.

"About this time, another shot rang out, and I heard Yorie cry out again. I looked over and saw that he was hit again and lying on the ground.

"I looked back toward the two men and saw the one in the passenger side aim at me and I was sure then that they felt the situation was no longer under their control, and the only thing to do was kill us all.



"Before he was able to fire, I loosed a round at the door behind which he was standing, and while I don't think I hit him, it caused him to duck down behind the door.

"I looked around again toward Yorie, and saw Scotty Faul running over toward him. I turned my head again in time to see the driver of the vehicle which had followed us raise up from behind his door and aim his gun at Scotty. I moved my gun over and fired at him before he could shoot. I didn't hit him either, the bullet striking somewhere near the lower left-hand corner of the windshield. He ducked down behind the dash so I could only see his head. About this time the other man raised up and aimed at me again. I shot again striking the door and causing him to duck. This happened several times, with the two men alternating, and my shots causing them to duck each time before they could aim and fire. I don't know how many times I fired until the man on the passenger side fell, and I was able to tell he was out of the fight. The driver must have seen this as he moved his gun from Scotty's direction toward me.

"I fired several more shots at him each time he raised up to shoot at me. I finally realized this could keep up 'til my 30-round clip was empty. My bullets appeared to be ricocheting off the windshield and door post. I ran around toward the side of the vehicle, firing at the door as I went to keep him down until I got around far enough to get a clear shot at him, at which time I knew he was out of the the fight also.

"I ran back where I could see the third man from this north-bound vehicle just in time to see him raise up to shoot at Scotty, who had run over to Yorie. Before he was able to pull the trigger I fired and he fell to the ground. At this I saw the man who was behind the front end of the green Mercury, raise up and aim at Scotty. He saw me swing my gun in his direction, and he ducked down behind his car. I could see his feet or legs beneath the car, and I fired, striking him and putting him out of the fight.

"I ran over to the man in the east ditch, thinking he might still be in fighting condition. When I got nearly to him, he raised up his head and said, 'Don't shoot me again, I'm all done.' He

had his hand on his shot-gun so I took that and his pistol which was in his holster and threw them in the back seat of the green Mercury. I didn't see the man who had been behind the Mercury, and who I thought I'd hit in the leg, so I don't know where he'd gone to.

"A pick-up had pulled up behind the north-bound vehicle, but I didn't notice anyone in it or around it and I assumed it was the pick-up we saw on the top of the first hill as we came out of Medina, and which I believe belonged to the city, but as to who was driving it, I have no knowledge.

"Scotty tells me he saw one and possibly two men run out into the trees and hide, but I have no way of knowing who they were.

"I think from the reports I've heard on the radio which was in the Mercury, that the car which came from behind, was the one the Marshals were in. If this is so, they weren't the ones who fired the first shots. The two men who were in the front seat were both looking in the direction of the green Mercury when they were shouting, 'Who fired?'

"Yorie's .45-auto, which he had in his shoulder holster had either a rifle or pistol bullet embedded in the clip, shattering the grips on both sides. Had he not been wearing it, he would have been killed instantly.

"Whether this was the first or second shot that was fired at him, I don't know. One was buckshot and the other was either a rifle or a high-powered pistol, from the way the bullet looks.

"I didn't see it, but it sounded as though Yorie's gun fired after he was hit. I think probably his finger tightened on the trigger when he was hit, but I know neither he nor Scotty fired before this, and whether either of them fired afterwards, I don't know. I know that if they did, they didn't hit anyone, as I knew when I hit each one of them, myself.

"I saw a man in the clinic, when we took Yorie in, who I think must have been the man in the pickup who pulled up behind what I think was the Marshal's vehicle. He had blood on his face, and I think he was probably hit by either a bullet or bullets which glanced off the marshal's vehicle when I was firing at



them. I didn't see him, and I know I didn't shoot at him, and I know neither Yorie nor Scotty shot at him.

"Vernon Wagner was unarmed so I know he didn't shoot at anyone and Dave Brower didn't shoot at anyone either. My wife had nothing to do with it, other than the fact that she had ridden along with us so she could visit with a couple of other ladies who were coming to the meeting.

"I want the world to know that I take no pleasure in the death or injury of any of these people any more than I felt when I was forced to bring to end the fighter pilot's life who forced the issue during World War II. When you come under attack by anyone, it becomes a matter of survival. I was forced to kill an American P-51 pilot one day over Burma, when he mistook us for Japs. I let him shoot first, but he missed and I didn't. I felt bad, but I knew I had no choice.

"I would have liked nothing other than to be left alone, so I could enjoy life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness, which our forefathers willed to us.

"This was not to be after I discovered that our nation had fallen into the hands of an alien people, who are referred to as a nation with the other nations. As one of our founding fathers stated, 'They are vampires, and vampires cannot live on vampires, they must live on Christians.' ...

"They have two objectives in their goal of ruling the world. Destroy Christianity and the White race. Neither can be accomplished by itself. They stand or fall together.

"We are engaged in a struggle to the death between the people of the Kingdom of God and the kingdom of Satan. It started long ago and is now best described as a struggle between Jacob and Esau.

"I would like to write more but the Spirit says this must suffice for now. Should the hand of Elijah's God continue to be over me and protect me, I shall someday see this once-great nation swept clean of Christ's enemies and restored to its former greatness. If it should be the will of *our* Father and the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, that this be, there will be no way that Ahab's god and his people can stand before us. Mystery

Babylon with all its greatness will be destroyed. Take heart, my fellow Christian Americans, God has said that there will be a great shaking in the land of Israel. That started this evening. Let each of you who says that the Lord Jesus Christ is your personal Savior sell his garment and buy a sword, if you don't already have one, and bring His enemies before Him and slay them.

"If you've been paying tithes to the synagogue of Satan under the 2nd plank of the Communist Manifesto to finance your own destruction, stop right now and tell Satan's tithing collectors, as I did many years ago, 'Never again will I give aid and comfort to the enemies of Christ.' To those of you who were engaged in the ambush and attack on us and were spared, thank God you have a chance to remove your support from the anti- Christs who rule our nation.

"To those of you who are or have been supporting the edicts and commands of the great whore - stop now and come out of her, as her time is getting short, and when the hour of her judgment comes, that you be not judged with her.

"I must cease now and move on. If it should be the Will of the Father that I have more to do for Him, He will protect me, and no device whatever that is used against me shall succeed.

"To my wife, Joan, who has been with me for so long, I know this will be a hard and painful experience. However, remember that prophecy will be fulfilled, and you have now been a witness to some of it. Remember that I love you as much today as I did when I first saw you more than 50 years ago. Put your trust in God, and whether I live or die, He will be with you to the end of your days.

"To my son, Yorie and my dear friend Scotty - you both displayed the qualities of first-rate soldiers of Jesus Christ. May God bless all of you.

"I must now depart - I have no idea where I'm going, but after some more prayer, I will go where the Lord leads me and either live to carry on the fight or die, if that be the case, and for the present at least, I bid you all good-bye."



### Kahl's Death

The story goes that an informer revealed that Kahl was staying with a friend in Arkansas. His retreat was then assaulted and Kahl was killed. His body was then burned.

Reports then began to circulate that his hands and feet were found separated from his body. This gave rise to talk of ritual murder, and many began to question the events of Kahl's killing. The official story is that Kahl and the sheriff killed each other in a shoot-out. But, news reports say that the sheriff was killed by shots from the rear. No satisfactory explanation has been made about how a face-to-face shoot-out can occur with both of the parties having being shot from behind.

Attempts to convene a grand jury to investigate the dismemberment, the burning of the body, the shots from the rear, and the numerous other discrepancies in the official stories thus far have been stonewalled by the authorities. The attempts to get them to convene a grand jury still continue.

Later, in reading the transcripts of the Fort Smith Sedition Trials, I discovered that Gordon Kahl had not been quietly hiding out in a secluded room somewhere in Arkansas as I had been led to believe, but had traveled about meeting with tax-protesters in different parts of the country.

A preacher was at one of those meetings. His later testimony before a federal grand jury is stated to have been a major cause of the Fort Smith Sedition Trials. This minister stated under questioning that he was at a meeting during this period where Kahl was also present. He said that he was most uncomfortable that Gordon Kahl was there. He was a star government witness on any number of matters.

Gordon Kahl's attempt to attack the establishment's tax system peacefully through petition, the courts and jury system failed. What rankles is the knowledge within the tax movement that the income tax amendment (16th amendment) to the Constitution was never

ratified,<sup>6</sup> and combined with this is the basic knowledge that governments don't need tax revenues to operate governments. There are other, better, time-proven methods.<sup>7</sup>

The knowledge is general within the tax-movement that the great existing national, state, and municipal debts have been purposely built up to cause high taxes and resulting tax foreclosure. Most important, only a superficial observer can ignore the explosive potential of tens of millions of citizens who are forced to pay taxes against their will. Many feel that since the tax is illegal it is just a question of getting their case to the proper tax court.

Lastly, and most important to the authorities, are those who believe that paying taxes in a Christian nation is a violation of the Law pronounced by Jesus.

*"Of whom do the kings of the earth take custom or tribute? of their own children, or of strangers? Peter saith unto him, Of strangers ... Then are the children free." Matt 17:25- 26.*

To force those who believe their purpose in life is to do "God's will," and that God's will precludes his "kings and priests" paying taxes, puts the establishment, in the eyes of many, in the position of fighting God. This insistence on forcing taxes on a free people is perceived by them to be blasphemy.

It does not help the authorities' case when tax moneys aid rapists and murderers, finance senseless establishment wars against God's own people, and kill tens of millions through abortion. Among Law-minded Christians, these matters are not matters open for discussion. They have been relegated to the status of dogma.

The repercussions of IRS oppressions can be great. At the very least, the people who believe they are doing God's will won't scare, and as events have shown, if shot at, they will shoot back.

Gordon Kahl's death has resulted in his becoming a folk hero to hundreds of thousands of Americans. To them, the income tax is illegal and un-Lawful. To them, it is illegal and un-Lawful to persecute people who do not pay that which is illegal and un- Lawful.

<sup>6</sup> The Law That Never Was, Vol. 1, Constitutional Research Assoc., Bill Benson & M. J. Beckman, South Holland, Illinois 1985.

<sup>7</sup> War Cycles / Peace Cycles, see "Tallies," p. 37, 38, 48, 229.



To them, Gordon Kahl spoke for all when he refused to pay and when he defended his life.

It is logical to assume that as the nation's debt mounts and tax-foreclosures become more frequent, there will be more and more like Gordon Kahl who will oppose taxation, and not only will they not stand to be shot at, but will do that which they consider necessary to stop the tax which they consider unlawful and a prime cause of America's troubles.

Tax protesters hope that the income and the inheritance taxes will be abolished peacefully. It will be interesting if they are. Studies are difficult to find where governments have freely relinquished these taxes before. The consequence appears to be that the tax protest movement will be destroyed, or the government imposing taxes will have difficulties from the taxed in the days ahead.

### The Kennedy Incident

The American public is very much aware of the failures of the conservative cause when they occur. The media makes sure that all know. It breaks the spirit of resistance. The thing they do not want known are the times the establishment has failed to protect its own. They are many.

Kennedy was chosen by the establishment's media as president.

As president he betrayed the anti-Communist Cuban invasion by withholding promised American air support. The Cuban patriots died like flies - except for the few who spent a lifetime in Castro's prisons. He began the Vietnam War by sending troops there.

The scriptures said, *"Come out from among them and be ye separate,"* but Kennedy forced the races together on the home front creating chaos in the classrooms, race discord, plunging morals, and a wild left turn to American politics.

But, the straw that triggered his death is not supposed to have been any of these things. A story the author finds most believable is the one stemming from a visit to the White House by a "good 'ole boy" from Texas. This visitor was a big contributor to Kennedy's election. He really thought that John F. Kennedy walked on water. By presidential invitation, he dropped by the White House one afternoon. He was escorted to the pool where liquor was flowing and a cloud of naked beauties crowded around to welcome him. An

equally exposed president, glass in hand, smilingly came to shake his hand and invite him to shed his clothes and join the frolic.

The good ole boy was a simple sort, he was not amused by what he could see were the antics of a hard drinking whoremonger. The scales instantly dropped from his eyes. He didn't go in for these kinds of shenanigans, and really didn't think that others should either. He abruptly took his leave.

Brooding over the disgrace he had helped bring on America by the man he had helped elect, he vowed to right the wrong.

When President John Kennedy came to visit Dallas on November 22, 1963, he was welcomed by the good ole boy and his friends. The media couldn't blame the president's own lawless acts for his assassination, they had painted him to be a white knight. When no one stepped forward to claim the credit, they said the communists killed him.

*"I give unto him ... the covenant of an everlasting priesthood."*  
No. 25:12-13.

### Interracial Couples

In casually reading the paper one evening, I noted a squib in the back pages that a trial was being held in Tennessee for a man accused of shooting an interracial couple.<sup>8</sup>

The article went on to say that he was possibly guilty of having shot others. I located the district attorney who prosecuted the case and he laughingly told me "The man made a religious defense." I asked him if he knew of any scriptures forbidding racial intermarriage. He didn't. Then he innocently commented that he was married to a stranger and saw nothing wrong with it. He promised to send me that part of the trial where the accused made his "religious defense." After being reminded four times of his promise, he sent

8 (1) "Then stood up Phineas, and executed judgment: and so the plague was stayed." Ps 106:30. (2) "One of the children of Israel came and brought ... a Midianitish woman ... and when Phineas ... saw it, he rose up from among the congregation and took a javelin in his hand; ... and thrust both of them through ... And the Lord spake ... saying, Phineas ... hath turned my wrath away from the children of Israel." Num. 25:6-13



me that portion of the accused testimony where the accused clearly stated that he thought that interracial marriage was against God's Law. Of course, that particular court ignored this defense.

Later, I was told that the man is believed to have shot perhaps a score, and perhaps many scores of interracial couples. Such statements are difficult to confirm because these executions of mixed race couples are generally believed to be taking place all the time in all parts of the country, but are censored out of the media so as not to discourage the activity.<sup>9</sup>

When later talking to this man by phone I found him to be a Bible student presently taking Bible courses by mail. He has a wife and a seven year old daughter that he has seen once. He is sorry that he can't see his family, and wishes that they had the money to visit him, but is content that he has done what God put him on earth to do and has no remorse or regrets.

He is believed by some to be only one of a large number doing their thing across the country.

<sup>9</sup> Phineas-type executions are said to have become so numerous a few years ago that the establishment stopped reporting the race of such victims. Now it is just reported that a couple have been killed. The fact that it was an interracial couple is not revealed.

### North Carolina

North Carolina is one of the few Southern States that did not completely get rid of its carpetbaggers at the end of the War Between The States. Carpetbaggers came in, established banks, seized land, wealth, and political power, and have retained control in many areas ever since.

This money interest was hostile to the interests of the Whites who were their victims. To remain in power they formed a political alliance with Blacks against the Whites. For many years, the North Carolina ruling establishment has favored Black interests over those of Whites as a way of discharging political obligations.

Many times, deprived of police protection, the Whites of North Carolina have been forced to provide their own neighborhood protection. As a result, North Carolina has long been rife with neighborhood militia, or watch organizations, going under all sorts of names - but almost always referred to by the media as Klans. Their job: to protect their women and themselves and punish their assailants. These groups have been under close establishment surveillance and harassment for years, since with inspired leadership working with a hundred years of grievances, any one of them has the potential to develop into a viable political foe.

### The Carolina Seven

The media was recently full of announcements of services being held to commemorate the deaths of communists killed by Klansmen in North Carolina.

In 1979, the communists in Raleigh issued a challenge to the local Klan to show themselves at their rally. One member of the local Klan insisted that not to show would be to prove cowardice. This individual volunteered to lead the way. He led a cavalcade of Klansmen's cars into the middle of the large communist rally where he stopped his car to block further progress and removed the key.

The communists opened fire. The Klansmen were unarmed having placed all their firearms in the trunk of the last vehicle. Fleeing to the last car through a hail of bullets, they retrieved their weapons and returned to the fray and killed five of their attackers.

For this show of impertinence, they were tried time and again, and each time they were found innocent. At last, they were charged



along with the city, the state, the police, and the FBI and found guilty with the rest. The establishment, unable to win in the streets with their communist surrogates, fell back on their unlimited supply of money and, with the legal system at their disposal, harassed the defendants. The time spent in prison awaiting trial and their last cent spent in attorneys' fees, reduced the survivors to ruin even when they had successfully defended themselves against attack in the streets. At the trial, it was revealed that the Klansman who favored a Klan show of force and who led the cavalcade into the ambush was in the pay of the FBI.

### The White Patriots Of North Carolina

At the time of Massive Resistance to the federal takeover of public schools, the *Defenders Of State Sovereignty And Individual Liberties* in Virginia strove hard to impose state interposition. A similar organization called the *Patriots Of North Carolina* did the same. Both organizations faded away with the defeat of their states, but both left good memories associated with the names.

In North Carolina, one Klan group took the *Patriots* name, added "White" to it, and automatically received much of the reputation associated with it. Almost overnight it became a phenomenon. It wasn't what it did, it was what it almost did.

Many in North Carolina thought that it was only a question of time before communists took power in Washington and came looking for all who were anti-communist. To cater to these people, the new *White Patriots* provided a group of like-minded to associate with, a militia to join, and rifle ranges for rifle practice. The plan was to form a traditional militia capable of taking to the hills and waging guerrilla warfare in the event of communist takeover. The group brought their wives or girl friends, and children, met, talked, ate, and practiced target shooting in the age-old manner of citizen militias.

To cater to those others who protested the many anti-White political programs of left-wing North Carolina politicians and educators, they organized political action groups to back conservative candidates. They also ran candidates of their own and produced a fine little newspaper that contained lots of pictures and hard-to-get information. Their ruggedly handsome leader was a former green beret Vietnam veteran named Glen Miller.

Their rallies were of the old style. Hundreds of men would show up dressed in green fatigues for uniforms, carrying scores, even hundreds, of Confederate battle flags. They would parade through North Carolina towns just as their grandfathers had done during Reconstruction. Thousands gathered to watch them and later stayed to hear the speeches. It was really a thrilling sight. Somebody was doing something when no one else appeared to be doing anything.

The *White Patriots* appeared to offer the discontented voters an alternative. They offered protection by a traditional militia, uniforms for glamour, patriotism, flags, parades - and membership boomed!

A radical civil rights group, the *Southern Poverty Law Center*, accused the leadership of the *White Patriots* of threatening them. The leadership was hauled into court, and after a year of civil litigation, signed a "consent decree" to gain their release. They had to agree not to march in predominately Black areas, a forced agreement that would have violated anyone else's "civil rights," and also agreed not to violate the newly passed para-military, or anti-militia state laws. Miller said that the court order was unconstitutional.

Another of the leaders bought M14 clips for the *Patriots'* militia. They were ordinary clips of the sort on sale at any sports store, but the price was better. He was immediately arrested for buying stolen government property.

Orders then went out for the arrest of the organization's officers. Glen Miller fled after issuing a proclamation to the newspapers calling on the *White Patriots* membership to rise up and kill communists, Jews, and Blacks.

The *White Patriots* was organized as a citizens' political defense militia group. They had not been attacked by armed groups. It was organized to engage in politics and fight communists if there were a communist takeover, or, if there were a Black/White race war. Not a single member of Miller's organization obeyed his proclamation. Miller was caught effortlessly by the FBI after fleeing to another state in company with two loyal *White Patriot* members.



FBI trial transcripts reveal that Miller immediately caved-in. In exchange for testimony against others in the Fort Smith Sedition Trials and implicating others, he received amnesty and witness protection.<sup>1</sup> He testified against the two loyal followers who were with him and they were jailed for 40 years for carrying firearms over state lines while Miller, the leader, went free.

Miller showed up again as a star government witness in the Fort Smith Sedition Trials where his reputation was further demolished by the disclosure that he was a drunkard and had been married to a stranger.

Many states used the North Carolina *White Patriot* case as an excuse to pass laws against traditional American citizens' militias.<sup>2</sup>

At the time of its banning, the *White Patriots* were well on the way to becoming a viable political force in North Carolina. It certainly was the most colorful and the most dynamic. The destruction of this organization destroyed the organized conservative political protest against the establishment in that state. It was neatly done.

Steve Miller, chaplain of the *White Patriots* (no kin to Glen Miller) was caught in the net with the rest. I wrote and asked him to comment on the situation as seen by him. This was his reply contained in a letter dated March 21, 1990:

"The feds have a technique for destroying patriotic organizations. They do it about every 10 years. They allow one to get rolling for 3 or 4 years, then they tie you up in court for two years or so and then you go to prison for five to 20 years or so - or longer.

"There are people in here from the '60s and '70s that no one remembers who stood up for the truth.

In a further letter dated April 29, 1990, he elaborated:

"Members of the WPP told me of an individual who had 'stuff.' I told them not to make any advances ... but they did

1 This is standard establishment procedure. The one caught is promised harsh punishment for non-cooperation, or amnesty and rewards if he will help convict his friends. Weak men make dangerous crusaders.

2 The establishment winks at existing heavily armed Black, Hispanic, and Zionist paramilitary groups. It is the White militias that are suppressed. This is a repeat of what happened 120 years ago.

anyway and it was a set-up. To save themselves they had to put it all on me. ...

"Depending on leadership and funds, you can figure on 2 to 4 years before a group is large enough and organized enough to become a threat to the state. The group will consist of about 85% good working-class people, 10% white-collar, and 5% police informants, and adversarial infiltrators.

"This 5% will create some kind of legal trouble, which if the leaders don't immediately isolate and distance themselves, they will be held responsible ...

"Within the Justice Department there is a group known as the Civil Rights Division. Their mission is to destroy any pro-American assembly. They have various agencies working and watching night and day to entrap any White patriot on anything. All it takes is a few beers, a little loose conversation, heroic talk, storytelling, or plain bull, and you can be looking at life imprisonment. Once trapped, the victim is given the choice of prison or to fully cooperate and help frame the leadership of the organization. When you have a wife and family it takes an exceptional patriot not to bend or break under the fear of prison, the cell block full of Blacks, and the stench of the isolation cell - 'the hole.'

"Essential prerequisites for a White leader include a knowledge of state and federal law, civil and criminal court rules and procedure, Bible Law, constitutional law, habeas corpus, current law tests by other patriot groups, and knowing the difference between the 14th Amendment federal citizen and the "free White" American citizen of the Union. If he doesn't take time to learn law, when he or any of the membership is taken to court - chances are good he will go to prison.<sup>3</sup>

3 Only a Christian lawyer should be expected to have this kind of technical knowledge. Practically, the legal practitioner conforms to establishment guidelines, or he is relegated to the outer reaches of nowhere. With an over-supply of lawyers in the nation, midwest farmers wishing to take bankruptcy find it almost impossible to find a lawyer who will oppose the banks. The legal system of the West was designed to prevent the resort to force. The denial of this opportunity almost certainly guarantees confrontation.



"If someone is deemed a viable threat to the 'system,' millions of dollars will be spent to see that any slight mistake made by a White leader will be his last. Win or lose, the financial cost will usually cripple the organization.

"The 90's start another decade. A new corps of leaders will feel called. Opposing them is the culture destroyer, liars with unlimited amounts of money, and for all practical purposes, unlimited power. Those who do not learn from the pitfalls of the past will fall into the same pitfalls in the future. *"My people are destroyed for the lack of knowledge."* Hos 4:6. But, on the other hand: *"The saints of the most high shall take the kingdom."* Daniel 5:18 I hope these comments are helpful. For YHWH & America, Stephen S. Miller, former Chaplain, White Patriot Party."

### Homosexuals

In June 1989, a jury in North Carolina found Doug Sheets "not guilty" of entering a porno parlor, shooting a roomful of homosexuals, and burning the building on top of them. After his acquittal, charges were dropped against Robert E. Jackson, another who was accused of participating in the same incident.<sup>4</sup>

Christians have strong feelings about homosexuality since their God has proclaimed it to be a capital crime.<sup>5</sup> It is said that the jury did not believe the government witnesses. Some say that since the Law brands homosexuality a capital crime, and since those put to death were believed to be homosexuals, and since the Law requires the death penalty, there was no crime. If a jury felt that there was no crime there would be no use in wasting everyone's time since there could be no conviction.

4 The one who accused them was Glen Miller, the ex-leader of the White Patriots of North Carolina, who, as often happened in the 1870s, "fully cooperated with federal authorities."

5 "If a man lie with mankind, as he lieth with a woman, both of them have committed an abomination: they shall surely be put to death." Lev 20:13

### The Order

In Denver there was a radio announcer, one Alan Berg. He was an enigma. He made \$27,000 in Denver when he could have made twice that in Chicago. On a moderate salary he owned scores of suits, shirts, sport coats, and hundreds of pairs of shoes.<sup>6</sup> He regularly drove an old beat up VW to and from work where he was seen, while in his garage was a Bricklin and a DeLorean.

This disc jockey was not an ordinary disc-jockey. Back in Chicago where he had lived before coming to Denver he had been a lawyer. He boasted of having been a lawyer for the mafia.<sup>7</sup>

Berg was Jewish. He made a point of being Jewish. He disliked anyone who was Jewish and did not hold that fact up with pride:

"Berg had observed his father, while practicing dentistry in Beverly Hills, trying to pass himself off as a gentile ... then he would come home and rail at the non-Jewish world."<sup>8</sup>

His father-in-law, an active Zionist, was chairman of the Democratic Party in Colorado.<sup>9</sup>

Berg's biographers picture him as one who was secretly greatly beloved. This seems far-fetched. When he introduced a new coach of the Denver Broncos most of the crowd of 15,000 stood up and booed.<sup>10</sup> He was married and divorced, lived both with a White woman, and with a Black woman. His radio program was a monologue;

"... on the joys and danger of oral sex ... merciless diatribes on the flaws of the Christian religion, ... and how white women fantasized about sleeping with black men."<sup>11</sup>

He was an artist in what he did. He was a whip to antagonize. When people didn't call his show with questions he had his wife call with leading questions to give him an excuse to further rub salt into

6 Talked To Death, Stephen Singular, Beech Tree Books, William Morrow, NY 1987, p. 86

7 Ibid. p. 28

8 Ibid. p. 43

9 Ibid. p. 60

10 Ibid. p. 148

11 Ibid. p. 15



the open sores of Denver's racial problems. Cautious of his own safety, he was a fierce supporter of controlling firearms. The local station once fired him. When asked why they fired him, they said, "He was a pain in the ass. He wouldn't conform. He wouldn't knock off the anti-Christ stuff or the sex talk."<sup>12</sup> They had to hire him back. Station managers work for the establishment, too.

While the media were predictably harsh, opinionated and overbearing, there was another public official in Denver, of the same ethnic background, who was as conservative as Berg was radical. Berg irritated, demeaned, and blasphemed. His opposite number soothed, protected, and understood. He was as pro- tradition and patriotic as Berg was radical. He was married to a pretty blond, and because of Berg, became the rallying point and spokesman for disgruntled Denver conservatives. Berg set the fires and cracked the whip, and the game ran to the protection and understanding of Denver's conservative member. It was perfectly done. The right and the left had been pre-empted.

Most readers know the analogy of the white/red blood cells. The white blood cells direct their efforts to supporting the conservative member who is supposed to organize a defense. If the white cells are misdirected and confused, the red blood cells, ever dependent on the white cells for guidance, stay completely mixed-up. Consequently, most emerging conservative political movements go in circles and fail. With control of both carrot and stick, the establishment always seems to know everything about every conservative cause and individual and what is needed to neutralize it.

Berg was a very important establishment figure - a very talented person doing a good job. A lawyer turned disc jockey, the owner of fancy cars, closets of clothes, well-connected, flaunting an alien lifestyle, and doing and saying everything possible to keep things stirred up.

One evening he stepped from the beat up VW he liked to drive to and from work into a hail of gunfire,<sup>13</sup> and Denver's long operating carrot-stick game fell apart. This is where the story really starts.

<sup>12</sup> *Ibid.* p. 138

<sup>13</sup> One story making the rounds was that Berg was tried and convicted in absentia of being a false witness. See Index, "false witness," also "Law: false witness."

Berg's killing started the largest investigation in the history of the Denver police department. Not one or two detectives, but sixty officers were assigned to the case. A new computer program was set up to hold the evidence. "The Secret Service was involved, the IRS, the FBI, and law enforcement agencies in 60 cities and 18 states."<sup>14</sup> All this for a filthy mouthed disc jockey? Hardly. Someone had shut the establishment's mouth in Denver and destroyed their carrot and stick game.

### Mathews Burned Alive

In backwater Lynchburg, we read about the Berg killing that had taken place half a continent away in Denver, and saw the media outpourings of sympathy and concern. It didn't register. With all the killings taking place every day on the streets of America, what was one more, and this one in far away Denver. It did seem a little strange that so much attention was given to one disc jockey.

Later, much later, an announcement was made that a Robert Jay Mathews was killed in a shoot-out with 100 FBI agents on Whidbey Island. Debby, his wife, learned of the siege and contacted the FBI to gain permission to speak to her husband. The FBI denied her request.<sup>15</sup>

Gradually, details of the Mathews killing began to come out. A helicopter dropped a fire-bomb. He was burned to death. Strange. Gordon Kahl was too. More news - he had headed an organization called "*The Order*," and they had been rounded up. Organization? *The Order*? There had been nothing about that in the media.

A trial was held for members of this unknown organization and still more information came out. The government somehow connected this organization with Berg. They even devoted a week of the trial to Alan Berg's slaying although the defendants weren't on trial for his murder. In fact, the prosecution made the disc-jockey's death the focal point of their case. The *60 Minutes* TV documentary

<sup>14</sup> *Ibid.* 36.

<sup>15</sup> This same thing happened when the farmer, Arthur Kirk, was killed. Dee Kirk learned that a SWAT team had gone to their farm to get her husband and she tried to talk to him, but the SWAT team would not put her through. She told me that she knew then that they had marked him to die.



on Berg was shown to the jury. Ten defendants were found guilty of racketeering and conspiring to racketeer under the new RICO law.

Who was Bob Mathews who had died in flames and a hail of bullets?

"Bob died like a Viking. The county sheriff stated in an interview with the Seattle paper, 'He was running from window to window blazing away at us with an M-16 in each arm as the flames burned around him.' Without doubt, Bob was the bravest man I have ever known!"<sup>16</sup>

His picture shows a handsome young married man of about 31, his equally handsome son, and his dog. He was known as a hard and conscientious worker. His neighbors without exception said that he was polite, nice, personable, and always willing to help. None could imagine him doing anything illegal. The Reverend Richard Butler told the *San Francisco Examiner*;

"He was a man of the highest idealism and moral character. He exhibited a willingness and courage to die for his beliefs ...it shows there are still some patriotic young men left in the country."<sup>17</sup>

What had he done?

Testimony in the trial transcripts state that nine men gathered at Bob Mathews' farm in September 1983. Four were Odinists and five were Christians who identified with the Law of Christ. All were intensely patriotic about the welfare of their own people. Their names were:

1 -	Bob Mathews	Odinist
2 -	Bruce Carroll Pierce	Christian <sup>18</sup>
3 -	Denver D. Paramenter	Christian
4 -	Bill Soderquist	Odinist
5 -	Richard Kemp	Odinist
6 -	Ken Loff	Christian
7 -	David Lane	Odinist

<sup>16</sup> Manuscript notes by Bruce Pierce, one of THE ORDER leaders.

<sup>17</sup> *Ibid.* 262

<sup>18</sup> "Kemp was an Odinist at that time. Loff was a neophyte Christian identifying with God's Laws. Numbers 3, 4, 6, 8 all cooperated and testified for the government in exchange for reduced sentences." (Pierce's manuscript notes.)

8 -	Dan Baur	Christian
9 -	Randy Duey	Christian

The Christians in the group agreed that as kings and priests they would join together to fight to bring in God's kingdom. "*Thy kingdom come, on earth as it is in heaven.*" The Odinists because they were fearful for their land. They all swore to fight to the death for their people. The men joined hands and formed a ring, and a baby was placed in its center. Each man swore, one at a time to give his life if need be, to see that the baby, and others like him, lived.

Thus was born *The Order*, a group intended as a national underground organization to spearhead the fight against the establishment domination of America, and to secure a place for White people to live alone, free from domination, as other peoples do.

### Role Model

One group has gained almost all its objectives by guerrilla-type revolutionary means. Its amazing success has caused the Arabs, and groups such as *The Order*, to copy its techniques to further their own special objectives. This has been a learning experience similar to that in which American frontiersmen learned the Indian's form of warfare to fight Indians, and the South African Boers the warfare of their Zulu opponents. Whatever is successful is what people will copy.

**1848** - Europe of 1848 contained land, tax, and government monopolies. Monopolies are illegal under Christian Law. The church did nothing to end them because it had been bought by the monopolies. The legitimate cause was pre-empted by outsiders which enabled them to secretly advance their own monopoly - communism.

Beguiled Christians followed outsider leaders to the barricades in the attempt to destroy monopolies, and there they met and battled the government forces sent by the monopolies. It was only in the midst of battle that the beguiled Christian revolutionists read the Communist Manifesto. By then it was too late. It is hard to "about-face" in a hail of bullets.

Uncorrected violations of God's Law are often pre-empted by outsiders who then twist the causes to suit their own needs. This



gives them a cause célèbre<sup>19</sup> that protects the stranger from attack by those Christians who may detect a presence they consider evil.

The 1848 revolutions soaked Europe in blood through bombs, assassinations, mutinies, and arson. They came close to taking over Europe. The pre-empting and capture of legitimate causes by outsiders gives them a righteous flag to wave, an instant cadre of volunteer workers for a power base, and in time, a mob for them to lead even against the bastions of heaven.

1907 - Poland: The Poles were ruled by Russia and naturally hated Russians. The Jews were ruled by both the Poles and the Russians. The Jews made common cause with their ancient enemies, the Poles, against the Russians, the common enemy. The National Geographic Magazine, of May 1907, p. 310, in an article entitled "The Revolution in Russia," related the result of this alliance:

"The week I spent in Warsaw twenty-two policemen were killed on their beats, and not one of the assassins was detected ... One of the Petersburg papers ... enumerated the assassinations ... (and) declares that 7,300 persons were killed and more than 9,000 were wounded by bombs ... Among the killed were 123 governors, generals, chiefs of police, and other high officials. ... Twelve railway trains containing government treasure were held up ... 400 government liquor stores were robbed and destroyed, and \$630,000 of government funds was stolen by burglars and highwaymen ...

"You can find all kinds of newspapers, including the most radical organs of the socialists, upon the files in the reading-rooms of the hotels ... Boys on the street are selling photographs of 'Martyrs of Liberty' - Polish Jews who have

19 Most charities and groups organized against unlawful abuses contain abnormally large numbers of outsiders. This is how they gain their power base. As leaders, and protected by the justness of the cause they are promoting, they are free to go about gathering money and supporters. This is the virus in the body's defenses, the thing that disorients the white cells and prevents the body from protecting itself. In an instant an unlawful leadership can turn their organization against the body to harm it.

thrown bombs and assassinated officials, revolutionists who have been killed by the police or executed for political offenses ...

"Wherever you read of an assassination or of the explosion of a bomb you will notice in the newspaper dispatches that the man was a Jew.<sup>20</sup> ... On October 27 ... 4 Jews held up a treasury wagon and captured \$270,000. They passed the package to a woman who instantly vanished ... On the 8th of November a few Jewish revolutionaries entered a treasury car near Ragow in Poland, got \$850,000 and disappeared. ... the massacres that have shocked the universe ... that the name 'pogrom' was invented to describe them, were organized and managed by the exasperated police authorities in retaliation for crimes committed by the Jewish revolutionaries."

These never ending attacks by invisible guerrilla bands culminated in the takeover of Russia.

The Polish, and later the Soviet communist guerrilla groups were the training school for Zionist operatives in Palestine. One of them, Begin, fought with the "Irgun" organization. The Zuei and the Leumi groups were active at the same time. Another, the Stern Gang, assassinated Lord Moyne. Shamir was with the group that assassinated Count Folk Bernadotte, head of the UN mission. These tremendously successful Israeli groups blew up the King David Hotel killing hundreds of British soldiers and civilians, robbed banks wholesale, and assassinated numerous other dignitaries. This final organization was the culmination of more than 100 years of tradition, training, and effort. They were well financed. These organizations' leaders that the British called "terrorists" with \$50,000 rewards on their heads later became the leaders of the Israeli nation.

The identical measures that had been successfully used against the British were then used against the Palestinian Arab population with equal success. The Arabs frantically fled into the deserts, to be

20 This identification is no longer possible. Publishing the race of the criminal is now prohibited by those who own the newspaper chains. Pictures, the exception, identify Black criminals only.



finally gathered into internment camps. Success heaped upon success.

Zionist terror, skillfully exercised through its guerrilla bands, has long been the standard which others who likewise feel themselves oppressed can copy, but never as yet, equal. Worldwide, these successes have given rise to the feeling that if it worked for the Zionists,<sup>21</sup> why not for disaffected Arabs and Christians?

### Order Operations

*The Order's* first business was to set out a five-step program.

- 1 - form the cell
- 2 - establish priorities.
- 3 - set up a war chest: they discussed robbing the unLawful - such as pornography stores, pimps, and usury banks - things that would harm people and businesses bad for Christian society.
- 4 - recruit new members
- 5 - begin the fight and execute judgment against the unLawful elements who were destroying America and their race.

Later, four names were selected: Norman Lear - Anti- Christian TV mogul, "All In the Family;" Morris Dees - well financed former close supporter of George Wallace turned anti-conservative whip, and Judge William Wayne - Clarksville, Texas - who had boasted of forcing the integration of 40 Black & White families in public housing, and Allen Berg,<sup>22</sup> the filthy mouthed announcer.

Mathews was at his best meeting and talking to people. Officially, he recruited 30 or so members,<sup>23</sup> although, one who knew Mathews told me personally that "seven such thirty-man groups were formed."

21 To be fair it must be noted that there are many Jews who have denounced these terrorist acts and the untruthful statements of the Zionists. Care must be taken that an entire people is not condemned for the acts of a few of their members. To ignore their acts, however, discloses the fool.

22 Ibid. 213

23 Scripture restricts membership of such groups to six in number. Ezek 9:1-6

One thing is certain, it will be difficult to get the correct story from the media.

Before each raid they gathered together and read the 91st Psalm:<sup>24</sup>

*"The Lord, He is my refuge and my fortress: my God; in him will I trust."*

Then, Duey read a prayer.

Initially, the attempt was made to fund activities with counterfeit money. This was slow business at first, because they were in the learning process and the quality wasn't the best. It passed, with limited success. Then, in September 1983, the group in concerted action robbed the *World Wide Video Adult Book Store* in Spokane, a porno parlor. This netted only \$300. Poor receipts for a group supposed to bankroll the return of America to its people. On April 22, 1984 a pornographic movie theatre was bombed in Seattle. The next day an armored car was held up and the take was over \$500,000.<sup>25</sup> The lean times were over.

One member of the organization was tried and convicted of betraying the rest and was executed. On June 18, Berg was shot. On July 19, an armored car was stopped and the raiders made off with \$3.6 million dollars in currency. Other banks and other armored cars were raided. All the raids were successful. The take, that part that was admitted by government agents, was in excess of \$4 to \$5 million. A large part of the money later had a way of disappearing when government agents became involved.

*The Order* was not a profit organization - what did they use the money for? The money was tithed, and naively given to causes believed to be anti-establishment. Strictly amateurish, they didn't know that the same establishment often operated not only the stick but often held the carrot. The stick to beat the malcontent into the open and the carrot to lure him into a trap.

24 Ibid. 235

25 The reasoning was that taking money from a usury robber already condemned and awaiting capital punishment was no crime (Ezek 18:13). Neither was taking money from their agents - the large corporations controlled by them. Most large American corporations are controlled by banks who vote corporate stock deposited in bank trust departments (see *War Cycles / Peace Cycles*, p. 181.). Agents are treated as their masters are treated. A number of small struggling Christian merchants were helped by *The Order* with the proceeds from these raids.



A church was given money. The minister said \$10,000, and a member of *The Order* testified in court that it was \$200,000. The minister later volunteered to testify against many others, and according to the statement of one lawyer, without his testimony there wouldn't have been any "Fort Smith Sedition Trials" which soon followed. He was a minister who posed as a Christian identifying with the Law, but who in reality believed that God's Law was done away with and that he could do as he liked.

Two hundred thousand dollars was given to the *White Patriots Of North Carolina* whose leader, Glen Miller, quickly asked for more.

*The Order* spent more money to buy a new expensive counterfeiting machine. The counterfeit money was also to be a small blow against the establishment's money monopoly. With practice the final money product became pretty good.

Each member of *The Order* received a salary of \$10,000 every six months for a total yearly income of \$20,000. There could be bonuses. The rest went into the work of the cause.

A department was set up to make fake identity documentation using the "dead baby" method. Bruce Pierce took \$800,000 and with a few members set up a new cell "to keep from having all the eggs in one basket."

Two farms were bought to be used as training centers. A sporting store was owned and operated by *The Order*, to outfit new recruits coming on stream.

The Order charities were legion. Thousands of dollars were given to poor families, homeless people, struggling young couples starting their own businesses, even hitchhikers with a sad story that seemed plausible.<sup>26</sup> A real Robin Hood image was being built among those who received the largess.

The Order's accomplishments were impressive. They were impressive enough to warrant being blacked out by the media.

"The majority, the core of the ORDER were family men totally inexperienced in such matters. Through trial and error, reading such books as *Paper Trip I, II & III*; how to convert

26 "When they had given a part of the spoils to the maimed, and the widows, and orphans, the residue they divided among themselves and their servants." I Maccabees 8:28

weapons; improvised munitions and other miscellaneous books on subjects relating to our endeavors, we learned. Much of our involvement was due to linear thinking once we began to think about such things." Bruce Pierce: Manuscript notes<sup>27</sup>

Because of this inexperience, and their leader's youth (he was only 31 when he died), simple mistakes were made. On one of the raids, a pistol slipped out of Mathews' belt. It was found and traced to a member of his organization.

"This was an isolated, yet catastrophic incident. No one was even aware that the weapon had been purchased through normal channels. The other weapons had been purchased in an untraceable manner." Bruce Pierce - manuscript notes.

Another left fingerprints in one of the vehicles used on one of their escapades.

The thing that was most devastating was that Mathews recruited Tom Martinez. Martinez betrayed them. In exchange for a suspended sentence for passing some of *The Order's* counterfeit money, he told all to the Secret Service. They called the FBI, Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco & Firearms, the IRS, and sundry police officials. The FBI gave him \$379 a week for expenses plus extras, total \$26,000<sup>28</sup> for this information.

It was all over - except for three details.

- 1 - What happened to all the money?
- 2 - How was it possible for the media to suppress all news of this organization for as long as they did?
- 3 - Did Mathews actually organize seven other cells? And are they actually operating now?

*The Order* was the first attempt made public by the media of the organizing of such a movement among Whites. Unconsciously perhaps, *The Order* had patterned itself after and copied the very successful tradition and tactics of Zionist revolutionaries. No one knows how many groups like *The Order* are now operating, or how long they may have been operating, or what their accomplishments

27 The psychology and thought process of the hunted and the hunter are polar opposite.  
28 Ibid. 242



are. A media which have the ability to black out the collapse of major banks affecting millions of people, Georgia farmer revolts involving thousands of active and passive participants, isolated raids on armored trucks, and assassinations of interracial couples, judges, bankers, and disc jockeys certainly have the ability to black out anything else they wish. With such a monopoly, selective blackouts are relatively easy. I know that the clippings mailed to me by friends across the nation show a surprisingly large number of armored car and bank raids reported locally which never reach national news. Coincidence? Perhaps.

The FBI report states that on October 18, 1984, Federal agents went to the residence of Gary Yarbrough and were ambushed and fired on by him. On November 24, 1984, Mathews and Yarbrough met with Tom Martinez in a motel in Portland. The FBI report further states that Mathews spotted the FBI trap and fired at two of their agents, and that Mathews escaped, while Yarbrough was captured.

With Tom Martinez's help, Ken Loff was captured and persuaded<sup>29</sup> to use *The Order* emergency codes to contact others and betray them to the FBI, one at a time.

### Bob Mathews' Death

Bob Mathews, the leader of *The Order*, died a fiery death while fighting off a land assault by 100 FBI agents and an assault helicopter for 35 hours on Whidbey Island, Washington.

Before this finale he left this message:

"I wish to address the multitude of lies that the federals have been telling about Gary Lee Yarbrough and myself.

"Gary did not 'ambush' any agents. For weeks prior to this incident they had been harassing Gary, following him

<sup>29</sup> Bruce Pierce was persuaded to testify against himself, "Because they (the FBI) threatened to charge and incarcerate my wife and put my 3 children in foster homes." (Letter dated May 2, 1990. While on active duty with the 100th Airborne I watched interrogators skip the persuasion part and get big tough men to sign confessions and tell everything they knew within ten minutes of the start of their interrogation. Most times it took less than three minutes. All this was accomplished without leaving a mark on their bodies or using drugs. Interrogators experienced in their craft can get cooperation very quickly, one way or another.

everywhere, even to the hospital to visit his gravely ill daughter. The day of the mythical ambush Gary was out in his yard when he saw a forest service truck driving across his property in obvious disregard to the numerous no-trespassing signs scattered about his land. He yelled at the truck to stop but it kept coming towards his house until it crashed into and destroyed a gate. At this point Gary fired warning shots into the air and the truck drove away. That was the big ambush.

"The newspapers are saying that Gary not only ambushed three agents but that he hit three of them. Gary did not even realize they were FBI at the time, which is fortunate for them because Gary is an expert marksman and had he decided to ambush the FBI he easily could have killed every fed within range of his weapon.

"It was not until 8:00 P.M. that night that Gary realized what was actually taking place. That is when approximately 30 agents drove up to Gary's house. Gary and a young house guest went outside to investigate the commotion. When the feds started yelling at Gary he dropped to the ground and rolled into a ditch behind the line of government vehicles. The young house guest went running back into Gary's residence. After waiting for three hours the FBI used Gary's wife as a shield and a hostage and went into the house. What brave men they are.

"As incredulous as it sounds Gary laid in the ditch behind the agents for five hours with his gun aimed at their backs. Had Gary really wanted to ambush these invaders then that was a wonderful opportunity to do so. Gary chose instead to give them quarter, something he would later come to regret. Gary eventually slipped out of the ditch and into the woods.

"The incompetence of these gun-toting bureaucrats never ceases to amaze me. Especially after their attempted ambush and murder of myself in a Portland motel. First, let me say that the FBI was not there to arrest Gary but to ambush me. They didn't even know that Gary was in the room. The only reason they were able to find me was because a trusted friend in room 14 was actually a traitor and an informant. The FBI has vast resources and the latest technology but the quality of their



agents is going down with every new recruit. That's because most of the best White men in this country are starting to realize that to be an FBI agent is to be nothing more than a mercenary, for the ADL and Tel Aviv.

"When I stepped out of my motel room that morning, a gang of armed men came running at me. None of the men had uniforms on and the only thing they said was 'stop you bastard.' At this, I yelled to Gary who was still inside and I leaped down the stairwell and took off running into the parking lot. A woman agent shot at my back and the bullet missed and hit the motel manager. I rounded the corner of the motel and took off down the hill into a residential area. After running for two blocks I decided to quit being the hunted and become the hunter. I drew my gun and waited behind a concrete wall for the agents to draw near. When I aimed my gun at the head of the closest agent I saw the handsome face of a young White man and lowered my aim to his knee and his foot. Had I not done so I could have killed both agents and still had left the use of my hand which is now mangled beyond repair and which I might very well lose altogether. This is the last time I will ever give quarter.

"As for the traitor in room 14, we will eventually find him. If it takes ten years and we have to travel to the far ends of the earth we will find him. And true to our oath, when we do find him, we will remove his head from his body.

"I have no regrets or apologies to make for Gary or myself. In fact I am proud that I had the courage and the determination to stand and fight for our race and our heritage at a time in our history when such a deed is called a crime and not an act of valor.

"Approximately nine months ago the FBI went to my house while I was away and threatened my two year old son. That was a very big mistake on their part. After the Portland shoot-out they went to my house and threatened my sixty-three year old mother. Such brave men they are.

"I am not going into hiding, rather I will press the FBI and let them know what it is like to become the hunted. Doing so it is only logical to assume that my days on this planet are

rapidly drawing to a close. Even so, I have no fear. For the reality of life is death, and the worst the enemy can do to me is shorten my tour of duty in this world. I will leave knowing that my family and friends love me and support me. I will leave knowing I have made the ultimate sacrifice to secure the future of my children.

"As always, for blood, soil, honor, for faith and for race."

"Robert Jay Mathews"

Robert Jay Mathews was 31 when he died.



### Order Mistakes

According to Bruce Pierce, *The Order's* mistakes were as follows:

"1) Bob recruited some he shouldn't have. He mistook quantity for quality, incorrectly assuming numbers were a key ingredient to success.

"2) Improper organizational structure from the beginning. Only small cells of 5-6 men, autonomous from the other cells, yet uniting when the situation demands it.

"3) The pistol being left should have been just a temporary setback, with proper planning.

"4) Bob was too kind. He should have excluded T. Martinez for refusing to take the voice stress analyzer test, instead of continuing to coax and coddle him. This led to Bob's death, and the capture of the men in the Washington Whidby Isle area.

"5) Law abiding Christians should not work with pagans. Committed Christians who follow God's Law should not work with those who are not equally committed."

Betrayal stopped Jesse James. It is the one most effective establishment weapon and it is difficult to prevent. Especially when one has been captured and is given a choice of "freedom" or the rigors of "100 years" in prison. In *The Order's* case, betrayal was virtually impossible to prevent.

The reason - Bob Mathews was an Odinist<sup>1</sup> instead of a Christian identifying with, and obeying the instruction of the Laws, Statutes, and Judgments.

The Odinism he identified with thrived among the homogeneous people of the northlands. All neighbors held the same beliefs. It contained no measures to protect its followers who came into contact with strangers holding different beliefs. It did not possess a rigid code of conduct. Every man would do that which was right in his own eyes.

Odinism survived its contact with Christianity only a short time. True Christianity is a warrior religion more demanding than Odinism ever was. It is jealous of the Laws of its God and tolerates those of

no other. Christ protected his followers with simple but exact rules to cover every eventuality. Those who followed these rules lived. Those who didn't, died. The single greatest struggle in history has been the attempt to pry loose the contents of the books Jesus studied containing the rules.

The Roman Church's original collection omitted most. That which remained still condemned their land-grabbing and church excesses, so they hunted down and killed those reading the Catholic Bible. \_Protestant kings did as much, and also rewrote the reformer's Geneva Bible to keep the "bitter" margin notes from the people.

Even the emasculated King James Bible which appeared in 1605 was reprinted in 1825 leaving out 14 more books called the Apocrypha, which covered the period from Israel's return to the time of Jesus. Today, the Gideons distribute millions of even more emasculated testaments leaving out all the books that Jesus studied except two - Psalms and Proverbs. The distribution of even this pitiful remnant is strongly protested.

Bible editions now appear which leave out anything non-Christians find objectionable. It is possible that the next edition may contain no book at all studied by Jesus.

Depriving one of studying the successful method of defending one's self against his enemies disarms the victim. He has no defense. An unnamed enemy may even pass as a friend if there is no law to filter him out. A fatal mistake.

Just as Islam is divided into two main sets of followers - the Sunni and Shiite; and the Jews - the orthodox/Zionist and reformed; the

1 Odinist - follower of Odin, the god of his Viking ancestors.



Christians have two major divisions - the Lawful and the Lawless. Those who believe and obey the Laws, Statutes, and Judgments, and those who don't. Those who believe look to God as their governor. Those who don't, look for pronouncements from the ruling establishment for their cue as to what to believe. This last is called a state religion. The two are bitter opponents.

The establishment, ever seeking support to continue to rule, looks upon those who obey its edicts with favor. Those who follow the Laws of God instead may find themselves looked upon as rebels.

Most of "the Lawful," those who follow the Laws of God and identify their way of life with them, simply call themselves "Christian," or "Christian identity"<sup>2</sup> instead of Catholic, Baptist, Presbyterian, etc.. The names of the lawless cults are legion.

Western Christianity has always had someone who tried to avoid some restraining part of the Christian Law. Sometimes it was church officials, sometimes the king, sometimes strangers.

To survive, the strangers attempted to bribe the Christian rulers and convert individual Christians to ensure their safety.<sup>3</sup> If the strangers succeed, the Christian learns the stranger's ways and a transition religion is born which follows the teachings of the stranger's god, still calling itself "Christian," but which ignores its Laws.

2 Many believe that they fulfill the scriptures showing that they are God's Israel covenant people of the Bible and that Jesus Christ and the patriarchs are their blood kinsmen. They point to (1) Israel to have a new language. Isa 28:11 - no longer Hebrew. (2) Israel to have a new name. Isa 62:2; 65:15; Hos 2:17 - "Christian." (3) Israel to lose all trace of her lineage. Isa 42:16-19; Hos 1:9, 10; 2:6; Rom 11:25 - If Westerners COULD trace their ancestry back to Palestine they COULD NOT be Israel, according to scripture. (4) Israel to have a new home - not Palestine. II Sam 7:10; I Chron 17:9. (5) Israel's home to be northwest of Palestine. Isa 49:12; Jer 3:18. (6) Israel to colonize the desolate place of the earth. Isa 35:1; 43:19, 20; 49:8 54:3; 58:11, 12. - Europe, America, South Africa, and Australia were desolate when first colonized. (7) Israel to find the aborigines diminishing before them. Deut 33:17; Isa 60:12; Jer 31:7-10. (8) Israel to have multitudinous seed - hundreds of millions. Gen 13:16; 15:5; 22:17; 24:60; 26:4, 24; 28:3, 14; 32:12; 49:22; etc. If they were only 10 or 20 million they could NOT be Israel. (9) Israel to have a land of great agricultural wealth. Gen 27:28; Deut 8:7, 9; 28:11; 33:13, 14, 28; and great mineral wealth. Gen 49:25, 26; Deut 8:9; 33:15-19. (10) Israel to be the custodian of the Oracles - the Bible. Psalms 147:19, 21; Isa 59:21. (11) The chosen of God throughout the entire Bible are referred to as either man (Heb: Adam - to blush red) or son-of-man (son of he who blushes red) and he instinctively knows that he is not to live by bread alone. De 8:3.

3 The plan is always the same. See "Plot To Destroy Israel" in the Index and Table of Contents.

### Judeo-Christianity Revives Odinism

One of today's transition religions is called Judeo- Christianity. I know of a Judeo-Christian church which claims to follow the old fundamental basic truths of the Bible. A great many members of that church do.

It was years before I discovered that this outspoken church which professed to go by God's teachings held few beliefs that were not negotiable. Over the years the beliefs and practices of the church reversed themselves to become the exact opposite of what they had been earlier. They had been changed to accommodate changed political and social conditions which ensured continued tax-exemption.

Biblical truths taught at the church were dropped as easily as they had been selected. The principle pillars of belief were - no smoking or drinking, getting saved, walking the aisle, tithing, and soul winning. There is certainly nothing wrong with this program. Billy Sunday had the same sort of program when he came to Lynchburg, but, he combined it with the demand that converts conform to God's Law, and the effects of his crusade have lasted until today.

There were soul winning classes. Every conceivable objection had good "one liner" answers that one was expected to memorize. Testament in hand one was taught to lead the new convert over "The Roman Road," repeat a prayer asking forgiveness, ensure commitment by walking with him down the aisle and having him stand before the congregation to be voice voted in, and then seeing that he got baptized.<sup>4</sup> A booklet was given him that suggested that he eschew evil ways and start tithing. One detail was omitted - there were no classes set up to teach God's Law. Consequently, after a few weeks or months, most new converts drifted back to their old ways. There was nothing to stop it. The church couldn't very well quote the Law that demanded that he stop fornication, lying, or cheating if that in turn opened the door for him to quote the Law demanding that the church stop doing things that were much worse.

The instruction was good. I know one who was instrumental in leading 44 people to the Lord. About twelve still faithfully serve Him - in other churches. The rest gradually drifted back to what they had been doing before. They had not been taught the Law which

4 "All in favor signify by saying aye." There was no request for those opposed to say "nay."



prevented it. Their vacant church pews were quickly filled by starry-eyed people arriving from out of town.

Some Judeo-Christian churches do little good or harm. They are just social clubs. Some do a great deal of harm. The church mentioned above committed at least three capital crimes. As a consequence, everywhere the pastor went he was accompanied by bodyguards. The indictments included:

- Christians were encouraged to buy church bonds, the interest to be paid with money donated by Christian tithers - thereby gaining the buyer the stigma and punishment due a usurer.<sup>5</sup> This violated the law dealing with false witnesses.<sup>6</sup> If the buyer of the bond is condemned, so is the witness that convinced him to commit the act.
- Strangers approached the altar and taught from its pulpit.<sup>7</sup>
- At least one, and possibly many other, interracial marriage ceremonies, was performed in the main sanctuary.<sup>8</sup>

Many ordinary people are ignorant of the difference between Christianity and Judeo-Christianity. They see only Judeo-Christianity's omnipresence. It's everywhere. It is almost the only form of Christian religion that is allowed to be widely advertised in Western society today. It is on television, in books, on billboards, and in newspapers. It is the sole repository of recognition and honors dispensed by government. In return for the establishment's tax exemption it avoids offending the establishment by ignoring Christian Law that condemns those who dispense the honors and tax exemption.

The additional price required is to be required to sit still while the establishment's media carefully and gleefully publicize Judeo-Christian indiscretions - each and every one - in great detail. Who, when, where, what, how many times. The drunkenness, debauchery, lechery, adultery, theft, miscegenation, false witness, and anything else bad that flows from a religion bound by no Laws. All know that

5 "He that hath ... given forth upon usury ... he shall surely die." Ezek 18:8-13

6 "If a false witness rise up ... Then shall ye to unto him, as he had thought to have done unto his brother." Deu 19:16-17

7 "When the tabernacle is to be pitched ... the stranger (Heb: zûwr - racial alien) that cometh nigh shall be put to death." Num 1:51

8 Numbers, Ch. 25

if in a moment of rage they should lash out at their media attackers and enumerate their crimes, access to media exposure would suddenly disappear and they would be left to languish in the limbo now occupied by do-nothing main line churches.

The establishment palms off Judeo-Christianity as Christianity. It then holds up its indiscretions for the world to see. Judeo-Christianity and its indiscretions become "Christianity" to the public. Christianity = indiscretions. If one succumbs to this massive establishment propaganda and accepts Judeo-Christianity in place of Christianity, he tends to accept its basic teaching that God's Law is done away with. Or revolted, he rejects Christianity all together. Either belief benefits the Lawless promoters who must cultivate this atmosphere to survive Christianity's suppressed Laws that deal out capital punishment.

The people don't see any of this. They don't perceive that they are being sold this very attitude. They aren't told that to love God one must "... obey my commandments." Bob Mathews, was one of the many who was revolted by these antics, and who rejected anything parading under the name Christian. Rejecting Christianity, he became an Odinist.

Because of his rejection, he had thrown out the Christian scriptures and had not studied them. He, therefore, did not know the scriptural instructions about how to go about organizing the proper defensive organization.

*"Cause them ... to draw near, even every man with his destroying weapon ... six men come ... and one man ... with a writer's inkhorn at his side: and they went in and stood beside the brazen altar ... and the Lord said unto him ... set a mark upon the foreheads of the men that sigh and that cry for all the abominations that be done in the midst thereof. And to the others he said ... Go ye ... and smite: ... Slay utterly old and young, ... but come not near any man upon whom is the mark: and begin at my sanctuary (with my own people). Then they began at the ancient men (elders) which were before the house." Ezek (9:1-6)*

The correct figure was six. Only six - the efficient organization, hard to locate, hard to apprehend. The seventh member, its leader - God.

Untutored, he confused numbers with might. Of the thirty odd who were caught, sixteen remained true:



### Order Members Refusing To Become Informers

Christians - identifying with Christ's Laws.<sup>9</sup>

O - Odinist

name	faith	sentence
Bob Mathews	O	killed
A. Barnhill	Christian	40 yrs
T. Bentley	Christian	7 1/2 yrs
Jeane. Craig	Christian	40 yrs.
E. Bud Culter	Christian	10 yrs.
R. Duey	Christian	100 yrs
R. Evans	Christian	40 yrs
R. Kemp	Christian	60 yrs.
D. Lane	O	190 yrs
A. McBrearty	Christian	40 yrs
Mike Norris	Christian	5 yrs
B. C. Pierce	Christian	250 yrs
F. Scutari	Christian	3 yrs
R. Scutari	Christian	60 yrs
F. Silva	Christian	40yrs
D. Tate	Christian	2 life sent + 50 yrs
G. Yarbrough	Christian	60 yrs

Figure 10: Order Members True To Oath. Order members refusing to testify against their fellows received maximum sentences vs. very light punishment for collaborators.

Mathews, the leader of *The Order*, deprived of traditional scriptural guides, was left dependent on his own wisdom - a thing always disastrous.<sup>10</sup> Still, the bountiful booty to be gained from such activities will become increasingly irresistible as businesses and jobs move overseas and times become hard. It will become so irresistible that numerous recruits willing to risk all are likely to become available in the days ahead. Other efforts are likely to become common. One thing is certain, with Western man it is not likely that the same mistakes will continue to be repeated.

<sup>9</sup> (1) "If ye love me obey my commandments. John 14:15. (2) "Fear God and keep his commandments: for this is the whole duty of man." Eccl: 12:13

<sup>10</sup> "Trust in the Lord ... lean not unto thine own understanding." Prov 3:5

I wrote and asked Bruce Pierce what he would do differently. His answer was:

"Since my capture I have come to the conclusion that working with others is a sure sign of eventual failure. There are only very few that I would ever work with again. ...

"In response to your question, 'would I work with non-Christians again?' the answer is an unequivocal NO! Not only would they have to be Christians, but they would have to identify with God's Law and believe the Law-commands of God, and their life would have to manifest those beliefs. "In service to our Savior, (signed) Bruce Carroll Pierce."

A letter from Richard Scutari which also answered questions about *The Order* contained the following observation:

"I have recently read the manuscript of your new book. I feel that it will help others to understand what motivates someone to live under God's Laws at all costs. I have often been asked why I left the comfort of my home and sacrificed everything I had. I could only reply that my God drafted me and I had no choice in the matter. I could never adequately explain this compelling force. In answer to your question 'would I do it again' - In a heartbeat! But without the stupid mistakes. I have dedicated my life to God's Laws, the meat of the Word. The motivating forces come from deep within my soul and I would not be much of a man if I did not act on what every fiber in my body tells me is right. For the King of Kings, (signed) Richard Scutari"

As time goes on it is reasonable to assume that more and more Christians will succumb to the teachings of their God and will be willing to put all on the line to secure for themselves what others already have. After all, every race of the world (except Western Christians) have countries of their own in which they usually deny Westerners land, citizenship, the vote, and even residence, and where they worship their own gods in their own way. Only Westerners, among all the peoples of the world, are denied what others already have.

The establishment has the power to prevent what lies ahead. Their choice is limited, however, to three:



- 1- Respect the Laws of Christ and allow his followers to obey them without harassment.
- 2- If the establishment refuses to allow this, then let them set aside a region where the Laws of Christ can be followed, away from those who are antiChrist.
- 3- If one of the two reasonable choices listed above are denied, the followers of the Word are certain to believe that the reason for the denial is because the establishment is contemplating even more stringent measures.

It is written:

**"The enemy is eager to destroy all that call upon the Lord. For he knoweth that upon the day that Israel shall repent, the kingdom of the enemy shall be brought to an end." Book of Dan 2:16- 17.**

If the establishment IS planning more stringent measures to use against its Christian population, it will be interesting to see if America's right-wing copies the successful Muslim and Israeli tactic of taking hostages for purposes of exchange. If so, it may be that many of those presently in prison may at some future date regain their freedom.

### **Red Brigades? Long Live The King!**

On November 30, 1989, Alfred Herrhausen, 59, the powerful chairman of West Germany's largest bank, the Deutsche Bank, died in an explosion in an affluent Frankfurt suburb.

The *Wall Street Journal* in its main article on Dec. 1 said,

"Mr. Herrhausen, the architect of the Deutsche Bank's recent expansion in Europe, Asia and the U.S., was ... considered more powerful than his peers in any other country."

It went on to say that he

"was the personal economic adviser to West German Chancellor Helmut Kohl, and Robert Hormats, vice-chairman of Goldman Sachs International, said he was due to have dinner with the 59-year-old Mr. Herrhausen on Monday night in New York. ... 'The impact of his assassination is no less than that of

a European head of State.' says Mr. Hormats ... 'If there was a voice in Europe that was listened to, it was his.'"

Herrhausen, completely unknown to the man on the street, was a household name within the ruling clique. Behind the scenes, world rulers are always unknown until they die. Otherwise, their rule would not be from behind the scenes. His importance was spotlighted by 60 column inches in the *Wall Street Journal*. War declarations and the deaths of kings and national rulers seldom receive that much press. TV and radio announcements continued every 15 minutes announcing his death. Parades were held in Germany in his memory.

The one who was dead was very obviously a king.

The first story appearing immediately after his death was that a simple bicyclist with an attached bazooka rocket allowed the escorting car of bodyguards to pass, then pointed his bike at Herrhausen's bulletproof car and fired. The missile hit the door next to the banker, pierced the armor, and killed him instantly while sparing his driver. However it was done, it may be assumed that the group responsible in selecting this important but unknown target is very well-informed, both as to their target's station in this world and his movements.

Political violence in Western European countries is almost always blamed on Red Brigades. To do otherwise would be to admit discontent.

It is quite plausible that SOME violent acts are committed by individuals who adhere to communist ideology, but to credit communist violence against Western international bankers to Red Brigades, as is presently being done - stretches credibility. If the communists ever attacked their creator and sugar daddy, the bankers would stop their grants, loans, subsidized grain shipments, new steel mills, chemical plants, auto plants, electronics, computers, the latest weapons, fighter planes, space shuttles, etc., in a minute, and communism would die. No one bites the hand that feeds him.

These Red Brigades appear to be routinely given credit for acts that would be embarrassing to the establishment if attributed to others.

Note the other targets the media attributes to the Red Brigades:



- July 1977 - Juergen Ponto, chief executive officer of the Dresdner Bank, shot by three assailants;
- September 1977 - Hanns-Martin Schleyer, principal spokesman of an association of high ranking corporate leaders - kidnaped and later killed;
- February 1985 - Arms industry executive Ernst Zimmermann - shot.
- July 1986 - Siemens executive Karl Heinz Beckurts - killed by a bomb.
- October 1986 - Gerold von Braunmuehl, Senior West German diplomat - shot.
- Now, November 1989 - Alfred Herrhausen, chief executive officer of West Germany's largest bank - killed probably by rocket.

It could be that there is a group made up of those who do not look with favor on the last dozen or so wars with their tens of millions of dead, each financed by the international usury- bankers:<sup>11</sup> It may be that some have realized that all financing for right-wing and left-wing causes must come from this group. It can come from nowhere else. It may be that such a group is bypassing the smaller fry street activists, politicians, judges, and establishment spokesmen to hit what they consider the soulless monsters responsible - usury-bankers, and will not stop their crusade as long as a single one of them lives or any member of the group they have chosen for their target lives. We know that this is the kind of war is being waged by Jewish and Islamic peoples in their attempt to force obedience to the laws of their own gods. It is not realistic to think that Christendom will be less zealous for their God.

We shall doubtless hear more of these nameless ones whose actions speak louder than their words and who are wreaking such havoc in the ranks of the world's rulers.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>11</sup> Ezek 18:13

<sup>12</sup> Since the first edition of this book, government ATF and FBI strike forces have been involved in the Ruby Ridge, Waco, and Oklahoma City massacres. This gives credence to charges that the establishment itself is causing the disorder as an excuse to suspend individual rights, during which time there is to be widespread transfer of property titles.

### Federal Judge Assassinated

The bombing incidents reached front page with the arrival of the fourth bomb. One of the deceased was 11th U.S. Circuit Court of Appeals Judge Robert S. Vance, known as a militant anti-White integrationist. He was widely hailed as being instrumental in helping Blacks to gain control of Alabama's Democratic Party. The establishment is shocked, but hardly surprised, by his sudden demise and expressions of outrage and sympathy were made by many in authority. The media speculate that drug lords are to blame. Others blame internal establishment turf wars.

Also killed by a bomb was a Black integrationist lawyer. Two other bombs were disarmed. Another judge in Maryland was badly wounded by a bomb.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>13</sup> Terrorist acts are increasingly being blamed on government efforts to manipulate public opinion to create a climate favorable for anti-gun, anti free-speech and other restrictive legislation. Whistle blowers within the formerly sacrosanct FBI have accused that agency of manufacturing evidence to frame targeted individuals. These bomb assassinations may have been of that nature since bombs are certainly not a traditional weapon of our people.



## Chapter 10

# JUST A FEW GOOD MEN

What sort of man is it that Christians believe their God will choose to lead them through to ultimate victory? The scripture is ever faithful with its examples.

Alien rulers make demands not palatable to conquered subjects. The alien god approves these demands or they would not be made. Conquered subjects, to avoid punishment, do all in their power to humor the rulers and their alien god.

Alien demands continue to rain down. To keep peace, concessions are continually made. But nothing is ever enough. In time, the alien god will demand something that his conquered subjects cannot do without being damned by their own god. Then, the hard choice must be made. Obey the alien's god and live for a time - certain of destruction by one's own God. Or, disobey.

In ancient days, the Christian God was called *God the Word*. He had ten rules dealing with murder, theft, adultery, etc. Under these ten rules were statutes and judgments. His people were expected to follow them. Then, as now, the disobedient used every argument not to obey. But, God's people esteemed it a privilege to obey.

*The Apocrypha* contains the stories about some who obeyed. Following are three. The first is about Susanna.<sup>14</sup>

### Susanna

*"Jocam ... took a wife, whose name was Susanna ... a very fair woman, and one that feared the Lord.*

*"Jocam was a great rich man, and had a fair garden ... when the people departed ... Susanna went into her husband's garden to walk. And ... two elders (who hid behind) saw her ... so that their lust was inflamed toward her. ... they were ashamed to declare their lust ... Yet they watched diligently ... to see her ...*

*"She was desirous to wash herself in the garden: for it was hot ... She said to her maids, Bring me oil ... and shut the garden doors, that I may wash ... when the maids were gone ... the two elders rose up ... saying, we are in love with thee; therefore ... lie with us. If thou wilt not, we will bear witness against thee, that a young man was with thee ...*

*"Susanna sighed ... if I do this thing, it is death unto me: and if I do it not, I cannot escape your hands. It is better for me to fall into your hands, and not do it, than to sin in the sight of the Lord ..." History Of Susanna, from the Apocrypha.*

(Read this yourself to discover the proper way to examine a witness in a court of law.)

Susanna was willing to obey God, refuse these two evil, lying elders, and be put to death for adultery, rather than actually commit adultery.

The next story comes from the time of the Maccabees - the time to which I believe we have returned today. The land had been occupied by Alexander in his pursuit of the Persians. Greek generals ruled and Greek soldiers and their mixed Arab-Syrian wives were the aristocracy. These rulers demanded the conquered peoples do what their own alien god approved.

As time went on the people began to resist. Small things became a test, much as "God save the King" became a life or death test to our own forefathers in the 1600s. One did what was demanded or died. The following is the story of a mother and her seven sons who were forced to choose.

### The Mother & Her Seven Sons

*"Seven brethren and their mother were taken and compelled by the king against the law to taste swine's flesh, and were tormented with ... whips. One of them ... spake ... We are ready to die, rather than to transgress the laws of our fathers ...*

*"Then the king ... commanded ... to cut out the tongue ... and the outermost parts of his body ... he commanded him yet being alive to be brought to the fire, and to be fried in a pan (and this he did to each of the six brothers).*

<sup>14</sup> These types of examples are the reasons the *Apocrypha* has been removed from the Bible.



*"... Whilst the youngest was yet alive (the king said that) he would make him both a rich and happy man, if he would turn from the laws of his fathers ... But ... the young man would in no case harken unto him ... the king called the mother, and exhorted her that she would council the young man to save his life ...*

*"But, she ... spake ..., Fear not the tormentor, but being worthy of thy brethren, take thy death, that I may receive thee again in mercy with thy brethren ... The young man said ... I will not obey the king ... but I will obey ... the law ... I, as my brethren, offer up my body and life for the laws of our fathers ... and that by torments and plagues confess, that he alone is God: ...*

*"So this man died undefiled ... last ... the mother died." II Maccabees 7:1-41*

So, there comes a time when someone, somewhere, refuses to do one more thing that will violate his God's law. He will not be content to be imprisoned to die from maltreatment and mistreatment from other prisoners to show love for his God. When the establishment asks this man to turn against his God there will be an explosion. The next is the story of such a man.

### Mattathias

*"The king's officers, ... came into the city ... to make them sacrifice ... Then answered the king's officers, and said to Mattathias ... Thou art a ruler, and an honorable and great man in this city ... Now ... fulfill the king's commandment ... and thou ... shall be honored with silver and gold ... Mattathias answered ... Though all the nations ... fall away every one from the religion of their fathers ... Yet will I and my sons .. walk in the covenant of our fathers. God forbid that we should forsake the law and the ordinances ... Mattathias ... was inflamed with zeal, ... therefore he ran and slew him upon the altar. Also the king's commissioner, who compelled men to sacrifice, he killed at that time, ... Thus dealt he zealously for the law of God, like as Phineas did unto Zambri the son of Salom. And Mattathias cried ... Whosoever is zealous of the law, and maintaineth the covenant, let him follow me. So he and his sons fled into the*

*mountains, and left all that ever they had in the city." I Maccabees 2:1-27*

This act of Mattathias and his sons started the Maccabean revolt. It continued until the false priests, and the strangers and their allies, were banished from the land.

These are three examples of people willing to give their all for their God.

### The Law

The West is living on a powder keg. As in the day of Susanna, the Mother and her Seven Sons, and Mattathias - the Law once more is being flaunted and violated.

Across the West live tens of millions of Christians who are as willing as their ancestors who ventured on the crusades to die for God's Law. It only remains a question of time until the establishment does as the Greeks did, and demands that one of the faithful do that which his God declares "un-Lawful." When it does - the answer will be - NO!

A Susanna will refuse and throw herself on the mercy of a corrupt court stacked with lying witnesses. A mother and her seven sons will die one at a time, in a frying pan or in a prison at the mercy of savage inmates loosed on them. But a Mattathias will fight and die as Mattathias and each of his sons died, one at a time. BUT, die in the process of destroying those who break the Law. Destroyed just as the murderers, rapists, homosexuals, and those who approved their acts were punished when Mattathias and his sons, "the Maccabees," came down from the hills.

The story says that Mattathias' last son lived to see the heathen and their lawless allies banished.

"We must secure the existence of our people and a future for White children."



---

## Chapter 11

---

# THE SPOIL

### David and Goliath

*"There went out a champion out of the camp of the Philistines named Goliath ... whose height was six cubits (from elbow to fingertip) and a span (hand span)..."*

*"And the Philistine said, I defy the armies of Israel ..."*

*"And David(s) ... sling was in his hand ... And the Philistine cursed David by his gods. ..."*

*"Then said David ... I come to thee in the name of the Lord of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom thou hast defied. ... And David ... took ... a stone, and slang it, and smote the Philistine in his forehead, that the stone sunk into his forehead; and he fell on his face ... and when the Philistines saw their champion was dead, they fled ..."*

*"And the children of Israel ... spoiled their tents." I Sam 17:1-53*

One is not allowed to spoil one's kinsmen when captive, or when killed in battle, because one deals with kinsmen by kinsmen's laws<sup>1</sup>, but one must deal with strangers according to the strangers' own laws because they respect no other. Their law states, "To the victor belongs the spoil."

Today, the Israeli media proclaim that Arab land claimed by the Arabs for more than 1,000 years is now Israeli by right of conquest. Arab cities, towns, stores, farms, and homes, with all their contents, now belong to the Zionists who spill the blood of Arab men, women

<sup>1</sup> "He showed his word unto Jacob, his statutes and his judgments unto Israel. He hath not dealt so with any nation: and as for his judgments, they have not known them." Ps 147:19-20

and, recently, children, whenever they consider it necessary to defend their spoil.

Allah, the god of the Arabs, in turn promises paradise and wealth to the followers of Islam who die to regain this land and spread the faith. The Arab who can take a spoil from the Israeli or Christian may keep it. If he fails and dies in the attempt, he wins Paradise. It is a win/win situation. It is the best offer that many an impoverished Arab living on subsistence fare in a forsaken desert refugee camp has ever had. He feels he has no choice.

Who is foolish enough to expect the Christian to not see, and not learn, that what works for the Arab and the Jew will work for him. Sauce for the goose is sauce for the gander - especially when the stakes are high.

### The King

The Saxon lost his land when the king took one-third of it by confiscating the land of rebellious subjects and by daring God by dealing in the capital offense of usury.<sup>2</sup> Forbidden by Law to directly lend at interest to his own kind, he brought in strangers<sup>3</sup> who were usury bankers to lend money to his own people and bring them into bankruptcy. He took half of what the strangers foreclosed and the banker took half. In 102 years the bankers owned 1/5 of all England. In 1290 the King banished his bankers and took all their foreclosed land for himself. The Saxon warrior became a serf on his own land which was now owned by a Lawless kinsman who was king.

### The Church's Land

The king's chief competitor was the Church. The Church got one-third of the people's land by persuading the people to bequeath their land to the Church upon their deaths in exchange for praying their souls out of purgatory. To keep the spoil, the Church had to forbid the Saxon to read the Law. The Church burned people who did. The Church owned one-third and king owned one-third of that which had belonged to the people.

<sup>2</sup> "Hath given forth upon usury ... he shall surely die." Ezek 18:13

<sup>3</sup> (1) "Can two walk together, except they be agreed." Amos 3:3, (2) "If thou has stricken thy hand with a stranger (Heb: zûwr - racial alien) thou art snared." Prov 6:1, (3) "They shall not dwell in thy land, lest they make thee sin against me." Ex 23:31-33



### The Church And King Combine

The king grew envious of the Church's spoil and deposed the head of the Church making himself its head, thereby combining his own one-third of the land with the Church's one-third, which now allowed him to own two-thirds of the people's land. The king was now not only king and God's representative on earth, but he was the largest landowner. Almost everyone else was either a serf working on the king's estates or an overseer (nobleman) who saw to it that the work was done.

The king also forbade Saxons to read the Bible in order to prevent their learning that the king was transgressing God's monopoly Law by owning all this land.<sup>4</sup> He too burned people for snooping around in the scriptures to discover things that they shouldn't discover. Tyndale, who translated the Bible into English, was caught and burned by the king. Others were too. It is an historical fact that all of the early Bibles had to be printed by individuals without any ecclesiastical, royal, or public help, since the establishment of the day was united to keep the people from learning The Word.

The Geneva "Breeches" Bible, filled with the margin notes of the early reformers pointing out the king's and Church's transgressions in detail, was smuggled into the land. It was dangerous, divisive, and the king punished any who bought it. But that did not stop it. It was bought and carefully hidden in almost every household.

To combat this "pernicious merchandise," he introduced a "Bishop's Bible" of his own which left out the reformer's margin notes. The Bishop's Bible was ignored. The Geneva Bible still reigned supreme. The next attempt was a revision of the Bishop's Bible called the King James Bible. This time, it worked. The Geneva Bible was made hard to get and the King James version easy, so the King's "authorized" version became the new standard. For individuals to own it instead of the Geneva Bible kept the king's equivalent of the FBI and IRS off one's back, and it deprived the people of the reformer's notes which were upsetting to the establishment. People forget that the King James version was introduced to replace the Geneva Bible and help keep the Saxon from getting excited about "his rights" and to stay in his place.

<sup>4</sup> "Woe unto them that join house to house, that lay field to field, till there be no place, and they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth." Isaiah 5:8

Reading the Bible at all was the Saxon's first obstacle. Which Bible to read was the next. While the powerful king and his subjects argued, a thief entered by the side door and stole the prize. What prize? The great spoil that made Bible suppression necessary - the king's two-thirds of England's land.

### The Bankers' Land

The king had used and then banished the bankers after first stripping them of the property they had looted by usury banking. The bankers had no love for the king but they did for his immense wealth.

The current king forbade the bankers' return. He didn't need another competitor for his land, so the bankers hired a pretender to the king's throne and hired armies so that he could take the throne. The old king toppled, his overseer- nobles and loyal serf yeomen were banished to America where they could do little harm in the wilderness, and the new bankers' king took over and ruled for his masters. Now the bankers had both the king's land and the land of the banished refugees.

The new king appeared to be English, spoke English, and acted English, so he was accepted. But, he, too, was just a hired overseer. The bankers now owned and controlled Britain. The king was their royal spokesman.

### Gathering Still More Spoil

In 1780, 173 years after America's settling, and 100 years after both the supporters and enemies of the old king had been banished to America, the first usury bank was established in America. Unopposed, the system rapidly spread like a cancer. In a short while, its operators took America's land and control of the media. True information and knowledge is the key to successful democratic rule. Media control men's thoughts, and this automatically controls his political apparatus.

A great war was promoted to dispossess wholesale landowner holdouts in the South. Former freemen were moved to town to work for one of the many banker-owned or controlled industries. Other establishment wars dispossessed other Saxons in other lands. They, too, lost their land and moved to town. The landless Saxon was now on the establishment's payroll and must behave if he were to eat.



### What A Saxon Today Endures

Matters have progressed just as the ancient sages predicted. All Saxons now hold their hats in their hand. Many are in rags. Their foreclosed houses are bundled together and sold in lots by the FHA. A check of the campgrounds this winter will uncover descendants of Saxon sea-rovers sleeping in cars with their families.

To gain cheap labor and reliable voters, the establishment floods the land with still more strangers. The Saxon who cannot afford to send his children to a safe school or live in a safe neighborhood is still judged rich enough to pay tribute to support these aliens. All the while the masters and their overseers flaunt their wealth on every hand. The Saxon loses his modest home while great homes and buildings are built with usury money. In Virginia, money barons live on thousands of lush bluegrass acres while former bankrupted owners till the soil for them, mow the grass, and tend their herds of sheep.

### The Saxon Spur

To the onlooker, all seems hopeless but for one thing. The master's greed has overdone it. He has it all. He has the Church's land, the king's land, and the people's land - and still he doesn't have enough. He must grasp the last penny. He now finds he can make greater profit and gather even greater wealth with lower costs by firing Saxon workers and moving the industries that employed them to other lands. Entire Western industries are leaving. There are educated and skilled Saxons who now feel fortunate to find janitorial jobs to support their families. One may meet an electronics engineer with a Ph.D. mopping floors at an airport. There is nothing else for him - almost.

### The Saxon's Example

The Saxon sees! If the god of the Jews can approve of their invading another's land and keeping it in the face of world opinion; if they can shoot down Arab women and children and stoutly maintain that it is their god-given right to do so; if they can go to foreign countries and kidnap those who they claim have harmed them, try, confiscate, and execute them; if they can flaunt Christian Law in the Christian nations in which they live and trade; if they can

order their agents in foreign lands to send them reparations from those nations, and; if Allah can tell Arabs to kill their own people who fraternize with Israelis; if he promises them paradise and spoil for resisting the infidel; does the Christian God promise the Saxon less?

How long can one expect it to be before six men at a time gather at brass altars with drawn weapons?

**"Cause them that have charge ... to draw near, even every man with his destroying weapon ... six men come ... and one man . ... with a writer's inkhorn at his side: and they went in and stood beside the brazen altar ... And to the others he said ... Go ye ... and smite: ... and begin at my sanctuary. Then they began at the ancient men (elders) which were before the house." Ezek 9:1- 6<sup>5</sup>**

Does one actually expect an impoverished Saxon to pass by and look over the iron fence at Goliath living unpunished in his mansion, one who is known to have committed capital crimes against God, and yet securely lives on Saxon land and feasts on Saxon wealth? Unpunished crimes are the thing that the Word says brings God's curse on all the people of the land - the Saxon included.<sup>6</sup> Will not he believe the Word when it says that the removal of the guilty will remove God's curse?<sup>7</sup> Will not the son of Isaac ask why David should pull the plow while David has a sling and a rock? Will not Goliath tell David where the wealth is hidden with a sword pressed to his throat? Do not Goliath's chariots transport wealth daily on the

5 Num 16:37-40, Num 18:6-7, Num 18:1-7, Exod 30:25-33, Lev 22:10, Num 1:51. (1) "Cursed be he that doeth the work of the Lord deceitfully, and cursed be he that keepeth back his sword from blood." Jer 48:10, (2) "If ye will not ... do all these commandments; ... I will bring a sword upon you. Lev 26:14- 35, (3) "He said unto them ... he that hath no sword, let him sell his garment and buy one." Luke 22:36. (4) "But if ye will not ... do all these commandments ... I also will do this unto you; ... ye shall sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it ... they that hate you shall reign over you; and ye shall flee when none pursueth you. ... I will break the pride of your power ... your land shall not yield her increase ... I will send wild beasts among you which shall rob you of your children ... and make you few in number ... I will bring a sword upon you ... I will send the pestilence among you; ... I will ... cast your carcasses upon the carcasses of your idols ... And I will make your cities waste ... And I will bring the land into desolation." Lev 26:14-35

6 "Because thou hast let go out of thy hand a man whom I appointed to utter destruction, therefore thy life shall go for his life, and thy people for his people. I Ki 20:42

7 "Then up stood Phineas, and executed judgment: and so the plague was stayed. And that was counted unto him for righteousness unto all generations for evermore." Ps 106:29-31



byways and his counting houses hold vast sums? Does not this wealth mount beyond measure to the sky?

To hungry, abused men the prey seems so vulnerable, especially men whose Viking grandfathers made their living by desperate ventures.

'Til now, all that has kept David's descendants from climbing the iron fence and spoiling Goliath are Bible stories told by establishment tax-exempt priests who are made tax-exempt for telling the stories. They say that God's Law has been done away. Then, hunger pangs strike and the Saxon reads the Word himself. What he sees are not the words of Goliath's priests.

A fool can see that Goliath is king. His horsemen gallop into the countryside shouting Park Avenue slogans and publishing new proclamations on every tree. Instant obedience is required. A lone cry of defiance immediately attracts troops of armored, warlike minions who quickly liquidate the rebel. His overseer- governors, and overseer-judges are busy, the gavels rise and fall, the prisons are full. The overseers speak for their master and their word is law.

The Saxon now finds himself in the same place that the Jew and the Arab find themselves. The god of the Jews tells them that they are justified. The god of the Arabs tells them that they are justified. The God of the Saxon tells him that he is justified.

The people's land that was taken and combined into the king's land and the Church's land is now combined into the bankers' land. All the jealousy, fear, hate, anguish, and frustration that in the past were directed against the king and the Church now go with those who possess this monopoly.

With history to guide, and the present example of both Jew and Arab to instruct, it is possible to predict that the following will come to pass as surely as day follows night:

### The Saxon Dawn

The rivers of Tidewater Virginia are immense. Near Hoskins Creek, 70 miles from the bay, the Rappahannock River is a mile and a half wide. Lower, it is seven miles wide and hard to see across. This is the river on whose banks my forefathers have lived for ten generations. As mountains are to some - this great river is to my people. As a young man, I launched a sailboat in the dead of night

out onto this river where great men-of-war once sailed. I followed their bearings down the river. The elements caught my sailboat, the ebbing tide rushed strongly in the channel, and the wind from starboard stung my face. By dawn, I had sailed into the great Chesapeake. It was glorious. I had sailed the very waters the ironclads had sailed, the tall masted men-of-war, ship's longboats and canoes. For a moment, I felt a part of history. In mind's eye, I passed on through the great Hampton Roads with its scores of ships lying at anchor, and sailed on into the Atlantic mist.

Sometimes, very early in the morning before the sun rises, the fog hangs low on the ocean. The water is glassy, silent. Not a sound nor a ripple. The familiar sound of the buoy bell and gull are gone. A fog envelops everything. All is still.

The sailboat had become a grandfather's narrow dragonship - inching soundlessly through the damp fog. Touching the sand bottom forty feet from the beach it quietly grinds to a stop. Virginia's mornings can be cold when the fog is heavy. One can touch bottom and hardly see the shore.

Quietly, so as not to make a sound, a leg reaches over the gunwale and sinks into the cold water. The water sends an electric shock through the body. The other leg follows, and both sink into the cold black water. It comes to the thighs, and then to the belt. Standing on tiptoe on the sandy bottom to keep the cold water from rising higher only delays the inevitable. One wishes to be somewhere else - anywhere else. But hunger is master here.

Reaching back into the boat, the helmet is cold, wet, and heavy. The great round shield from the side of the boat is next. It, too, is cold and wet with condensation.

Then, reaching back into the boat the Saxon lifts his ax, balances it, and taking a deep breath, starts to wade to shore.<sup>8</sup> It is time to go to work to feed himself and his family. There is much wrong in the land that must be righted, the table is spread, and the pay is good.

In a big city far inland, the former engineer looks at his watch, rests his mop against the wall, and goes to the restroom. A short

8 (1) "They that spoil thee shall be a spoil, and they that prey upon thee will I give for a prey." Jer 30:16. (2) "They shall spoil those that spoiled them, and rob those that robbed them, saith the Lord God." Ezek 39:10. (3) "Take ye the spoil of silver, take the spoil of gold." Nahum 2:9. (4) "They shall spoil them of the east together: they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab." Isa 11:14. (5) "All the cattle, and the spoil of the cities, we took for a prey to ourselves." Deut 3:7



while later he emerges in a three-piece suit and a briefcase. He, too, is going to work.

The fog has lifted. The world is seen clearly as it really is. The establishment has forced Christendom to give birth to a new age - the age of Phineas.

The Crusader battle cry is again heard in the land -

"God wills it!"

**THE END**



## Index

## A

- abolition
  - birth..... 163
  - radical abolition..... 191
- adam
  - man - definition ..... 31
- Adams letter ..... 192
- Alamo ..... 173
- Almond, Gov. J. Lindsay. 346
- altar
  - ED ..... 41
- ambassadors required..... 40
- Ambush
  - Kahl..... 362
- Apocrypha..... 47
- aristocracy, Virginia ..... 93
- assassination, Verwoerd .. 352
- atrocities
  - American German PWs 320
- auction houses ..... 206
- B**
- B'nai B'rith..... 354
- Balak
  - plots against Israel ..... 27
- Balfour Agreement ..... 292
- bank
  - Second Bank of US ..... 184
- bankers take land ..... 415
- bankers
  - vs. Republicans & Blacks 235
- bastard ..... 36
- battles
  - Blood Run, Virginia ..... 96
  - Vincennes - America .... 120
  - guerrilla warfare in SA . 311
- Belle Island ..... 228
- Beowulf..... 51
- Berg, Alan ..... 382
- Berkeley..... 97
  - Governor ..... 96
- Bezuidenhout
  - Frederick - martyr ..... 263
- Biddle ..... 189

- Birdwatchers
  - Phineas groups ..... 332
- Black Watch..... 279
- Blacks
  - "niger" ..... 135
  - African Difaqane ..... 268
  - corruption in SC..... 232
  - in power ..... 215
  - nature ..... 229
  - pecking order ..... 169
  - reign of terror ..... 216
  - treatment of Whites..... 229
- Blood River Battle ..... 265
- bond frauds..... 242
- Braddock's defeat..... 105
- brass altar worship..... 177
- brother
  - definition ..... 26
- Brown, John..... 194
- burial
  - Confederate dead ..... 205
  - Union dead ..... 205
- C**
- Catholic Church
  - Jesuits ..... 181
  - Mexican wealth ..... 181
- Caughlin, Father..... 372
- cavaliers..... 93
- Chambersburg burning ... 205
- Charles I..... 86
- Charles II ..... 89, 94
- Cherry Valley massacre... 113
- chess, beer ..... 28
- children
  - 14,000 killed ..... 283
- church
  - in Haiti ..... 133
  - purgatory..... 181
  - the Church takes land... 413
- church land ownership

- the exception..... 16
- Clark, George Rogers ..... 121
- Clarkson, renegade ..... 136
- code of conduct, German 305
- colonization..... 191
- Confederate PWs ..... 203
- contracts, with strangers.. 108
- copperhead
  - movement ..... 199
- Cortez ..... 175
- Covenant
  - Solemn League 86
  - The Covenant ..... 85
- Covenanters, executions.... 89
- Crédit Mobilier..... 218
- Cromwell
  - massacres ..... 89
- crusader orders..... 55
- Custer
  - George Armstrong ..... 203

**D**

- Dale
  - Sir Thomas ..... 72, 75
- David & Goliath..... 412
- deathwind - Lew Wetzel.. 118
- Degrelle, Gen. Leon ..... 297
- division, 100th Division.... 348
- dogs
  - giving to ..... 82
- dragon boat story..... 57
- drinking
  - Law on ..... 335
- drinking rule..... 29
- Dutch East India Co. .... 258
- Dutch Reformed Church. 352

**E**

- eating companions ..... 78
- ED altar..... 41
- Ehud, Judges 3:1-30..... 43
- England
  - Civil War ..... 87
  - new nobility ..... 94

**F**

- false witnesses Law..... 294
- FBI, author's file ..... 345
- fighting kinsmen
  - law against ..... 32, 33
  - exception..... 34
  - punishing non-helpers.... 36
  - when to go to war ..... 34
- forbidden marriage..... 74
- Forrest,
  - Gen. Nathan Bedford. 223
- frauds
  - bond..... 242
  - Crédit Mobilier ..... 218
  - railroad..... 217
  - NY connection ..... 244
- French & Indian War..... 103
- French Revolution
  - in Mexico ..... 182

**G**

- Garnett, Judge Muscoe
  - red flag ..... 208
- Geddes, Jenny - Priestess . 86
- gentiles
  - go not to ..... 166
- Germany
  - declaration of war ..... 304
  - racialism..... 311
  - rape of the women ..... 314
  - soldiers code of conduct 305
  - SS ..... 309
  - the communist plan ..... 294
  - Wilson's "14 - points" .... 294
- Gideon - Judges 6:1-10..... 44
- Glass, Sen. Carter ..... 335
- Glastonbury ..... 55
- God
  - knowing God ..... 22, 112
- God's anger - plague ..... 39
- gods - Okee, Indian god.... 65
- Goliad, battle of ..... 174
- Great Trek ..... 265
- Greeley, Horace..... 232
- Grendel the dragon ..... 52



- Grey Friar's Church ..... 86  
 guerrilla war - Haiti..... 144  
**H**  
 Black warfare..... 144  
   early Black revolts..... 134  
 Haiti  
   guerrilla war ..... 144  
   Napoleon's instructions 154  
   sickness..... 144  
   the church ..... 132  
   Toussaint L'Ouverture... 152  
   yellow fever ..... 157  
 Hampton, Wade.....254  
 Harmar vs Wetzel..... 119  
 Hitler  
   his estate..... 296  
   Reichstag speech..... 297  
 homosexuals, ..Law regarding  
 Hoskins  
   Bartholomew .....74  
**I**  
 Indian  
   agent's cow story ..... 96  
 Indian wars  
   in the South ..... 122  
 Indians  
   Chief Weatherford ..... 124  
   diseases..... 118  
   spread syphilis ..... 127  
   Virginia Indians today .... 98  
   Virginia's problem..... 96  
 infant mortality  
   declines w/separation ... 338  
 inflation, German .....295  
 interest  
   thralldom of .....296  
 intermarriage  
   fate of children ..... 38  
   no contact with violator .. 38  
   when allowed back ..... 38  
 interposition  
   South Carolina..... 346  
   Virginia ..... 346  
 interracial couples..... 373  
   marriage..... 374  
   Islamic, kill Christians..... 109  
   Islamic SS..... 311  
   Israel  
     10 million into captivity.. 69  
**J**  
 Jackson, Andrew..... 124  
 Jael, Phineas priestess..... 45  
 James, Jesse..... 54, 224  
 Jameson raid ..... 270  
 Jamestown, Indian mother 65  
 Jasher, on Phineas ..... 28  
 Jefferson, Thomas 315  
   George III..... 162  
   his slaves ..... 164  
   media complaints.. 136, 137  
 Jewish  
   anti- Semitism..... 312  
 Jews - Kol Nidre prayer .. 110  
 Judeo- Christianity  
   indictements ..... 402  
   revives Odinism..... 399  
 judges, assassinated ..... 407  
**K**  
 Kahl, Gordon ..... 362  
   finale..... 370  
   last letter ..... 363  
 Kelly's Ford  
   witch doctor story ..... 134  
   wartime conditions ..... 209  
 Kennedy assassination.... 372  
 Kenton - Simon  
   Indian fighter..... 116  
 killing times  
   Scotland ..... 89  
 king  
   "God save the king" ..... 90  
   Charles I..... 86  
 King Arthur ..... 54  
 King John..... 57  
 Klan  
   1915 power..... 336  
   Klan impersonators ..... 224  
   Ku Klux .....  
   media attention ..... 224

- no-name organizations . 224  
 Sen. Carter Glass..... 336  
 knapsack story ..... 207  
 Kol Nidre prayer ..... 110  
**L**  
 land  
   division required ..... 73  
   50 acre grants.....73  
   promoted ventures ..... 243  
 Lancelot, renegade ..... 55  
 Law  
   ambassadors..... 40  
   anointing strangers..... 178  
   borrowing ..... 57  
   brass altar story ..... 177  
   brother definition ..... 26  
   burying dead ..... 205  
   conduct on active duty.. 201  
   contracts with strangers 108  
   drinking ..... 29, 335  
   eating companions ..... 78  
   homosexuals..... 380  
   illicit sex ..... 335  
   Jubilee .....53, 359  
   king - who is ..... 57  
   king's wealth..... 300  
   kings & priests ..... 57  
 Law (cont)  
   knowing God..... 22  
   land .....  
   love ..... 85  
   monopoly..... 133  
   murder ..... 617, 79, 353  
   plague ..... 21  
   priest's wealth ..... 60  
   PWs..... 202, 203, 321  
   racial intermarriage ..... 26  
   racial separation..... 79  
   refusing to enforce Law 119  
 Law (cont)  
   rule by strangers ..... 18, 109  
   separation..... 76  
   spoiling the enemy..... 278  
   strange wives ..... 74  
   stranger over thee ..... 81  
   strangers..... 76, 84  
   taking a wife..... 131  
   taxes..... 57  
   The Word..... 21, 85  
   to Israel only..... 17  
   treatment of PWs..... 278  
   usury - punishment ..... 262  
   wealthy churches..... 132  
   who enforces..... 21  
 law enforcement  
   the wounded leg..... 334  
   those responsible ..... 23  
 Lee  
   t order to shoot looter ... 200  
 Libby Prison ..... 203  
 Lincoln  
   Abraham ..... 200  
   stops PW exchange ..... 203  
 Little Rock, bonds ..... 217  
 Long, Huey.....341  
 looting  
   in Virginia ..... 209  
 love  
   Law ..... 85  
   loving strangers ..... 38  
 lynchings ..... 329  
   Richard's story ..... 330  
   violent time 1873-1910.. 332  
   quiet time 1910-1940.... 334  
**M**  
 Maccabees ..... 48  
 man, "adam" - definition.... 31  
 Maranos ..... 175  
   Amsterdam ..... 289  
   influence S. Africa ..... 289  
   list of ecclesiastics..... 179  
 marriage  
   racial intermarriage ..... 25  
 Marx, Karl..... 232  
 massacre  
   Cherry Valley..... 113  
   Creeks ..... 124  
   Detroit..... 124  
   Haiti..... 146



- River Raisin massacre .. 124  
 Texas ..... 174  
 Mathews,  
   burned alive..... 384, 392  
 Mattathias  
   father of Maccabees..... 410  
   like Phineas ..... 410  
 McCarthy, Sen. Joseph .... 344  
   media assassinates..... 345  
   McCarthyism  
   The fight for America... 345  
 media, (see newspapers)  
   abolition issue ..... 191  
   battles the South ..... 223  
   cause atrocities ..... 287  
   Haiti ..... 136  
   Jefferson complains 136, 285  
   Klan..... 223  
   lies against SA..... 285  
   South Africa in 1902 .... 284  
   selective blackout ..... 360  
 Mexico  
   1910 revolution ..... 183  
   Catholic Church ..... 181  
   1519-1821..... 175  
   French revolution ..... 182  
   syphilis ..... 175  
 Miller, Glen..... 376  
 Miller, Steve - letter ..... 378  
 monopoly  
   church ..... 84  
   law against ..... 81  
 Morescoes ..... 175  
 Mosby  
   17 year old boy hanged . 203  
 Mother & 7 Sons - story .. 409  
 Mulatto  
   case history..... 131  
   revert to the Negro..... 131  
**N**  
 NAACP agitators ..... 178  
 name reaso for  
   "French & Indian War" . 103  
 Napoleon  
   effort in Haiti..... 154  
   instructions to Leclerc . 154  
 National Geographic  
   Polish terrorists ..... 397  
 Nebraska Farm Rally..... 354  
 newspaper suspended 200  
 niger, definition..... 135  
 North Carolina ..... 375  
   Carolina Seven ..... 375  
**O**  
 oaks  
   Virginia's large oak ..... 72  
 Odin - Odinst ..... 396  
 Okee  
   child sacrifice ..... 65  
 Opechancanough..... 77  
 Order, The  
   five-step program..... 388  
   Mathew's death..... 392  
   mistakes..... 396  
   original membership..... 384  
   Jewish terr'st as model .. 385  
   Pierce - doing dif'tly 396, 403  
   use of money..... 390  
 Our Nordic Race ..... 42, 343  
**P**  
 paroling kinsmen..... 33  
 Patriots  
   Of North Carolina ..... 376  
 Pelham, Maj. John. .... 309  
 Phineas  
   against Zimri ..... 29  
   Ehud - Judges 3:1-30 ..... 43  
   Enoch 46:23-24 34  
   frontier priestess ..... 115  
   general of army ..... 27  
   Gideon kills stranger ..... 44  
   Jasher 85:54-63..... 28  
   Jasher 85:61-63, 86:6..... 29  
   Jenny Geddes, priestess. 86  
   mention in Jasher..... 28  
   Phineas & Zimri..... 24  
   Phineas six ..... 401  
   Ps 106:30 ..... 25

- reasons for priesthood .... 21  
 Robin Hood ..... 56  
 six come forward ..... 179  
 stays plague ..... 14  
 Phineas & Zimri  
   Num. 25:6-13..... 24  
 Pike Jame S.  
   complaint against Blacks 236  
   hands off newspapers! .. 240  
   warns Southerners..... 240  
 plague ..... 38  
   caused by strangers ..... 30  
   for killing kinsmen..... 32  
   racial interbreeding..... 29  
 plantations..... 239  
   Haiti ..... 128  
 Pocahontas ..... 74  
 pregnant, unmarried ..... 335  
 press corps, circa 1785 .... 138  
 priest, who is priest? ..... 57  
 priesthood Law..... 178  
 priests  
   may not be wealthy..... 56  
   sire Mulattos ..... 133  
 prisoners  
   Belle Island story..... 208  
 propaganda  
   anti- South ..... 248  
   manufacturing..... 249  
 propaganda term  
   "civil war" ..... 198  
 Prostrate State, by Pike.... 232  
 psychological warfare  
   against Blacks ..... 252  
 puritan, Oliver Cromwell .. 87  
 PWs  
   death rates..... 317  
   parole story ..... 203  
**R**  
 race war  
   Haiti ..... 145  
   racial intermarriage ..... 26  
 racialism  
   German..... 311  
 railroad frauds..... 217  
 reconstruction ..... 214  
   Blacks in power ..... 215  
   crimes against Whites... 215  
   looting ..... 216  
 red brigades..... 404  
 refugees, Amherst County 210  
 renegades..... 24, 226  
   Ambrister & Arbuthnot 125  
   Clarkson ..... 136  
   Governor Hamilton ..... 120  
   Proctor ..... 124  
   Sonthonax ..... 148  
   Lord Charles Somerset 262  
   W. W. Holden - NC..... 226  
   Zimri ..... 24  
 Republican Party..... 208  
   fight Democrats 1874 ... 247  
 revolution  
   French ..... 126  
   revolutionary soldiers..... 149  
   Rhodesia betrayed ..... 351  
   Rights of Man..... 138  
   Robin Hood..... 56  
   Rockefeller, John D. Jr. .. 288  
   Rockwell - assassinated... 350  
   Commander Lincoln .... 350  
 Rolfe, John..... 74  
 Roosevelt  
   responsibility for war .... 299  
 royal instructions  
   Indians..... 70  
**S**  
 samaritan, law..... 23  
 San Antonio experiences 175  
 Santa Anna ..... 174  
 scalp buyer ..... 121  
 Schacht, Dr. Hjalmar ..... 296  
 Scott  
   Otto, "Secret Six" ..... 194  
 Scottish Shepherd story .... 36  
 seduce, must marry..... 335  
 Seminoles..... 125  
 seven, Carolina Seven..... 375  
 Seven-Step Plan



7 - anti-reaction ..... 337  
 seven-year release ..... 337  
 sex, out of marriage ..... 335  
 Sherman  
   banker ..... 200  
   General ..... 200  
 slave  
   Hebrew ..... 128  
 slaves, 20 black slaves ..... 162  
 Smith, Capt. John ..... 80  
 South  
   its wealth ..... 190  
 South Africa ..... 258  
   14,000 children die 272, 283  
   Blood River Battle ..... 265  
   diamonds 1867 ..... 268  
   dum-dum bullets ..... 286  
   gold ..... 270  
   guerrilla warfare ..... 281  
   order to SA soldiers ..... 278  
   Lord Somerset - reneg.. 262  
   Ordinance 50 ..... 266  
   the Bezuidenhout revolt 263  
   Verwoerd ..... 332  
 South Carolina ..... 226  
 spy scare  
   1945-1954 ..... 244  
 SS ..... 308, 310  
 St. George & the Dragon .. 49  
 Star-Exponent ..... 339  
 stranger  
   anointing ..... 178  
   Berkley's agreement/w.... 97  
   dealings with ..... 53  
   disease-laden ..... 30  
   integrationists forsaken  
     by God ..... 38  
   over thee ..... 203  
   two meanings of word .... 24  
 stumbling block ..... 75  
 Suasso  
   Isaac Lopez ..... 289  
   Susanna, story of ..... 408  
 syphilis

from Indians ..... 127  
 from Mexico ..... 175  
**T**  
 Talmud ..... 110  
 tariffs  
   monopoly ..... 217  
 taxes .....  
   Arkansas ..... 216  
   black collectors ..... 227  
   Charleston ..... 227  
   King John ..... 57  
   tobacco tax ..... 92  
   5000 acres sold ..... 362  
   Law on ..... taxes 57  
   Louisiana ..... 228  
   Mississippi ..... 228  
   real estate forfeiture .... 227  
   S. Carolina ..... 228  
 Tecumseh killed ..... 124  
 Texas  
   Alamo ..... 173  
   Santa Anna ..... 174  
 Thanksgiving, Virginia ..... 79  
 tobacco price 1670 ..... 93  
 tories - renegades ..... 112  
 Toussaint L'Ouverture .... 152  
 Tunnels of Chu Chi ..... 282  
 Turner, Nat ..... 166  
**U**  
 usury ..... 54  
   penalty ..... 262  
   the contract ..... 184  
**V**  
 Viking Dragon boat story.. 57  
 Virginia  
   Bacon's Rebellion 1675.. 96  
   1600's militia ..... 94  
   Covenanters arrive ..... 92  
   its people ..... 93  
   Nathaniel Bacon ..... 96  
   Northern Neck ..... 94  
   old aristocracy ..... 93, 94  
   Prince Edward County 254

suffrage 1670 ..... 95  
 the Great Rebellion ..... 94  
 vote  
   Black franchise ..... 214  
**W**  
 Wallace  
   Governor George ..... 383  
 Wallace, Sir William ..... 59  
 war  
   Civil War, England 1642. 87  
   emissaries ..... 196  
   first shots WBTS ..... 196  
   Indian war 1622 ..... 77  
   South Africa ..... 273  
   when to fight ..... 34  
 wartime condition  
   Virginia 1861-65 ..... 209  
 Wayne, Gen. Anthony ..... 116  
 Wetzel, Lew ..... 117  
 "Deathwind" ..... 118  
 White Patriot Party  
   Steve Miller's letter ..... 378  
 William III of Orange ..... 289  
 wine .....  
   drinking rule ..... 29  
 witch doctor ..... 169  
   Kelly's Ford ..... 134  
 World War I ..... 294  
 worship, brass altar ..... 177  
**Y**  
 yankee  
   Big Yankee Ames ..... 199  
 yellow fever ..... 157  
**Z**  
 Zimri  
   his death ..... 24  
 zûwr, meaning ..... 24